CUBASE

VST

for Windows

Getting into the Details

Steinberg

Operation Manual by Ernst Nathorst-Böös, Ludvig Carlson
Documentation Quality Control: Dave Nicholson, Anja Kramer, Andrea Menke

The information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Steinberg Soft- und Hardware GmbH. The software described by this document is subject to a License Agreement and may not be copied to other media except as specifically allowed in the License Agreement. No part of this publication may be copied, reproduced or otherwise transmitted or recorded, for any purpose, without prior written permission by Steinberg Soft- und Hardware GmbH.

All product and company names are ™ or ® trademarks of their respective owners. Windows and Windows 95 are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

© Steinberg Soft- und Hardware GmbH, 1998.

All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

10 How Cubase VST handles audio and MIDI

11 Why you should read this Chapter
11 Audio Channels vs Tracks
13 Audio Files
14 Audio Segments and Events - Non-Destructive Editing
16 MIDI Inputs
16 MIDI Outputs
17 How Cubase VST records MIDI Channel data
18 Rechannelizing – The MIDI Channel setting for the Track
18 Rechannelizing also works on Thru-put!
19 Turning off Rechannelization – MIDI Channel "Any"

20 Stereo, Multi Channel and Multi Track Recording

21 Stereo audio recording
24 Multi Channel Recording - Channel "Any"
26 Multi Track Recording

32 The Arrangement - More on what you can do with Parts and Tracks

33 Creating Parts
34 Overlapping MIDI Parts
35 Part Info
36 Merging Parts
37 About Cut, Copy & Paste
38 Part Operations using the Toolbox
44 Renaming Parts
45 Ghost Parts
46 Using the "Repeat" function
47 Cut Events
47 Global Cut
48 Global Insert
48 Global Split
49 Copy Range
50 Remix Track
52 Mix Down

54 Instruments

55 About Instruments

57 Inspector Real Time Parameters

58 What can I do with the Inspector?
59 The Parameters

62 Program Changes and MIDI Volume

63 Why you should read this Chapter
63 Program Change
70 MIDI Volume
71 About Chase

72 Programming and Recording Mutes and Solo

73 Pre-programming Mutes
73 Recording Mutes and Solo
75 About editing recorded Mutes

76 Groups

77 About Groups
78 How to use Groups - the basic steps
78 Building Groups
81 Using Groups

87 The MIDI Editors - General Information

88 About this Chapter
88 Similarities and differences between Editors
89 Opening an Editor
91 Closing an Editor
92 Editing music during playback
94 How Events are displayed in the Editors
97 Moving around and the Goto pop-up menu
98 Monitoring Events in the Editors
98 Selecting and the To pop-up menu
100 The Do pop-up menu
103 The Info Line
104 Quantize and Snap Values
105 Creating Note Events
107 Editing Notes
109 Deleting Events
110 Creating and Editing Continuous Data

113 Step Recording

114 Introduction

119 Key Edit

120 About this “Chapter”

121 Drum Edit and Drum Tracks

122 About Drum Tracks and Drum Parts
123 About Drum Maps
125 About Output and MIDI Channel
126 Setting up a Drum Map
128 Loading a Drum Map
128 Saving your Drum Map
129 Editing Drum Parts in the Drum Editor
133 Editing MIDI Parts in Drum Edit
134 Converting between MIDI and Drum Parts

135 List Edit

136 The Columns in the List
140 Creating Events
141 Editing in the List
142 Editing in the Event Display
143 Editing in the “Value 2” Display
144 Hiding Events
145 Using Mask
147 About Quantizing and Functions
147 Switching to Time Positions

148 Score Edit

149 About this Chapter
150 Overview
151 Getting the Score displayed correctly
155 Editing several Tracks
157 Manipulating Notes
159 Chord Symbols
160 Adding Text
161 Moving and Duplicating Chords And Text
161 Deleting Text and Chord Symbols
161 Title, Comment and Copyright
162 Printing

163 Logical Edit

164 Why Should I Use Logical Edit?
164 Opening Logical Edit
165 Working with Presets
167 Undo
167 Selecting Easy or Expert Mode
167 Initializing the Settings
167 How Logical Edit Operates
168 About Setting Values
169 Setting up Filters
173 Applying a Filter
174 Setting Up for Processing
178 Processing Functions
179 Expert Mode

182 Filtering and Mapping MIDI Data

183 Introduction
183 Recording Filters
185 Thru Filters
186 Mapping Controller Messages
187 The Input Transformer

190 GM/GS/XG Edit

191 About this chapter
191 The Controls
193 When are the settings in the GM/GS/XG Editor applied?

194 The Input/Output Bus System

195 Introduction
195 What you can do with the Bus system
196 Activating Inputs
198 Recording from an Input
200 Activating and routing Buses
201 Assigning the Audio Channels to Buses
202 Sends and Effects
205 An example setup

207 The Audio Pool

208 Introduction
208 Overview of the Window
209 Displaying Segments
210 The Headings and Columns
211 Customizing the View
212 Finding Out how a Segment is used in the Song
213 File Operations
216 Handling “Missing Files”
217 Creating Wave Images and Keeping them up to date
218 Segment Operations
220 Deleting Unused Portions of Audio Files (Erase Unused)
222 Importing Audio Files into the Pool
223 Dragging Segments into Other Windows
225 Preparing File Archives and “Masters”
227 Saving and Loading the Pool

228 The Audio Editor

229 Introduction
229 Opening the Audio editor
229 About Events, Lanes and Segments
233 About Q-points
234 About Zero Crossings
236 Customizing the View
240 Recording in the Audio editor
240 Importing and Dragging Audio into the Editor
242 Auditioning and Scrubbing
243 Editing on the Info Line
244 Changing Start and End Insets
247 Working with Q-Points
249 Adding and Editing Match Points
252 Moving Audio Events
253 Duplicating and Repeating Events
255 Using Cut, Copy and Paste
256 Quantizing Audio Events
261 Deleting Events
262 Working with Grouped Events
264 Muting Events
265 Splitting Events
266 Creating Crossfades, Fade Ins and Fade Outs
270 Using Cycled Recording for assembling a “perfect” take
272 Fitting Audio Events to the Loop
274 Changing the Volume and Panning of an Event
277 Making an Event Play another Segment
277 Exporting Events into Files

278 Processing Audio Files

279 Introduction
279 Applying the Processing
280 The Functions

283 The Wave editor

284 What is the Wave Editor?
284 Precautions
284 About the Wave Editor Preference setting
285 Opening Wave Editor Windows
286 Adjusting the View
289 Playing Back
290 Selecting
291 Working with segments
292 Turning the Selection into a File
293 Cutting and Pasting Audio
293 Applying Processing Functions

294 Using an External Wave Editor

295 Why use an external Wave Editor?
295 Precautions
296 Setting which Wave Editor to use
297 Editing in the selected Wave Editor

299 Mixing and using Effects

300 Introduction
301 Volume
302 Panning
303 EQ
306 Effects
317 The Group Mixer
321 ReWire
322 Volume and Pan Automation – Dynamic Events or Monitor Mixer
324 Automating the Monitor mixer

331 Installing and using external effect plug-ins

332 About this chapter
332 VST-native Plug-ins
334 DirectX Plug-ins

336 Importing and Exporting Audio

337 Importing audio files into the Arrangement
338 Mixing down to an audio file
341 Including your MIDI music in the mixdown

342 Working with ReCycle files

343 About ReCycle
344 Using ReCycle files in VST
346 About tempo changes and the last Segment(s)
346 Importing into “Any” Tracks - Polyphonic playback
348 Editing Tips and Tricks

349 Making the Most of the Event/ Segment Relationship

350 What is an Event really?
350 What is a Segment really?
351 Copying Audio Events

354 Optimizing Audio Performance

355 Introduction
356 About Audio Cards
359 Computer Performance and Audio Channels
362 Audio System Settings
369 The ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog
379 Using the ASIO DirectX Driver
382 Methods of Optimizing Performance
383 Maintaining the Hard Disk

384 The Master Track

385 What is the Master Track?
386 Opening the Graphic Editor
387 The Window Sections
388 About the Tempo Display
388 About Time Signature Events
389 About Rulers and Positions
390 Switching between Meter and Time based Display
391 Moving around and setting Song Position
392 About Hitpoints
392 About the Toolbox
393 Activate Master!
394 Recording Tempo Changes
396 Selecting
398 Editing on the Info Line
399 Redrawing the Tempo Curve
400 Drawing new Events
401 Moving Events Using the Mouse
401 Duplicating Events
401 Cut, Copy and Paste
401 Deleting Events
402 Repeating Events
402 Creating Accelerandi and Ritardandi
403 Reducing the number of Tempo Events
403 Smoothing Tempo Event values
404 Numerical processing of Tempo Events
406 The Master Track List Editor
409 Moving Master Track data between Arrangements

410 Hitpoints

411 What can I do with Hitpoints?
411 What are Hitpoints?
412 About this Chapter
413 Setting Out Hitpoints
415 Editing Hitpoints
417 Playing back Hitpoints via MIDI
418 Linking Hitpoints
420 Working with Tempo Matching
424 Working with Straighten Up
428 Tempo Mapping "freely recorded" Music using Time Locked Tracks

431 Matching Audio and Tempo

432 Introduction
432 Opening the Audio/Tempo Match Editor
433 Adding and Editing Match Points in the Editor
436 Making the Playback Tempo follow the Audio
441 Making the Audio Follow the Tempo
446 Creating a Groove template
447 Using Snip at M-points

449 Time Locked Tracks

450 What are Time Locked Tracks?
450 Time Locking a Track
450 Changing the Tempo
451 Turning Time Lock On and Off
451 Editing Time Locked Tracks
451 Creating Multiple Tempi
451 Things To Note

452 Synchronization

453 Introduction
453 The two types of Sync Signals
454 Cubase VST – Master Or Slave?
455 Synchronization and audio playback
458 The Synchronization Dialog Box
459 Internal Sync - No External Synchronization used
460 Synchronizing Cubase VST to MIDI Time Code (MTC)
461 Synchronizing Cubase VST to MIDI Machine Control (MMC)
462 About Frame Rates
463 Synchronizing Cubase VST to another MIDI Device via MIDI Clock
465 Synchronizing other Equipment to Cubase VST
466 Transmitting Synchronization Signals while Cubase VST is synchronized to an External Source
467 Song Start
467 Time Display Offset
468 Bar Display
469 MROS Resolution and System Preroll
470 Sync Options

471 Customizing Cubase VST

472 Why Customize?
473 Examples of things to customize
475 Saving the Startup Song
475 Starting from other Song documents –Templates

476 Keyboard Commands

477 What This Chapter Contains
477 Numeric Keypad
478 Typewriter Keyboard

485 Index

1

How Cubase VST handles audio and MIDI

Why you should read this Chapter

This chapter contains some details and background theory about how Cubase VST handles audio and MIDI, as well as some terminology used throughout this manual and in the program. Please take the time to read this, as it will aid you in using the program in the most effective way (when working with audio, you should also read the chapter “Optimizing Audio Performance” for best results).

Audio Channels vs Tracks

Many audio recording systems do not make a difference between audio channels and Tracks, which is the way a regular tape recorder works: one channel - one Track. Cubase VST however, has a much more flexible approach to handling audio, as we shall see. This is important to note, especially if you have previously been working with a system where Tracks and Channels are one and the same thing.

Tracks

An Arrangement can contain a practically unlimited number of Tracks. Each Track has a Channel (Chn) setting that determines which audio channel the Track records and plays back on, just like you select MIDI Channel for a MIDI Track. The possibilities are:

- A single (mono) channel, for example “7”.
- A stereo pair, for example “3+4”
- “Any”.
  All these alternatives are described below.

Audio Channels

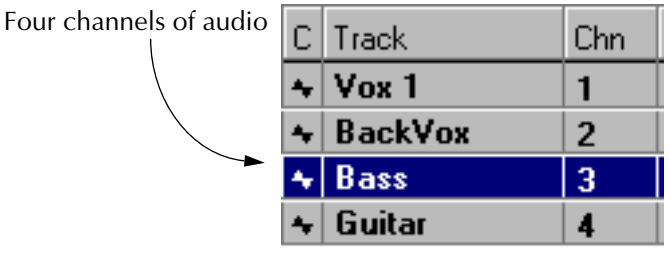
An audio channel plays back one *mono* audio recording at a time.

In Cubase VST, the number of audio channels you have access to is limited by your computer’s processing power, the amount of free RAM and the speed of the hard disk (see page 356).

The number of audio channels puts a limit to how many audio recordings can be played back at the same time. For example, in a four channel system, you could play back:

- One lead vocal recording (one channel), plus
- One backing vocal recording (one channel), plus
- One mono bass recording (one channel), plus
- One mono guitar recording (one channel)...

...all at the same time.



Mono/Stereo

A stereo recording occupies two consecutive channels. If you for example make a stereo recording on channels “3+4”, this single recording uses up both channels 3 and 4. It’s your decision when to record in mono and when to record in stereo. Since the number of channels is limited, some care should be taken so that the stereo facility is only used when actually needed.

More about stereo recording on page 21.

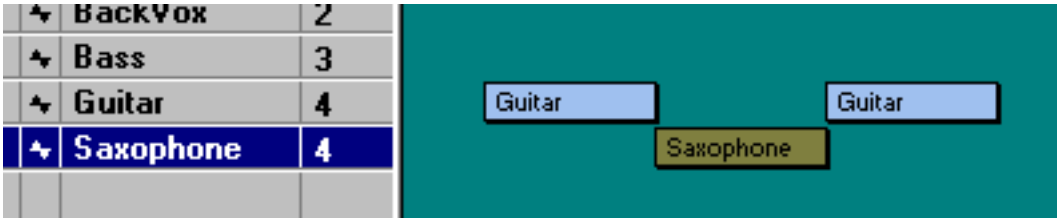
Channel “Any”

A Track can also be set to Channel “Any”. This allows you to access *all* available audio channels from *one* Track. This feature is mainly useful for the more advanced systems where is it possible to record a large number of audio inputs (and hence channels) simultaneously.

Imagine a situation where you make a multi channel recording, for example a recording of a drum kit via a large number of microphones. Using the “Any” feature then allows you to handle the whole recording as one entity (one Track) although it actually consists of recordings on many separate audio channels.

Setting Two Tracks to the same Audio Channel

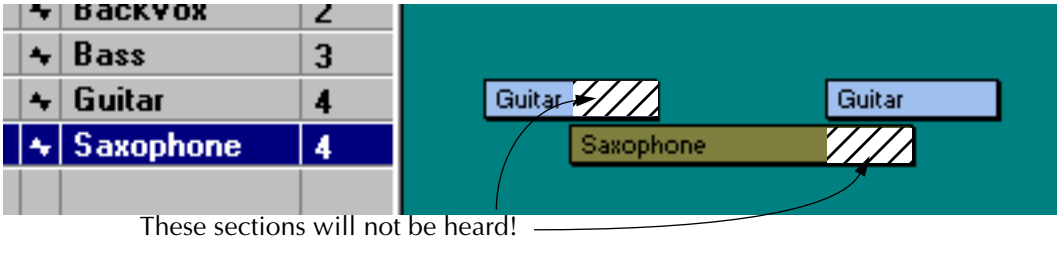
You can set things up so that two Tracks use the same audio channel. This is not a problem as long as there is no audio happening at the same time, on the two Tracks. For example like this:



Here, the Guitar Track plays through the verses and the saxophone Track plays in the chorus. Since the Parts don’t overlap, both Tracks can have access to the same audio channel during playback.

However, if there is any overlap between the two – if, for example, the saxophone starts playing in the middle of the guitar, the two Tracks will compete for the single audio channel, and only one of them can use it at the same moment. In this case, the “latest” recording will always “steal” the audio channel, as described in the illustration below.

The guitar will play until the sax Part starts. Then the sax will be heard instead.



This situation extends to stereo recordings. If one Track records in stereo, on for example channels 3+4, both these channels are occupied when this Track plays back. You can't overlap either mono or stereo recordings that use either of these channels.

Audio Files

When you record, your audio card digitizes the audio signal coming from the microphone (or other sources) and stores the digital data as files on your hard disk.

One File per Channel

One file is always created for each single recording you make.

File Format

The audio files created by Cubase VST are Wave files (WAV), the most common audio file format for the PC. It is also possible to import and export audio files in AIFF format, which is a very common Macintosh format.

Since practically all Windows audio processing programs read and write Wave or AIFF files, this allows you to process your Cubase VST files in other programs, and import files that have been created elsewhere, into Cubase VST. See page 337 for information about importing and exporting files.

Audio Files are big

Audio files are comparatively large, compared to Cubase VST Song files, MIDI files, or for example, word processor files. For each minute of recording at 44.1 kHz mono, you will use up 5 MBytes of hard disk storage per mono audio channel. This means that to record continuously on four channels for three minutes, you will need 60 Mbyte of free hard disk space (5MByte * 4 channels * 3 minutes = 60MByte).

Take good care of your Audio Files!

This can not be repeated too many times: Back up your files! Hard disk crashes are a well known fact in the computer industry, and the only way to insure yourself against any disasters is to maintain a meticulous back-up scheme. If you work professionally, we suggest you invest in an removable disk based, DAT based or other back-up system and that you keep multiple copies of all files.

Audio Segments and Events - Non-Destructive Editing

Cubase VST is a random access based, non-destructive audio recording system – and even if that sounds like gibberish, you should be happy about it, as you will soon find out.

Non-destructive editing

Let's say you have recorded a couple of minutes of guitar. During the first verse, there happens to be a brilliant section that you would like to use again in all the other verses. As you may know, this is possible using the "Copy and Paste" techniques employed in most computer programs.

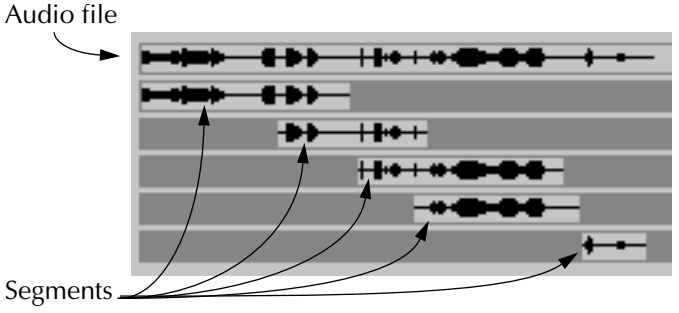
However, reusing material over and over again, normally wastes computer memory and/or hard disk space. With Cubase VST it doesn't!

If you "cut out" a section of audio, and paste it in, over and over again in the song, you are simply instructing the program to use the same portion of the audio file in many places, without actually copying the file. This is made possible via Cubase VST's use of *segments*.

Segments

A segment is a specification for a section of an audio file. The segment contains information about where in the audio file to start playing and where to stop. It might be that the segment plays the entire file, or it could also be that it just plays a couple of seconds somewhere in the middle of the file.

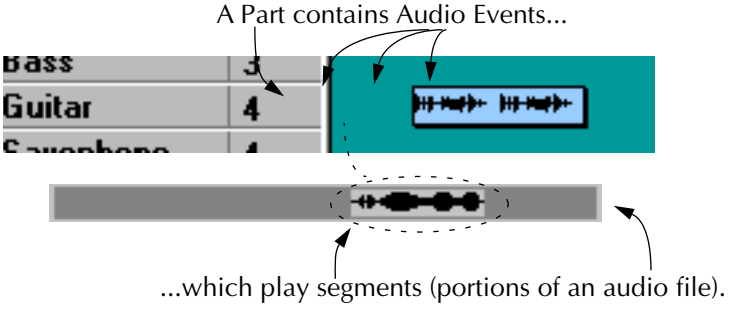
You can create as many segments as you like, from the same file, as the example below shows.



Audio Events

To actually play back a segment in your Song, you need to place an *Audio Event* in the Song. Each Audio Event plays a certain segment.
Audio Events and segments are of course automatically created as you record, but you can also manually create events and segments when you are editing or assembling recorded material.

In many cases, you will not “feel” any difference between handling Audio Events and segments, but there is one. For example, an Audio Event specifies where to start playing some audio, but the segment specifies the duration of playback. Also, you might delete Audio Events and still have access to the segment it played, so that some other Audio Event can play back the same segment in another part of the song. When there is an important difference between these two, this manual will tell you.



MIDI Inputs

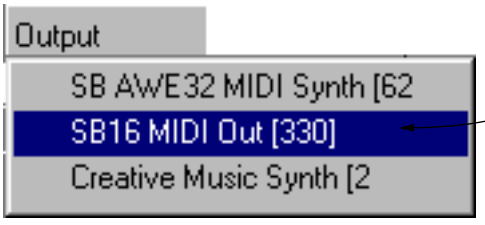
Cubase VST records from all active MIDI Inputs at the same time. In essence, this means you don't have to care about selecting or activating MIDI Inputs. However, if you have multiple interfaces and want to deactivate an input for some reason, you can do this in the MIDI Setup dialog.

MIDI Outputs

Each MIDI Track has a MIDI Output setting. This routes the data on the Track to a physical MIDI Output on one of your MIDI Interfaces.

Standard Interfaces

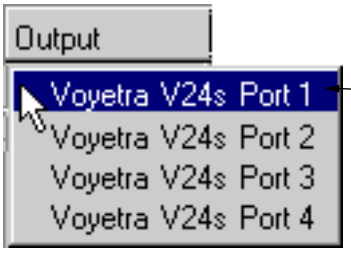
Standard interfaces are identified in Cubase VST by the names provided by their respective drivers.



Select one of the ports on the Output pop-up menu to make the Track transmit data to that interface.

Multi-port Interfaces

If you have a multi-port interface, each of its MIDI Out connectors appears as a MIDI Output in the Output list. Setting a Track to a certain Output routes all the MIDI Data on that Track to that specific MIDI Out connector on the interface.

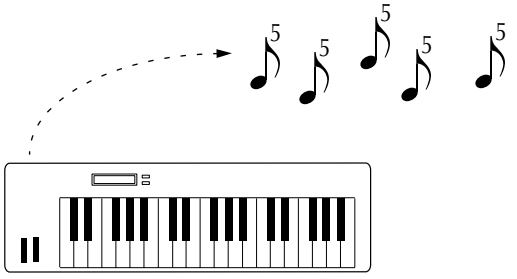


In this case, the Track will transmit all its data to MIDI Output number 1 on a Voyetra multi-port interface.

How Cubase VST records MIDI Channel data

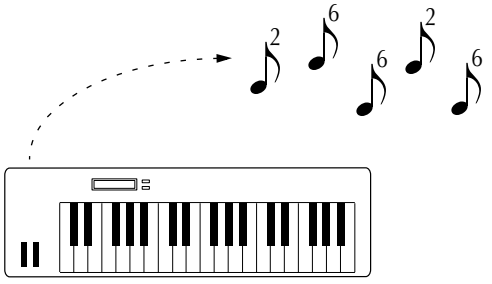
Each MIDI Event that Cubase VST records has a MIDI Channel number.

If for example you set your MIDI keyboard to transmit on MIDI Channel 5, all the notes, Pitch Bend data, program change or whatever you transmit from it, will have the MIDI Channel number 5.



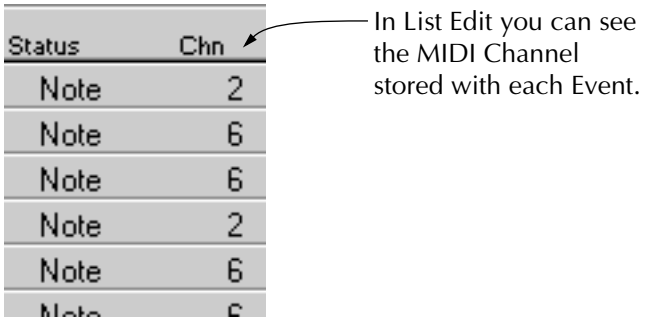
This keyboard transmits on MIDI Channel 5.

Some MIDI devices can transmit on more than one MIDI Channel. In this case the MIDI input data coming in to Cubase VST will contain mixed channel numbers.



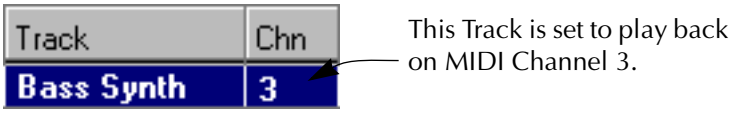
This keyboard transmits on two MIDI Channels, – 2 and 6. It may for example transmit each channel from one side of a split point.

Cubase VST stores the MIDI Channel with the Event. If for example you look in List Edit (which you will learn about later in this manual), you can see the MIDI Channel for each Event that has been recorded.

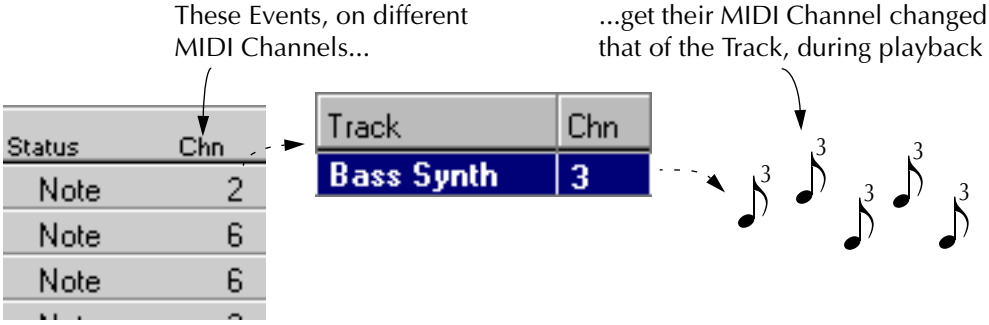


Rechannelizing – The MIDI Channel setting for the Track

When you play back a recording, you want it to be routed to a certain sound in one of your synthesizers. Let's say you have a synthesizer that plays a bass sound on MIDI Channel 3. To route a Track to that sound you set it to MIDI Channel 3.



What now happens is that when you hit play Cubase VST plays back all the data on the Track, but when doing so it *replaces the MIDI Channel number stored in the Events with that of the Track* – in this example, MIDI Channel 3!



This replacement is done as part of the playback procedure, that is it does not affect the recording permanently. If you check the data on the Track in List edit (as mentioned above) all the Events still have their MIDI channel intact.

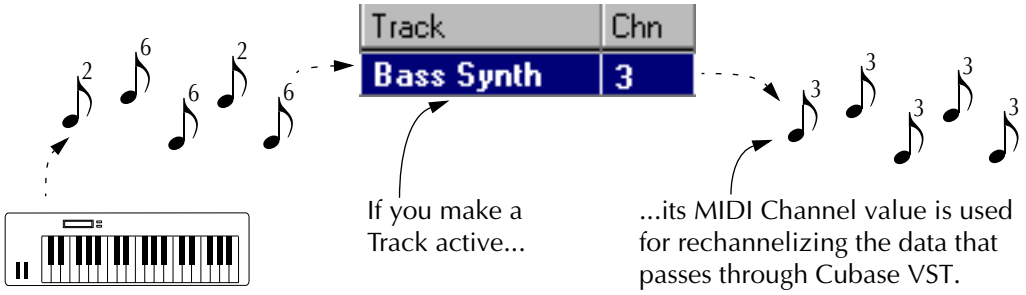
This is what we refer to as *rechannelizing* – changing the MIDI Channel of the Events on playback.

Rechannelizing is very convenient because it lets you forget what MIDI Channel number your keyboard is set to transmit on. Instead, to route a Track to a certain sound, you simply set the MIDI Channel number in the Track list in Cubase VST. And, if you decide you want to route the Track to another synthesizer, later, the only thing you have to do is to change the MIDI Channel setting for the Track.

Rechannelizing also works on Thru-put!

The text above only described what happens on playback. But in fact, Rechannelizing happens on the data that passes *Thru* Cubase VST.

If you click on a Track to activate it, its MIDI Channel setting is used for rechannelizing the data that passes through the program. This automatically routes your playing to the correct MIDI Channel when you are recording, or rehearsing for a recording you are about to make.


Track
Chn
Bass Synth
3
If you make a Track active...
...its MIDI Channel value is used for rechannelizing the data that passes through Cubase VST.

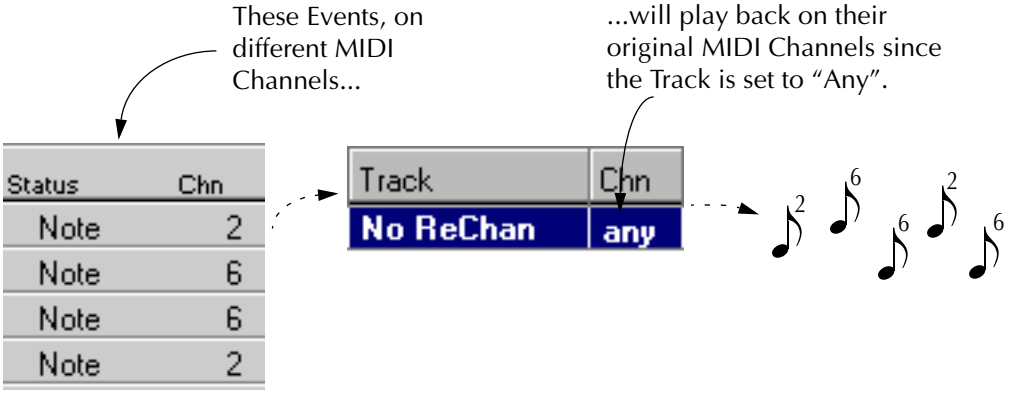
Turning off Rechannelization – MIDI Channel “Any”

There’s one situation where you might not want rechannelizing and that’s when you have a Track that contains Events on multiple MIDI Channels. You might for example have:

- Recorded with a keyboard that can be “split” so that it transmits on two MIDI Channels.
- A guitar synthesizer where each string can transmit on a different MIDI Channel.
- Recorded the output of another MIDI sequencer onto a Track in Cubase VST.
- Imported a MIDI File of Type 0, which by definition contains only one Track, possibly with Events on several MIDI Channels.

In each of these situations you might want to have the Track transmit on all its MIDI Channels – the MIDI Channels actually stored with each Event, as described above. This would allow you to set up several sounds and play them all from one Track.

To do this, set the Track to MIDI Channel “Any” (the “lowest” value).



Summary

To summarize: When a Track is set to MIDI Channel “Any”, rechannelizing is turned off, and the Events will be transmitted on their original MIDI Channels instead.

2

Stereo, Multi Channel and Multi Track Recording

Stereo audio recording

Stereo recording only applies to audio Tracks and has no relevance for MIDI data.

Setting a Track to stereo

This is done in the Inspector, by clicking the Mono/Stereo button until it shows stereo.

The mono/stereo button in the Inspector.

Which Tracks can be set to stereo?

The mono/stereo button indicates if a track can be set to stereo or not (it is bright when this is possible and dark when it is not). A Track must meet the following criteria for the stereo option to be available:

- **It must be set to an odd channel number.**
  A stereo recording always uses as an odd channel for the left channel and an even for the right.

- **It must not already contain any mono recordings.**
  If there are already mono Parts on the Track you can not switch it to stereo and vice versa.

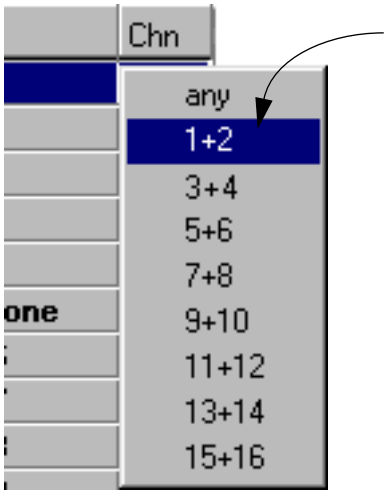
- **No other audio Track that is already in use can be set to "the other" channel.**
  If channel 4, for example, is already used by some Track for a mono recording, a Track set to channel 3 cannot be switched to stereo.

What happens when I switch a Track to stereo?

- **The Chn column in the Inspector indicates the *two* channels used for stereo.**

This example indicates that theTrack uses channels 1+2.

- **The Channel pop-up (reached from the Inspector and the Chn column in the Track list) lists the two channels as a stereo pair.**
  From this point on they can only be used together, as a pair.



In this example, *all* Tracks (in a 16 channel system) are set to stereo.

- **The Chn column in the Track List also indicates the use of two channels by adding a star [*] after the channel number.**
  For example, "1*" means that channels 1 and 2 are used.

- **Any Tracks set to the "other" audio channel in the resulting stereo pair, will automatically be set to channel "Any".**
  Let's say you have a Track set to channel 3, and switch it to stereo. Then, any Tracks playing back on channel 4 will automatically be set to channel "Any".

- **In the Mixer window, the two channels are tied together by a "stereo banner" at the top.**

A stereo channel pair in the Mixer.

- **Stereo recordings that you make take up two audio channel lanes in the audio editor, see page 231.**

Recording in stereo

Making a stereo recording is actually no different from making a mono recording. Just make sure that the two audio outputs you want to record (probably the left and right sides of a stereo source) are connected to the correct inputs (see the Getting Started book and page 196 for details about inputs).

The Mixer and Stereo Channel Pairs

As described above, a stereo channel pair is indicated in the Monitor Mixer window by a “banner” at the top.

In addition to this, many controls for the channels are “ganged”, which means that when you change one of them, they are both affected.

For example, if you adjust the level of one channel in a stereo pair, the other channel is also adjusted, automatically. This makes it easy to set up the two channels in a stereo pair so that they sound identical.

The controls affected by this are:

- Level.
- All EQ settings.
- Effect Send Amount and Pre/Post settings.
- Mute and Solo.
- Monitoring on/off

More about mixing in the chapter “Mixing and using Effects”.

Overriding “ganging”

If you want to make Monitor Mixer adjustments indvidually for a channel in a stereo pair, simply hold down [Alt] when adjusting the control.

Multi Channel Recording - Channel “Any”

● Multi channel recording can be used on any system but is most useful to those with cards with more than two inputs.

Why record on an Any Track?

A single “Any” Track can contain recordings on multiple channels. In fact one Track can contain mono recordings on as many channels as the system supports.

Let’s say that you are recording a drum kit on four channels: a stereo mix of the entire kit, plus two separate channels for bass drum and snare (provided your card can record four simultaneous inputs). If you use an “Any” Track for this recording you will be able to record all four channels onto one Track and subsequently handle all four as one entity. This simplifies editing in the Arrange window and in the Audio editor.

Performing a Multi Channel Recording

1. **Connect and set up the audio sources as desired.**

2. **Create an Audio Track to record on.**

3. **Open the Inspector for the Track and set it to channel “Any”.**
   A number of Record Enable buttons appear. Exactly how many depends on the number of audio channels in your audio recording system.

A Track set to “Any” in a 16 channel system.

- **There is also a group of Monitor buttons in the Inspector, as many as there are audio channels.**
  These work just like the Monitor button for a single channel Track, allowing you to manually turn monitoring on and off for each audio channel.

● If stereo inputs are used, a maximum of two audio channels - one odd, one even - can be monitored at once. If you for example are monitoring a channel with odd number, and click on another odd-numbered channel button, monitoring will be deactivated for the first channel.

4. **For the two channels you plan to record on, click the corresponding Record Enable button in the Inspector.**
   The Record Enable buttons will change color to indicate their status, as described below.

5. **Activate recording in any way you like, as described in the previous chapter.**
   All audio channels will now be recorded on the single Track.

   When you later open the Audio Editor you might want to *Group* the recordings together. More on this on page 262.

About changing the Channel setting

As you noted above, it is the “Any” channel setting that is the clue to the Track being able to play back on more than one channel. If you later set the Track to a specific Channel number you will only hear one of the recorded files.

Record Info color coding

For Tracks with channel “Any”, a color scheme is used in the Inspector to make channel assignment more intuitive:

- **An audio channel box is red if the channel is record enabled.**
- **An audio channel box has a green border if the selected Track uses the channel and is ready for playback.**
- **An audio channel box has a blue border if another Track uses the channel.**
  This helps you determine if this channel is available for recording.

● Please note that it may be perfectly OK to record on a channel that already is in use (displays a green or blue border). This depends on *where* in the Song the channel is in use.

Multi Track Recording

What can I do with Multi Track Recording?

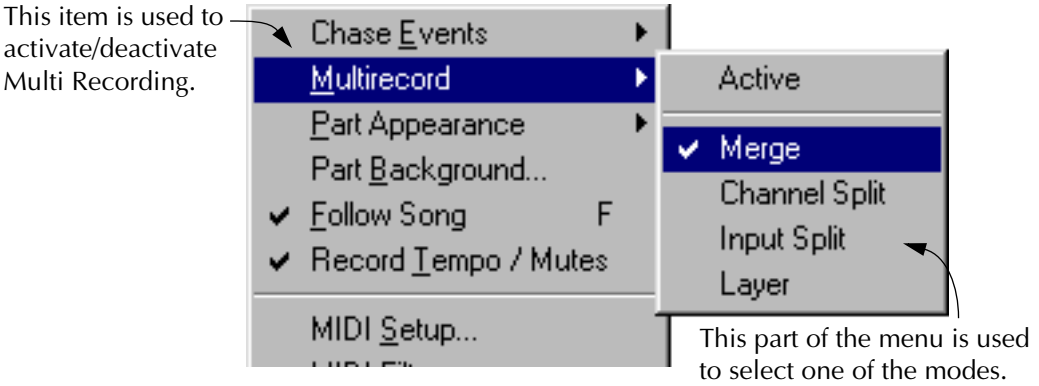
- Multi Track Recording allows you to record several players at the same time and have their performances appear on one Track each.
- If audio channels you are about to record are not directly related, but you still want to record them at the same time, you might prefer to record them on one Track each.
- If you have a keyboard or other MIDI Controller that can transmit on several MIDI Channels, Multi Track recording allows you to record different MIDI Channels onto different Tracks.
- Multi Track recording also allows you to "layer" several MIDI sounds, and record them on one Track each.
- When using Tape Tracks, Multi Track recording should be activated, so that you can set more than one Track on the tape recorder to record ready. This is described in the separate Tape Tracks document.

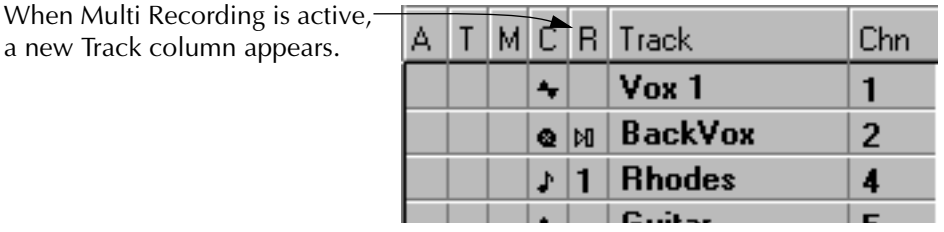
Activating Multi Recording

1. **Pull down the Options menu and select "Multirecord".**

2. **From the menu that appears, select "Active" so that it is ticked.**
   Multi Track Recording is now turned on, and a new Track column appears, labelled "R". This is used in different ways for different Recording Modes, as described below.

3. **Pull down the menu again and select one of the "modes" on the lower half, Merge, Channel Split, Input Split or Layer.**
   Which of these "modes" you should select depends on what type of recording you want to make. They are all described on the following pages.





Recording Audio

1. **If you are only recording Audio, select Multi Record Merge mode.**

2. **Create as many Audio Tracks as desired and set them all to different channels.**
   The number of Tracks you can record on is limited by the number of inputs you have access to. If you only have two audio inputs, you can only record two different audio sources.

3. **Click in the "R" column for each Track, to set them up for recording.**

4. **Enable recording for each Track by clicking the Record Enable button in the Inspector.**

5. **Activate recording in any way you like, as described in the previous chapter.**
   The audio channels will now be recorded on one Track each.

Recording MIDI

About Merge Mode

Using Merge mode is like recording with Multirecord turned *off*.There is no reason to use this mode for MIDI recording only. It is primarily used to record audio onto several Audio Tracks and with Tape Tracks (for setting multiple Tracks on the tape recorder to Record Ready Mode).

Here is how MIDI recording works in Merge mode:

- Recording only happens on one MIDI or Drum Track at a time, just as when Multi Track Recording is turned off.
- Recording happens on the Track where you *last* activated recording in the "R" column (see illustration on previous page).

Recording different MIDI Channels on different Tracks (Channel Split Mode)

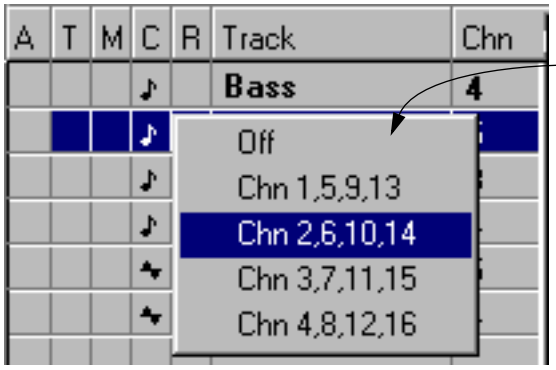
This is the preferred mode if you either have several MIDI Instruments all connected to the same input, or if you have a MIDI Controller that can transmit on more than one MIDI Channel.

1. **Set up your MIDI instrument(s) so that they transmit on different MIDI channels, preferably on consecutive MIDI Channels, starting at 1 (1, 2, 3, etc.).**

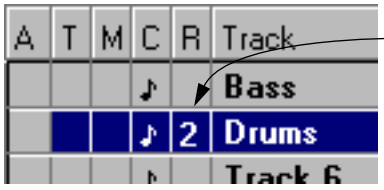
2. **Activate Multi Recording in Channel Split mode (see above).**

3. **Set up the Tracks you plan to record on so that they transmit on the desired MIDI Channels and Outputs.**
   This does not have to be the same MIDI Channels as your instruments are set to transmit on. You can for example make a Track record information coming in via MIDI Channel 2, while it plays back on MIDI Channel 11.

4. Click in the "R" column for the first Track you want to record on. A pop-up appears from which you can select one of five alternatives



The Multi Rec pop-up when "Channel Split Mode" is selected.



In the "R" column, the first Channel of the four that the Track records, is displayed.

The Multi Recording pop-up when "Channel Split Mode" is selected.

- The first option (Off) deactivates recording for this Track.
- Selecting the second option makes this Track record all information coming in on MIDI Channel 1, 5, 9 and 13.
- Selecting the third option makes this Track record information coming in on MIDI Channel 2, 6, 10 and 14
- The fourth and fifth options work just as the previous, but with the remaining MIDI Channels.
- So, to for example separate four different players by MIDI Channel they should transmit on for example MIDI Channel 1, 2, 3 and 4, respectively.

5. Set up the other Tracks you wish to Record on.

6. Activate Recording as usual.

Recording different players onto different Tracks (Input Split Mode)

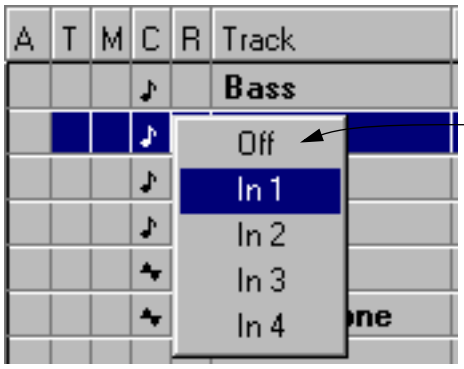
This is the mode to use if you have several MIDI Instruments connected to one MIDI input each.

1. Connect the instruments (up to four), each one to a MIDI input of its own.

2. Activate Multi Recording in Input Split mode (see the beginning of this chapter for details).

3. Set up the Tracks you plan to record on, so that they transmit on the desired MIDI Channel and Output.

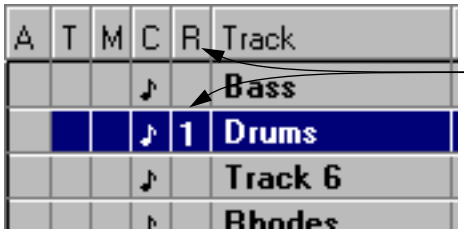
4. Click in the "R" column for the first Track you want to record on. A pop-up appears from which you can select one of five alternatives (please refer to the table on the next page):



The Multi Rec pop-up when "Input Split Mode" is selected.

Menu Option	MIDI Input used
Off	None (No recording on this Track)
In 1	The first MIDI Input in your system.
In 2	The second MIDI Input in your system.
In 3	The third MIDI Input in your system.
In 4	The fourth MIDI Input in your system.

Exactly which is the first and second etc MIDI Inputs in your system is decided by Windows. If you only have one MIDI interface the numbering will most likely be the same as on the interface. If you have several interfaces only experimentation can tell which is which.



After selecting an Input, the "In" number is displayed in the "R" column

5. Select a MIDI Input for the second Track.
Continue in the same way with the third and fourth Track.

6. Activate Recording as usual.

Using Multi Track Recording to layer sounds

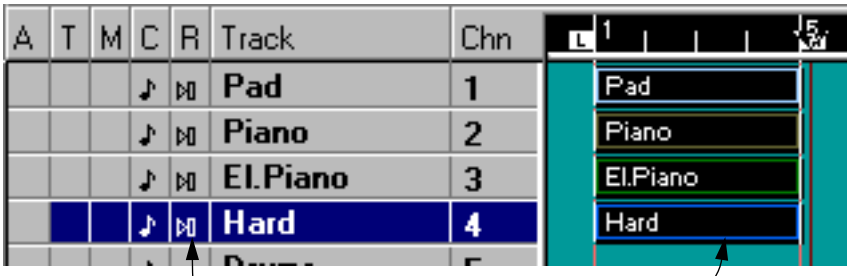
In Layer Mode you record *the same* information onto several Tracks (up to four). If each of the Tracks you record on is set to transmit on a different MIDI Channel and Output in you are able to play and record with up to four different sounds at the same time.

1. **Set up the Tracks you plan to record on so that they transmit on the desired MIDI Channels and Outputs.**

2. **Activate Multi Recording in Layer mode (see the beginning of this chapter for details on how to do this).**

3. **Click in the "R" column for each of the Tracks you want to record on.** You can record on a maximum of four Tracks.

4. **Activate Recording as usual.**
   The same information now gets recorded onto four different Tracks. While you record you will hear the sounds of all four of the instruments set to play back from those Tracks.



When four Tracks are activated in Layer mode...

...the same information gets recorded on all four Tracks...

Recording MIDI and Audio at the Same Time

When Multi Record is activated you can record on MIDI and Audio Tracks at the same time. There's only one special thing to note:

- **You can only activate Multi Recording on up to three MIDI Tracks simultaneously.**

Activating recording in Multi Record Mode

Recording in Multi Record mode is no different from Recording in regular mode.You can use punch in and out, Cycled Recording etc. There's only one thing to note:

Cycle Modes and Multi Recording

As described in the Getting Started book, you can record in various Cycle Modes. You can also apply recording functions like Key Erase, Delete last version etc.

- **During Multi Recording, these Modes and Functions only apply to the Active (selected) Track, not to all Tracks that you record on!**

Options related to Multi Track Recording

Using the Mixdown feature on the Structure menu you can merge a Multi Track recording into one Track set to channel “Any”. This can also be a handy way to assemble several separate recordings (e.g. the different voices in a backing vocal arrangement) into one easily handled unit in the Arrange window. See page 52 for more information.

3

The Arrangement - More on what you can do with Parts and Tracks

Creating Parts

Parts are normally created in one of three ways:

- by recording (applies to Audio Parts, MIDI Parts and Drum Parts only, see the Getting Started book).
- by direct creation of an empty Part.
- or by duplication of existing Parts (see Getting Started).

How Parts appear when you record

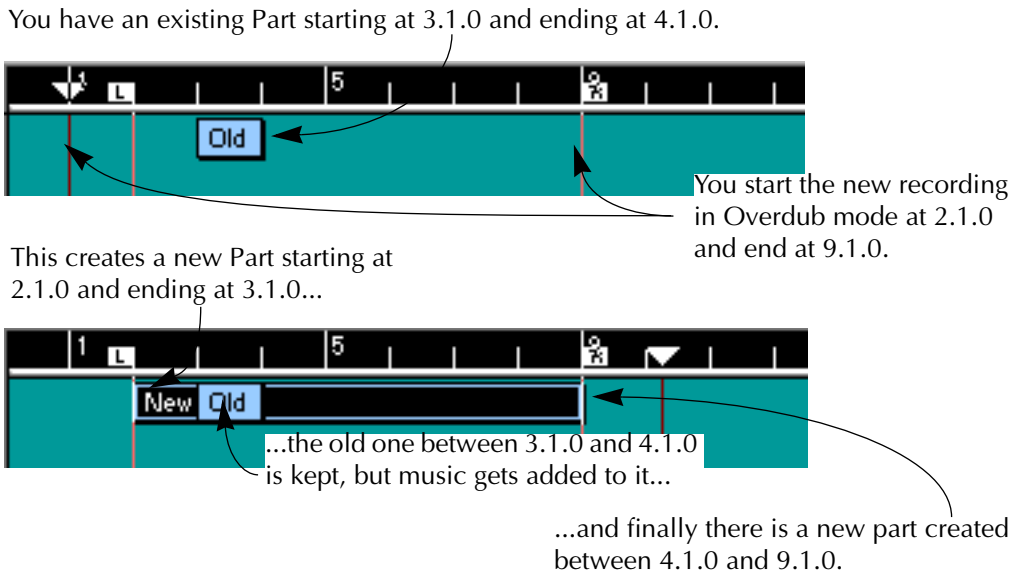
When you record *on one Track* the following rules apply:

- **Recording from one point to another creates a Part that spans between these two points.**
- **Recording again between the same points or within the Start and End points of the existing Part creates *no* new Part.**
  The music is either added to (Overdub mode) or replaces (Replace mode) the existing.

- **If "Prerecord" in the Metronome dialog box is active, recording during the Precount will extend the Part to the left.**
  For obvious reasons Parts are not extended beyond the Left Locator position when you record in Cycle mode, or before Song Position 1.1.0.

- **In other cases (like starting recording in an empty section of the Track, recording over Parts and recording out of existing Parts into empty areas of the Track), new Parts are only created where there wasn't any before.**
  As described above, the Overdub/Replace setting determines whether music is being added to the existing, or replaces it.

An example might clarify this:


You have an existing Part starting at 3.1.0 and ending at 4.1.0.
L
5
Old
You start the new recording in Overdub mode at 2.1.0 and end at 9.1.0.
This creates a new Part starting at 2.1.0 and ending at 3.1.0...
1
L
5
New
Old
...the old one between 3.1.0 and 4.1.0 is kept, but music gets added to it...
...and finally there is a new part created between 4.1.0 and 9.1.0.

Direct Creation of Parts

There are four ways to create an empty Part:

- **By double clicking in any empty (white) area between the Left and Right Locator, in the Arrange window.**
  The new Part winds up between the Locators, on the Track you clicked on.

- **By selecting Create Part from the Structure menu.**

- **By pressing [Control]-[P] on the computer keyboard.**
  In these two cases, the new (empty) Part winds up on the active Track beginning at the Left Locator and ending at the Right Locator.

- **By drawing it with the Pencil tool.**
  In this case, the Track, position and length of the new (empty) Part depends on your drawing, just like when you draw notes in an editor.

● A directly created Part never replaces an existing Part, but might overlap one.

● Group Parts are created differently, see page 83.

Overlapping MIDI Parts

Parts on the same MIDI Track might overlap or be completely on top of one another. You can make good use of this feature in many ways:

- **Parts which start with an upbeat can overlap the end of the Part before.**

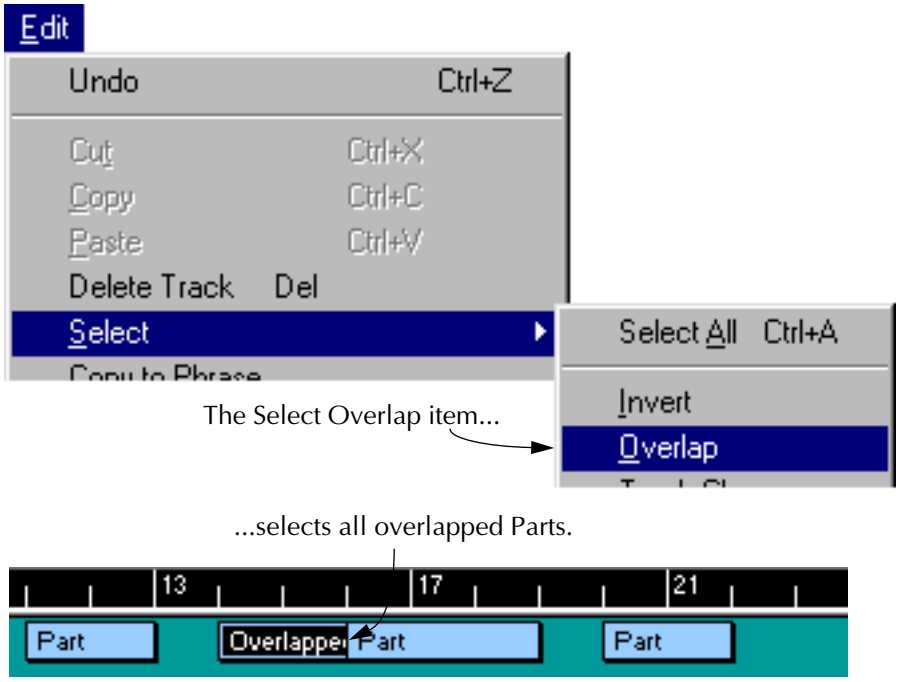
- **Small drum ornaments (such as cymbal crashes) can be created as separate Parts and just be put on top of the basic beat Part.**

- **Duplicate Parts (or Ghost Parts, see page 45) which are used to create delay effects, double sounds and so on, can be put on top of the original Parts.**

You will probably find other creative uses for this feature.

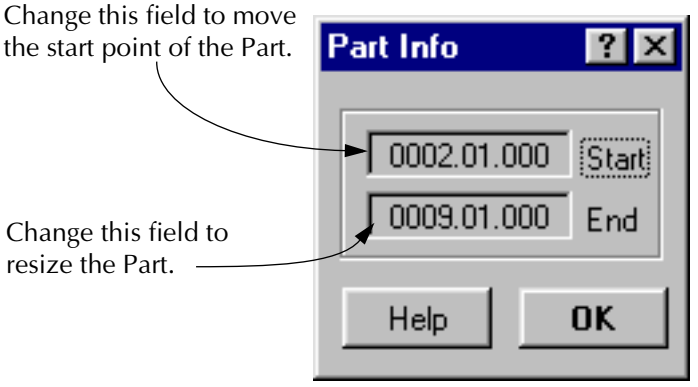
Selecting overlapping Parts

To display overlapped Parts in an Arrangement, use the Select Overlap item in the Edit menu. This will select all Parts that are partially obscured by other Parts.



Part Info

- **To Get information about a Part, select it and select Get Info from the Edit menu or press [Control]-[I] on the computer keyboard.**
  If several Parts are selected, the window will show the first one.



How to rename Parts is described on page 44 in this chapter.

Merging Parts

Merging one Part with another adds all Events in the first Part to the second. It is done like this:

1. **Hold down [Alt]+[Control] on the computer keyboard.**

2. **Drag the first Part and release it on top of the other Part.**

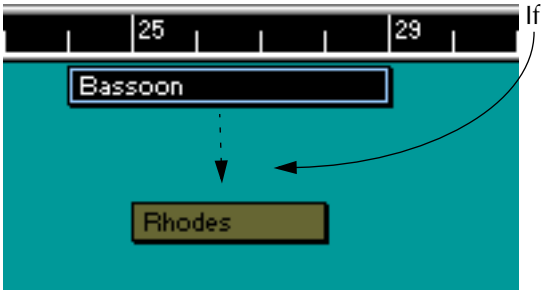
   The result of this depends on the Snap Setting and the Record Mode:

- **Overdub Mode gives a regular merge, that is the contents of the second Part are kept, together with the inserted Events from the first Part.**
- **Replace Mode will make the inserted Events replace the old Events in the destination Part.**
  Regardless of Record Mode, the destination Part will keep all its Parameters (Output, MIDI Channel and so on).

● The dragged Part is not erased or even moved. A copy of its contents is made, and it is this copy that is merged into the other Part.

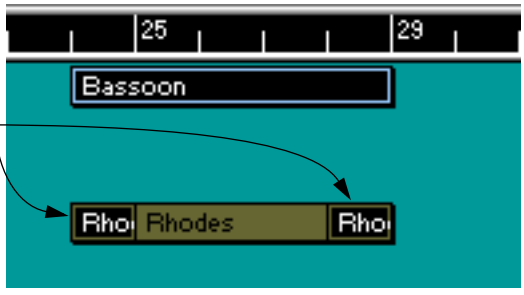
Appearance and size of the merged Part

The start and end points of the two Parts don't have to match at all:



If the two Parts don’t exactly overlap...

...new Parts are created, following the same rules as when creating Parts in other ways.



● You can only merge two Parts which belong to the same Track class. Group Parts can not be merged.

About Cut, Copy & Paste

You can use Cut, Copy and Paste ([Control]-[X], [Control]-[C] and [Control]-[V]) to rearrange your Parts within the Arrangement, or to move Parts between different Arrange windows. Cut, Copy and Paste works according to standard Windows principles. There are however a few things to note:

- **The Parts are always Pasted in beginning at the current Song Position. Before Pasting, move the Song Position to where you want the beginning of the first Part.**
  The Song Position is automatically moved when a Cut or Copy is executed. When you Copy, the Song Position is moved to the end of the last of all selected Parts, making this position a suggestion for Pasting. When you Cut, the Song Position is moved to where the first of the Cut Parts started.

- **If you Paste into the same Arrange window as the Parts came from, they are put in on the same Tracks as they originally were on.**

- **If you Paste into another Arrange window, Cubase VST tries to use existing Tracks if possible.**
  This means that Parts are Pasted in on existing Tracks with the same MIDI channel and Output settings, if there are any. If not, new Tracks are created for the Pasted Parts.

- **If you hold down [Alt] and select Paste from the Edit menu, all the consecutive Parts in the Arrangement will be moved forward to "make room" for the Parts you Paste.**
  Note that the inserted Parts will end up on the same Tracks they have been Copied from.

Part Operations using the Toolbox

Resizing Parts

You can change the length of a Part using the Pencil tool. There are two ways of doing this:

- **Position the pointer close to the end point, and drag to the left (shorten) or to the right (lengthen).**
  This changes the length of the Part (without changing its start position).
- **Position the pointer close to the beginning, and drag to the left.**
  This adds to the beginning of the Part, This does not move the Events in it, it just sizes it as if recording had been activated earlier.

● An outline of the Part shows the size while you are dragging. The Mouse box aids you in positioning the pointer so that you can set the length exactly as you want it. The Snap function helps you to restrict your changes to some even note value (see the Getting Started book).

Shortening a Part with the Pencil.

● If you make a Part shorter, the Events outside the new length are lost.

Repeating Parts

If you hold down [Alt] while lengthening a Part with the Pencil tool, new Parts will be created, all lined up end-to-start after the Previous Part. The new Parts will be copies of the original, including all Events and playback parameters.

The outline shown when you drag the Pencil can be thought of as a “frame”, that becomes filled with as many copies of the original Part as possible.

If you instead hold down the [Control] key, the repeated Parts will be Ghost Parts (see page 45).

- **You can also Repeat using a dialog box, see page 46. This allows you to repeat several Parts at the same time.**

Deleting Parts

This is done with the Eraser tool. Select the Eraser and click on the Parts you want to delete. If you hold down [Alt] while doing this, the Part you click on *and all consecutive Parts* on the Track will be erased.

There are of course several other ways of deleting Parts. These are described in Getting Started.

About Deleting Audio Parts

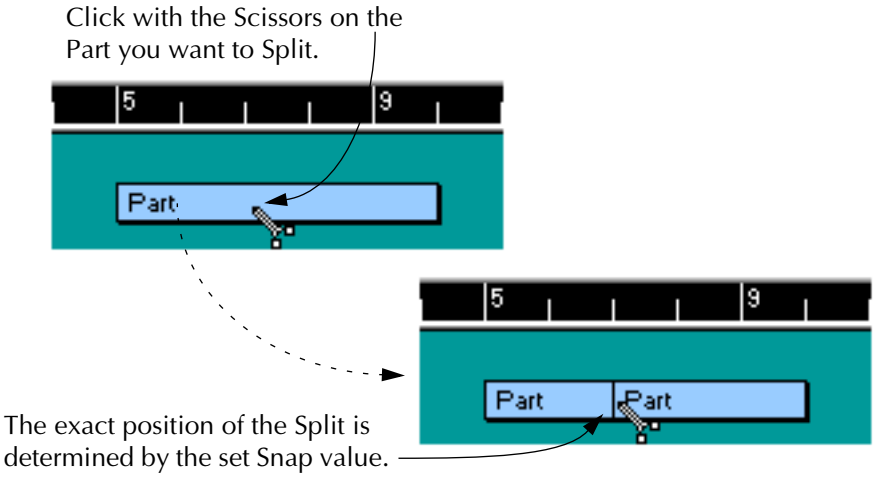
If you delete a Part with the Eraser or via the keyboard, the Part is removed from the Arrange window, but its segments remain in the Pool, and the file is of course left on disk.

If you wish to also delete all segments and the files referenced by the Part, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the Part.**
2. **Hold down [Control] and press [Backspace].**
3. **Click OK in the dialog that appears.**

Splitting a Part in two

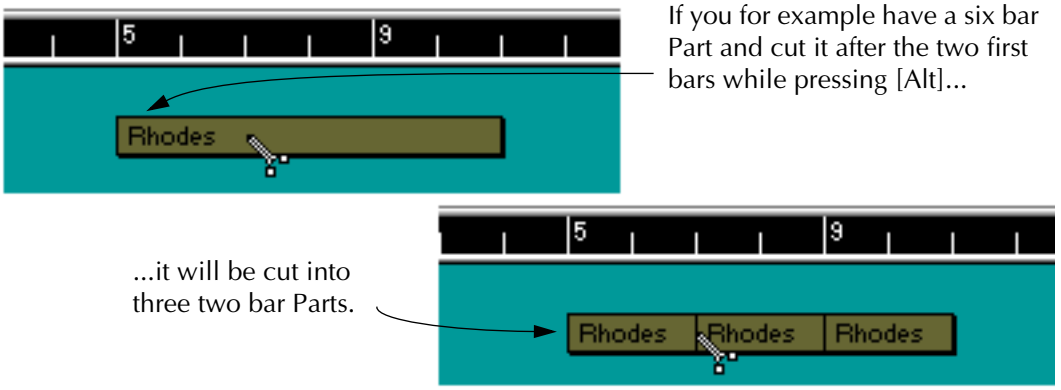
A Part can be split or cut up using the Scissors tool in the Toolbox. This creates two completely independent Parts:



Splitting into several Parts

1. **Hold down [Alt].**

2. **Split the Part as described above.**
   The Part will be split up into many Parts, all with the length of the cut you indicated.



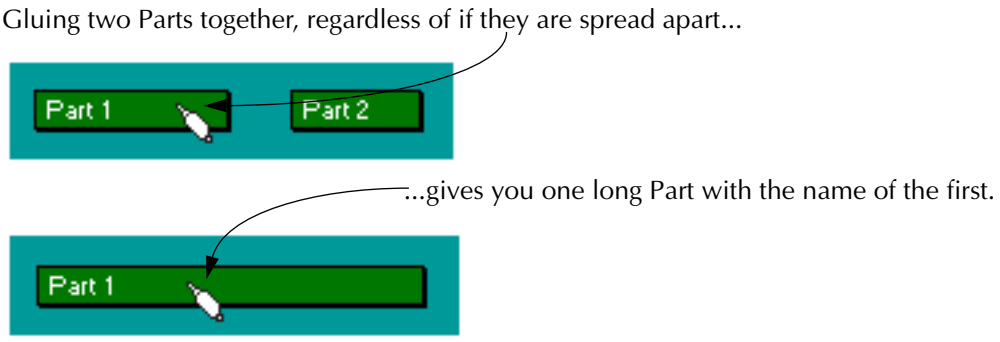
About Splitting Audio Parts

- When you Split a Part in two you also split the Events at that position and therefore create new segments.
- If Snap to Zero is turned on, on the Audio menu, the splitting of the audio will occur at the closest zero crossing. See page 234.

Joining Parts together

Joining Parts means turning two shorter Parts (on the same Track) into one long Part:

- **Click on a Part with the Join tool (glue tube).**
  This Part will now be joined to the Part coming after it on the Track.

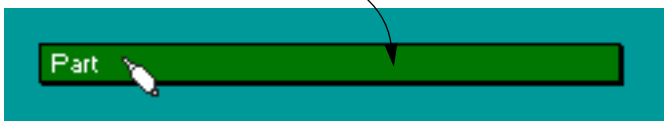

Gluing two Parts together, regardless of if they are spread apart...
Part 1
Part 2
...gives you one long Part with the name of the first.
Part 1

● If the Parts overlap, they are merged in the overlapping area. No Events are lost.

Joining several Parts

If you hold down [Alt] and click on a Part with the Join tool...

...all consecutive Parts on that Track will be glued to the Part you clicked on.



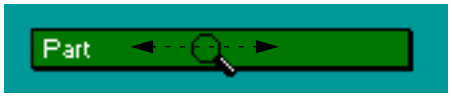
Monitoring Parts

You can listen to the contents of a Part with the Magnifying glass tool.

1. **Select the magnifying glass from the Toolbox.**

2. **Hold down the mouse button.**

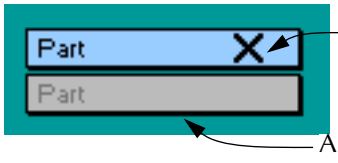
3. **Click on the Part or drag the mouse over the Part you want to hear.**
   What you get depends a bit on what type of Part your are using this on:



- For audio Parts, the event at that position is played back. You can not drag, only click.
- For MIDI Parts, you need to drag back and forth to hear the MIDI data at those positions (scrub).
- For MIDI Parts you can start playback, hold down [Alt] and click on a Part. The Part will then be played back, beginning at the next bar.
- The Magnifying glass can not be used on Group Parts.

Muting Parts

To mute a Part, click on it with the Mute tool (the cross). To "unmute" a Part, just click on it again. Muted Parts are displayed in grey.



Match Quantizing

Why Match Quantize?

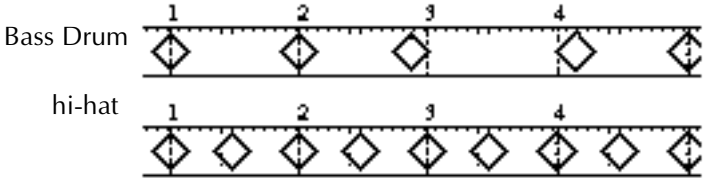
Match Quantizing allows you to match the feel of one Part with the feel of another. If you for instance have made up a great "live" bass drum Part and wish to pass the timing of it on to a hi-hat you should use Match Quantize.

This type of Quantizing takes the positions of the notes in one Part as a reference. It uses them to move some or all notes in another Part to similar positions. By setting a Quantize value you control how far the notes can be moved forward or backwards in time. If you for instance select the Quantize value 8, notes will maximally be moved backwards or forward to the nearest 8th note position in the reference Part, but not beyond.

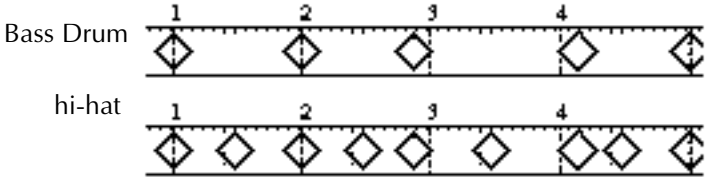
Say for instance that you have a bass drum playing on every beat (quarter) in a bar. The feel of this is to be passed on to a hi-hat playing eighths.

But, you don't want all notes in the hi-hat Part to be moved to the quarters of the bass drum, since this would not give you an eighth note hi-hat Pattern but a strange quarter note one. You only want the notes on the quarter beats to be affected.

To achieve this, you use the Quantize value to put a grid on the Match Quantize effect. In our example, you set Quantize to 8. This will only move the notes in the hi-hat Part that are positioned near one of the four quarter notes in the bass drum Part. The notes between them will "slip through", and not get Quantized.



Before Match Quantizing.



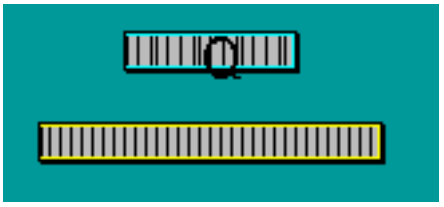
After Match Quantizing.

The Quantize value is used to put a filter, or grid, on the Quantizing so that notes in the "affected Part" that are close to notes in the "feel Part" are moved, while notes that are closer to one of the Quantizing values between the dots are unaffected. If this all sounds technical, experiment a bit and you will soon get the hang of it.

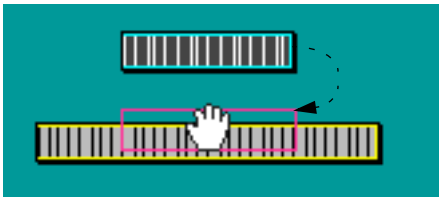
How to use Match Quantize

1. **Set a suitable Quantize value.**
   See the explanation above.

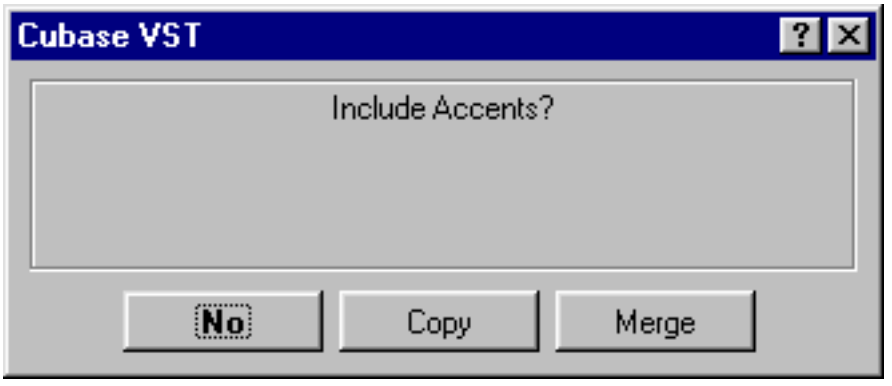
2. Select the Match Quantize (Q) tool.



3. Drag the Part with the desired feel, to the Part you want to Quantize.



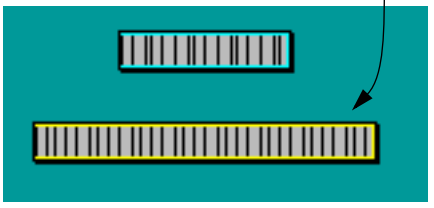
4. Release the mouse button.
A dialog box pops up, asking you if you want to "Include Accents?"



5. Select one of the options in the dialog (See below).

Option	Description
No	No velocities are copied from the Source Part to the Destination Part.
Merge	The velocity values in the Source Part are copied to the Destination Part, but if there are already very strong accents in the Destination Part, these are preserved. Using Match quantize repeatedly on the same two Parts with this option, may give unpredictable results with regards to the velocity value in the Destination Part.
Copy	The velocity values in the Source Part are copied to the Destination Part.

The feel of the first Part will now be passed on to the second Part.



If the Source Part is shorter than the Destination Part, the Source Part's contents are repeated so that the whole Destination Part is Match Quantized.

Using Match Quantize with Audio Parts

This is described in the chapter "The Audio Editor".

Using Match Quantize with Chord Parts

The Match Quantize tool can also be used to "Scale-Map" MIDI Parts, using the chords and the Scale Events in a Chord Part to determine transposition:

1. **Select the Match Quantize tool.**

2. **Drag a Part from a Chord Track onto a Part on a MIDI Track.**
   For the Scale-Map to work, the "Compute Scale"-function must have been performed for the Chord Track.

3. **Release the Mouse button.**
   A dialog will appear, asking you if you want to "Use Chords?".

- **If you click "No":**
  The program looks at each note in the MIDI Part, and transposes it so that it fits the scale determined by the Chord Part.

- **If you click "Yes":**
  The program will transpose notes so that they fit into the chord type, and then transpose them according to the chord root-note.

● The "Use Chords" option is only useful if the MIDI Part is completely played in C.

Renaming Parts

If you hold down [Alt] and double click on a Part, a small dialog box appears where you can change the name of the Part. If you hold down [Control] when hitting [Return], the new name is copied to all the Parts on the Track.

Parts can also be renamed in the Inspector.

Ghost Parts

A Ghost Part is a linked copy of an existing Part. This means that even though the original and the copy share contents (notes and other MIDI data) they may play back on different MIDI Channels and Outputs and with different settings of the Part parameters (see the chapter “The Track Columns and the Inspector” in Getting Started).

Creating a Ghost Part

1. **Hold down the [Control] key.**
2. **Drag the Part you want to copy to a new position.**
3. **Release the mouse button.**
   The Ghost Part appears, shown with a the Part name in italics.

Creating several Ghost Parts

1. **Hold down the [Control] key.**
2. **Lengthen the Part with the Pencil tool.**
   A number of Ghost Parts will be created, all lined up end-to-start after the original Part (the number of Ghost Parts is determined by the length of the “frame” you draw with the Pencil, see page 38).

About Ghost Parts

- Ghost Parts can also be created using the Repeat Parts function on the Structure menu.
- A Ghost Part can be moved as any other Part.
- It can also overlap existing Parts, just as any other Part.
- If you edit the original *or* the Ghost Part in any of the Edit windows, the changes show up in both the original and the Ghost Part. But, the changes don’t take effect for the other Parts until you close the Edit window.
- If you alter the contents of a Ghost Part by recording over it, merging it with another Part or by splitting or joining, it is automatically converted to a regular copy.
- You can "Ghost" any type of Part, but for Group Parts, "real" and Ghost Parts are the same thing.
- For details about Ghost Audio Parts, see the chapter “Making the Most of the Event/Segment Relationship”.

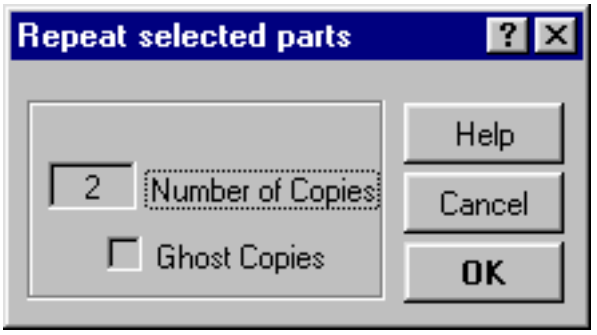
● Do not edit (in an Edit window) several Ghost Parts at the same time that are made up from the same Real Part. It won’t make the program crash or anything, it will just lead to confusing results when you close the editor.

Using the “Repeat” function

This function lets you repeat one or several Parts, on the same or different Tracks:

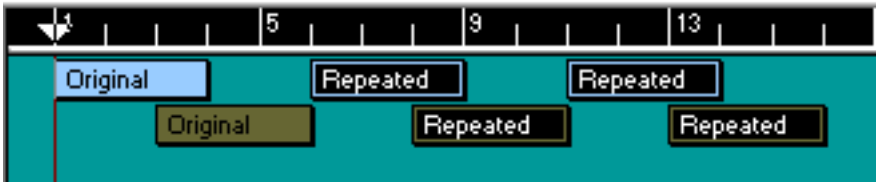
1. **Select the Part(s) you want to repeat.**

2. **Select the “Repeat...“ item on the Structure menu...**
   ...or press [Control]-[K] on the computer keyboard.



3. **Enter the desired number of copies in the dialog box that appears.**
   Here you can also decide if the copies are to be Real Parts or Ghost Parts.

4. **Click “Do It”.**
   The selected Part(s) are repeated, and the copies are lined up "end-to-start" after the original(s). The Parts selected are treated as one block, so the relative spacing between the created Parts is determined by the beginning of the first selected Part and the end of the last.



You can also repeat one Part using the Pencil tool and the [Alt] key, see page 38.

Cut Events

This command makes sure that all Events in a Part end where the Part ends and no later. It only applies to Events which have a length. With MIDI, this means notes only.

About Cut Events

Cubase VST works differently from MIDI when it comes to handling notes. Where MIDI regards Note Ons and Note Offs as separate entities, Cubase VST stores notes, their position and length. This means that even if you change the length of a Part by using the Pencil or Scissors tool you may get notes that play past the end of the Part. This is a valuable feature, but you may not always want this to be the case. If you don't, you should use Cut Events on the Part(s).

Performing Cut Events

1. **Select the Part(s) that are to have their notes Cut.**

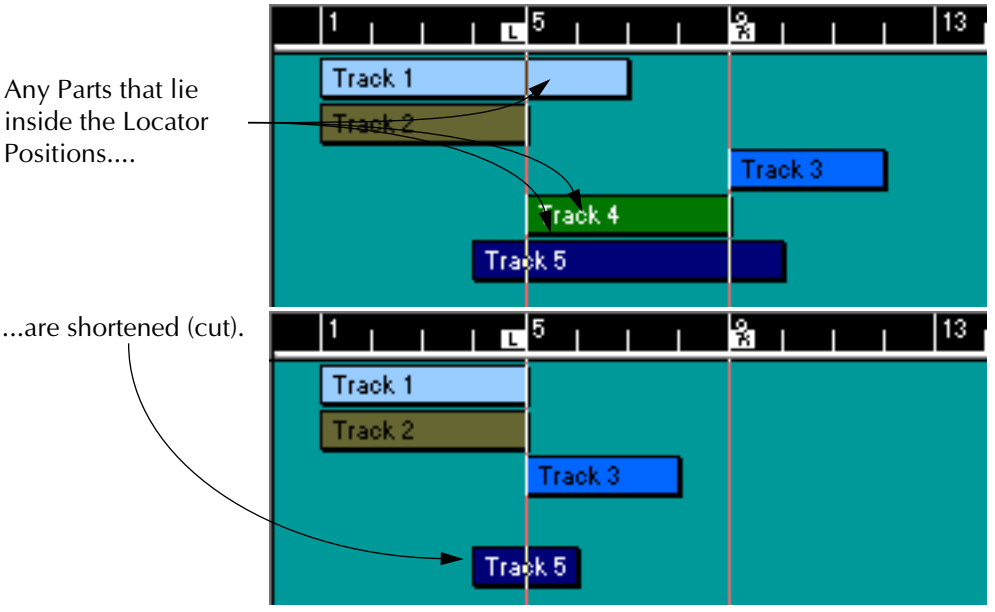
2. **Select Cut Events from the Structure menu.**

Global Cut

This command removes the area between the Locators (on all Tracks):

1. **Set the Locators around the area you want to delete.**

2. **Select Global Cut from the Structure menu.**
   The area between the Locators is removed, and the Parts to the right of the Right Locator are moved to the left, to fill up the gap.



- Muted Tracks are excluded from the operation, i.e. they are not Cut, but the Master Track is affected like any other Track.

Global Insert

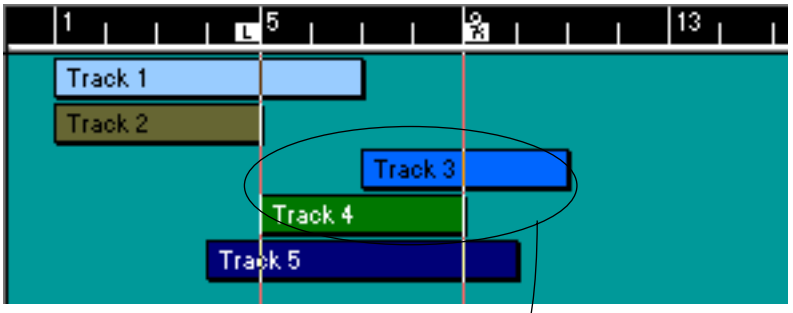
Global Insert is the opposite of Global Cut; an empty area is inserted between the Locator Positions (on all Tracks):

1. **Set the Left Locator to where you want the inserted area to start.**

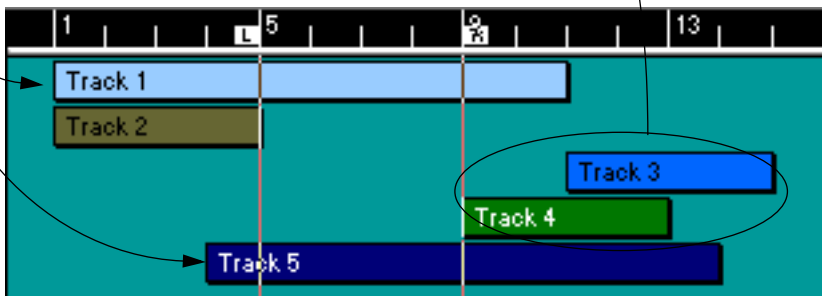
2. **Set the Right Locator to where you want the inserted area to end.**

3. **Select Global Insert from the Structure menu.**
   All Parts to the right of the Left Locator are moved to the Right Locator.

Parts that have their start point before the Left Locator and their end point after it, are lengthened the selected amount of bars, but of course contain no Events in their lengthened sections.



All Parts that started after the Left Locator Position are moved the selected amount of bars.



● As with Global Cut, muted Tracks are excluded from the operation, but the Master Track is affected like any other Track.

Global Split

Global Split is a function that works like a giant version of the scissors tool. Using it you can split all Parts on all non-muted Tracks. Actually it's two cuts you make in one go, one at the Left and one at the right Locator position.

Where Global Cut actually removes part of your music from the Arrangement, Global Split does not. It just splits several Parts at the same positions.

- **If you only want the Parts to be split in one place, set the Left and Right Locator to the same position.**

● Muted Tracks are excluded from the operation.

Copy Range

This command is used to copy a section of the music, on several Tracks, to some other position in the Arrangement:

1. **Set the Left and Right Locator to the beginning and end of the section you want to copy.**

2. **Mute Tracks containing Parts in the range that you don't want to copy.**
   Just as with Global Cut, Insert and Split, muted Tracks are excluded from the operation.

3. **Set the Song Position to the point where you want the copied section to be placed.**

4. **Select Copy Range from the Structure menu.**
   Cubase VST makes up one new Part for each Track, containing all the music between the Locators, and then puts (Pastes in) these new Parts at the Song Position.

Remix Track

This command works differently for different Track Classes:

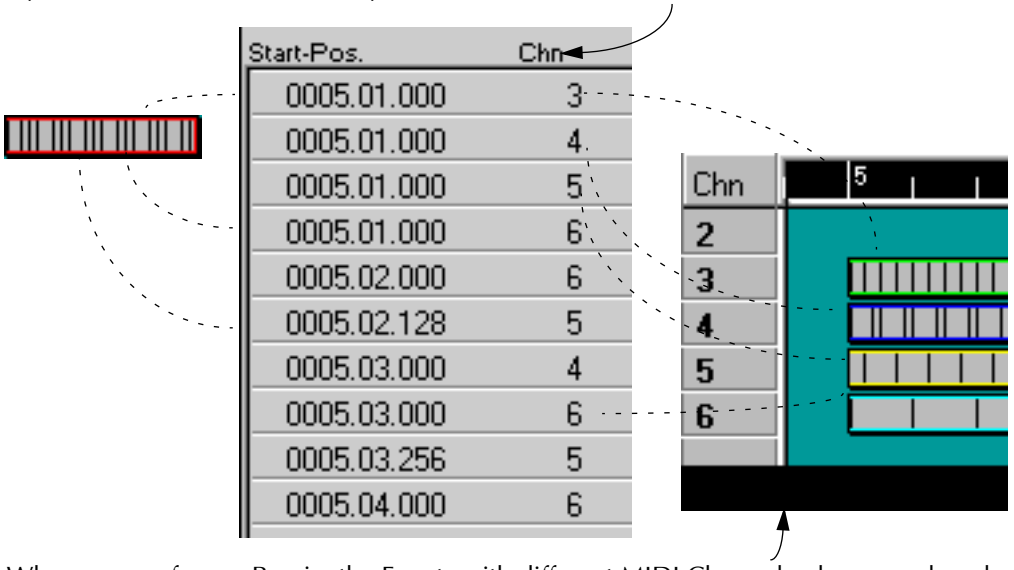
With MIDI Tracks

If you have one or several MIDI Parts containing Events on several MIDI Channels, these Parts can be split up into new Parts, one for each MIDI Channel.

You may get a MIDI Part with Events on several different MIDI Channels if you for example record music from another sequencer into Cubase VST, or record using a split keyboard that sends on two MIDI Channels. This is just fine, if all you want to do is listen to the recorded music – just set the Channel setting for the Track to "Any", and each Event will be played back on its own, associated MIDI Channel (and therefore the right sound). But if you want to edit or rearrange the music you probably wish to work with the different "instruments" separately.

Remix Track therefore allows you to split up a Track into new Parts on new Tracks so that Events get separated according to the MIDI Channel stored with the Event.

If you look at a Part in List Edit, you can see the MIDI Channel value for each Event.



When you perform a Remix, the Events with different MIDI Channel values are placed in new Parts, on new Tracks, each with the Channel setting of their respective Events.

Performing the Remix

1. **Select a MIDI Track to be Remixed.**

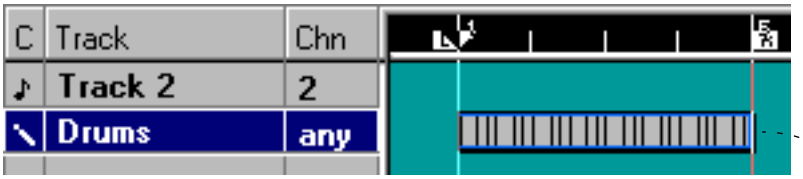
2. **Set up the Left and Right Locators as boundaries for the Remix.**
   All music between the Locators will be Remixed.

3. **Select Remix from the Structure menu.**

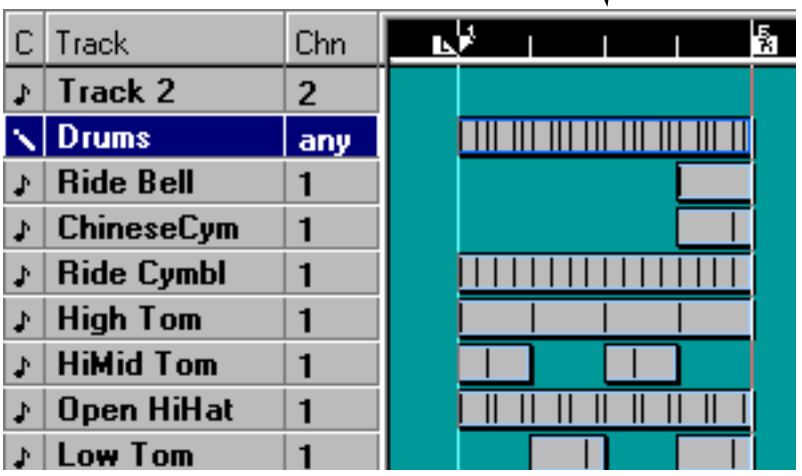
- If possible, the Parts are put in on existing Tracks set to the same MIDI Channel and Output. Otherwise, as many new Tracks as necessary are created. New Parts with Events on one MIDI Channel each are created on those Tracks, between the Left and Right Locators.
- For MIDI Tracks, each Track is set to the MIDI Channel the Events in them are stored on.

Using Remix with Drum Tracks

Remix Track splits up the Drum Track into several new Tracks, one per used Sound in the Drum Track. The new Tracks that are created are MIDI Tracks, with notes on only one Sound per Track. If you want some of the Sounds back into composite Parts, you can always Merge or Mix Down the Parts (see page 36 and below).



The Drum Part is split into new Parts on one Track per Sound.



With Audio Tracks

You may want to split up a Track set to “Any” and which contain Events on several channels, into one Track for each channel. This is done using Remix on the Structure menu.

1. **Select an Audio Track to be Remixed.**

2. **Set up the Left and Right Locators as boundaries for the operation.**
   All audio between the Locators will be Remixed.

3. **Select Remix Track from the Structure menu.**
   New Tracks are created, as many as needed. New Parts with Events on one channel each are created on those Tracks, between the Left and Right Locators. Each Track is set to the Channel the Events in it are stored on.

Mix Down

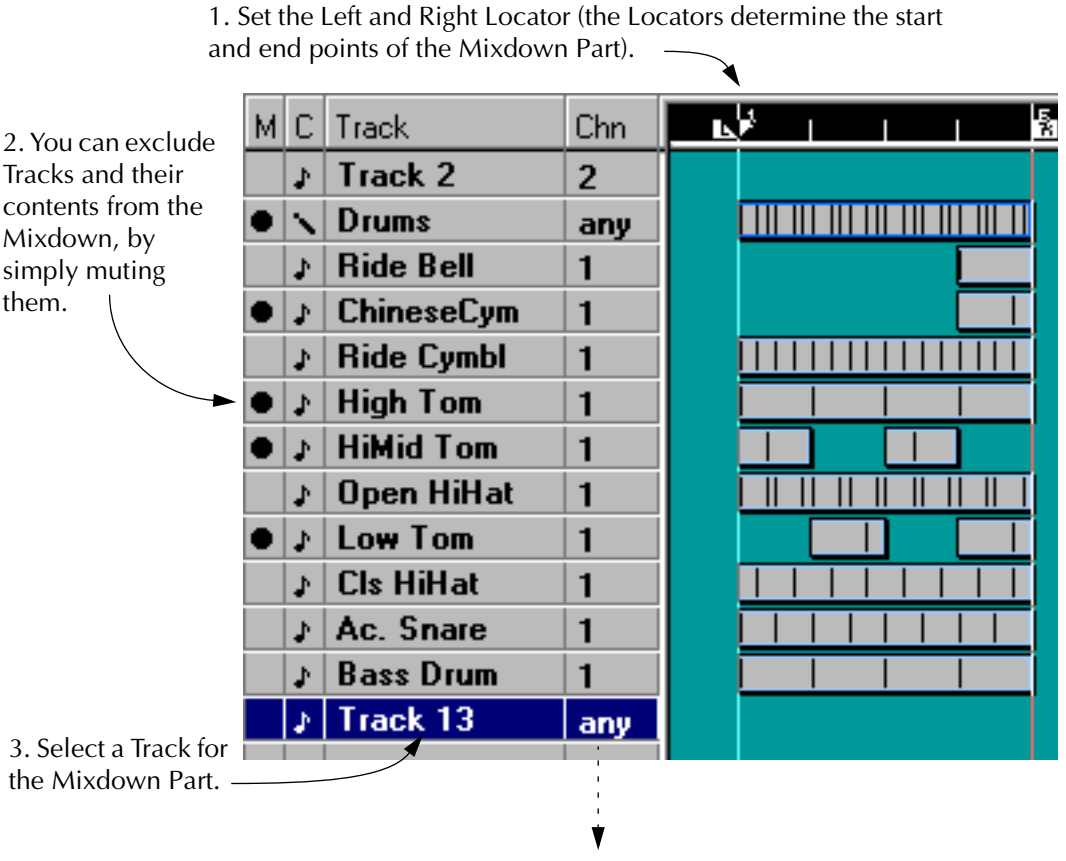
Mix down allows you to merge all Parts on some (or all) MIDI, Audio or Drum Tracks into one composite Part.

With MIDI and Drum Tracks

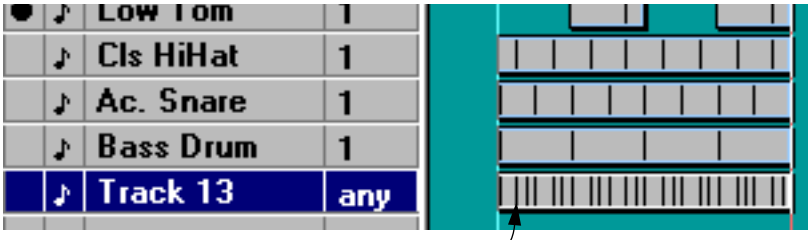
When you Mix down, the MIDI Channels that the Parts or Tracks are set to will be stored as a permanent part of their MIDI data. That is, the MIDI Channel set for each Part replaces the MIDI Channel originally recorded. So, when you play back the Mixdown Part with the MIDI Channel set to "Any", you will actually get the same thing back as when you played back all the Tracks that are now merged into the Mix down Part.

Furthermore, the Playback parameters are used when creating the Mix down Part. For example, a temporary transposition in one of the Parts will be a permanent one in the Mix down Part. The Output setting, on the other hand, is lost in the Mix down, since one Part can output on one Output only.

Performing the Mixdown



4. Select Mix Down from the Structure Menu.



A new Part, named Mixdown, is created on the selected Track.

5. Set the new Track to “Any” and Mute the Parts you have Mixed down, to get the correct sounds and avoid double notes.

- **Drum Tracks are mixed down after the O-Note setting in the Drum Map (see page 123).**
- **Tracks that are included in the mixdown can be set to MIDI Channel "Any" themselves, so that their original MIDI Channels values will be preserved in the Mixdown Part.**

With Audio Tracks

The Mixdown function also mixes down Audio Events. This means that it moves Audio Events from several Tracks into one Track. It should not be confused with the Export Audio command on the File menu, which works directly on audio (as described on page 338).

When do I need Mixdown?

If you record a number of Tracks from the Arrange window, you wind up with one recording per Track. Using Mixdown on the Structure menu allows you to pack all the Events on these Tracks into a Part on one Track. Then, setting this track to channel "Any" will make it play back as before the mixdown.

The benefit of this operation is that when you edit the mixdown Track, all the audio channels are put above each other on one lane each.

Performing the Mixdown

The Mixdown is mainly done as with MIDI Tracks. The big difference is that you select an Audio Track as a destination, and thereby tell the program that it is audio you want Mixed down, not MIDI.

1. **Mute all the Audio Tracks that you want excluded from the Mixdown.**
2. **Select an (empty) Audio Track where you want the mixdown to appear.**
3. **Set the Left and Right Locators to encompass the section of the Arrangement you want to mix down.**
4. **Select Mixdown from the Structure menu.**
5. **Check the Part you get, by setting it to channel “Any”, so that all Events in it play back on their original channels.**
   When you play back the Mixdown Part, also make sure all the original Tracks are muted so that they don't compete for audio channels.

4

Instruments

About Instruments

In Cubase VST, you can define a combination of a certain MIDI Output and a certain MIDI Channel as an “Instrument”. Instruments can be defined for MIDI Tracks and Drum Tracks. Defining a “palette” containing the Instruments you use, can be very practical since you won’t have to think of the exact Output and Channel settings. Instead, you can hide the Output and Channel columns in the Track list by moving them to the right and dragging the Divider to the left.

Defining an Instrument

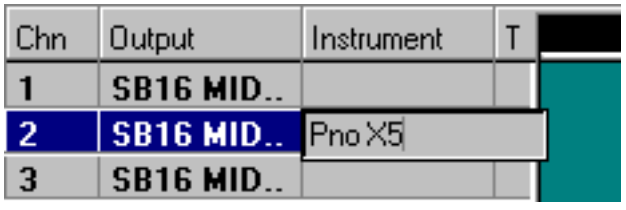
Let’s say that you have a Korg X-5. You set it to play a Piano sound on MIDI Channel 3. X-5 is connected to a standard SoundBlaster interface.

6. Select a Track. Set the MIDI Channel to 2 and the Output to “SB-16MIDI...”.

Track	Chn	Output	Instrument
SoftPad	1	SB16 MID..	
Piano	2	SB16 MID..	
GuitRiff	3	SB16 MID..	

7. Double click in the Instrument column for that Track or press [Alt]+[Control]-[J] on the computer keyboard.

8. Enter a name and press [Return].



In our example, maybe "PnoX5" would be appropriate.

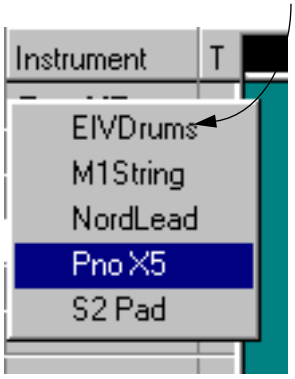
Track	Chn	Output	Instrument	T
SoftPad	1	SB16 MID..		
Piano	2	SB16 MID..	Pno X5	
GuitRiff	3	SB16 MID..		

You have now defined an Instrument called "PnoX5". If you now set a Track (or Part) to use that Instrument it will send its data to the Output “SB-16MIDI...” and it will send on MIDI Channel 2. Likewise, if you change the Output and Channel settings of another Track (or Part) to “SB-16MIDI...” and Channel 2, the Instrument field of the Track/Part will show “PnoX5”.

Selecting an Instrument already defined

There are two ways to select an Instrument for a Track:

- **Press the mouse button with the pointer in the Instrument Track column.**
  The instrument pop-up in the Track list.



- **Pull down the Instrument pop-up in the Inspector.**
  This way you can also select Instruments for Parts.

Deleting an Instrument

1. **Double click on its name.**
   The name dialog box opens up.

2. **Press [Backspace] to clear the line.**

3. **Press [Return].**
   The Instrument is deleted.

● You will probably want the program to start with the same Instruments every time. This is done by saving a Startup Song, as described on page 475.

5

Inspector Real Time Parameters

What can I do with the Inspector?

● This chapter applies to MIDI Tracks and Parts only. For Audio Tracks, the Inspector is mainly used for enabling recording, monitoring, etc (see the Getting Started book).

Using the parameters in the Inspector you can:

- **Change one or several aspects *in the playback* of your recorded music (like volume, velocity, pitch, selected sound, etc).**
  These changes are easily reversible as they are made to what is played back, not to what has actually been recorded.

- **Change your music in real-time - *i.e. while you play* - for instance have it transposed.**
  This is done in connection with the Thru-function in Cubase VST and we call it Realtime Thruing.

The Inspector and how to use it is described in the chapter "The Track Columns and the Inspector" in Getting Started; this chapter mainly explains the parameters. Just remember the following:

- The settings you make in the Inspector will affect the material during playback. You do not change anything recorded.
- Since the Inspector settings don't actually change anything recorded, they will not be reflected in the MIDI Editors. To convert the Inspector settings to "real" MIDI Events, you need to use the Freeze Play Parameter function on the Functions menu (see the Getting Started book).
- When you change the value of a parameter in the Inspector, the new value is immediately sent out to the MIDI Output.
- The values sent out will not only affect the sound source assigned to the selected Track, but all MIDI devices on the same Output and MIDI Channel.

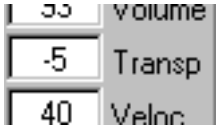
The Parameters

Volume

MIDI contains a number of different "Controllers", that is messages for continuously changing aspects of a sound or an instrument. One of the most important Controllers is MIDI Volume. In the Volume field in the Inspector, you can specify a volume value (0 – 127) for a MIDI or Drum Track or for the selected Part(s). This value will be sent out at the start point of the Track/Part and then changes the overall volume for the sound.

- MIDI Volume (MIDI Controller 7) is a function totally separate from MIDI note messages and their velocity values. Not all MIDI Instruments can receive MIDI Volume, check the instruments operation manual or MIDI Implementation Chart.

Transpose



Changing this value will transpose the notes from a MIDI or Group Track. Remember that it is only the *output* that is transposed, not the actual recorded material. Transposing a Group Part means transposing all notes from all the Parts within the Group.

You can specify a transpose value between –127 and +127 semitones, but remember that the total range of MIDI note numbers is 0–127. Furthermore, not all instruments can play back notes over the whole range. Therefore, extreme transpositions can give rather strange and unwanted results.

Drum Parts (or Drum Tracks) have no Transpose parameter.

- **You may enter a transpose value directly from the computer keyboard, by typing [Shift]-[O] and entering a value.**

Velocity

This value is used to change the dynamics of a MIDI or Drum Part. The value in this field is added to the velocity of each note message that is sent out from the Part. A positive value means that the resulting volume is raised and a negative that it is lowered. The range is –127 to +127 and 0 is of course no change.

- **You may enter a Velocity value directly from the computer keyboard, by typing [Shift]-[V] and entering a value.**

● Not all instruments handle the velocity range identically. A certain value might lead to more drastic changes on one instrument than on another.

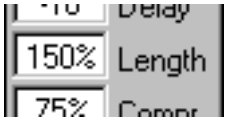
Delay

This is used to delay a MIDI or Drum Part relative to other Parts. The values represent 1 tick (fraction of a beat; there are 384 ticks per beat). The range is –127 to +127. The negative values put the Part ahead of the other Parts. Use this feature to adjust the feel of a Part or Track or to compensate for "slow reactions" in a MIDI instrument.

● Notes that wind up either before the beginning (1. 1. 0) or outside a set Cycle, due to delay settings, are not played.

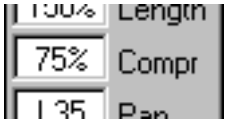
- **You may enter a Delay value directly from the computer keyboard, by typing [Shift]-[D] and entering a value.**

Length



This value adjusts the lengths of all notes in a Drum or MIDI Part. The range is Off and 25% to 200%. 200% means that all notes get double the length of the recorded. 25% means they get a quarter of their actual length.

Compression



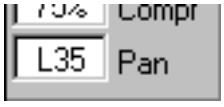
This parameter acts on MIDI and Drum Parts and can be made to compress or expand the dynamic range of MIDI notes. It does this by adjusting velocity values (make sure that your sounds are velocity sensitive!) It can be set to Off and 25% to 200% (where 25% means that all velocity values are divided by four, and 200% that they are doubled). The point is, that this will also affect the *difference* in velocity between the notes. By combining this with the Velocity parameter, you can compress or expand the velocity range of the notes in a Part. An example:

Let's say you have three notes with the velocity values 60, 90 and 120, and wish to "even out" the velocity differences somewhat. If you set the Compression value to 50%, the notes will play back with the velocity values 30, 45 and 60. By adding 60 in the Velocity field, you will have the notes playing back with the velocity values 90, 105 and 120, meaning you have in effect compressed the velocity range.

In a similar way, you can use Compression values greater than 100% together with negative values in the Velocity field, to expand the velocity range.

- Remember that the maximum velocity is always 127 no matter how much you try to expand.

Pan



This parameter allows you to send Pan messages (MIDI Controller 10) to your MIDI instrument, placing different sounds in different stereo positions. The possible values are Off, L1–L64 (left), 0 (center) and R1–R63 (right).

- Check the MIDI specification of your instrument to make sure it responds to Pan messages.

6

Program Changes and MIDI Volume

Why you should read this Chapter

When you arrange in Cubase VST you will find yourself spending some time selecting Programs and setting Volumes for each instrument. This will be significantly easier if you understand exactly how and where Program and Volume Changes can be inserted and the advantage that the different methods have.

Program Change

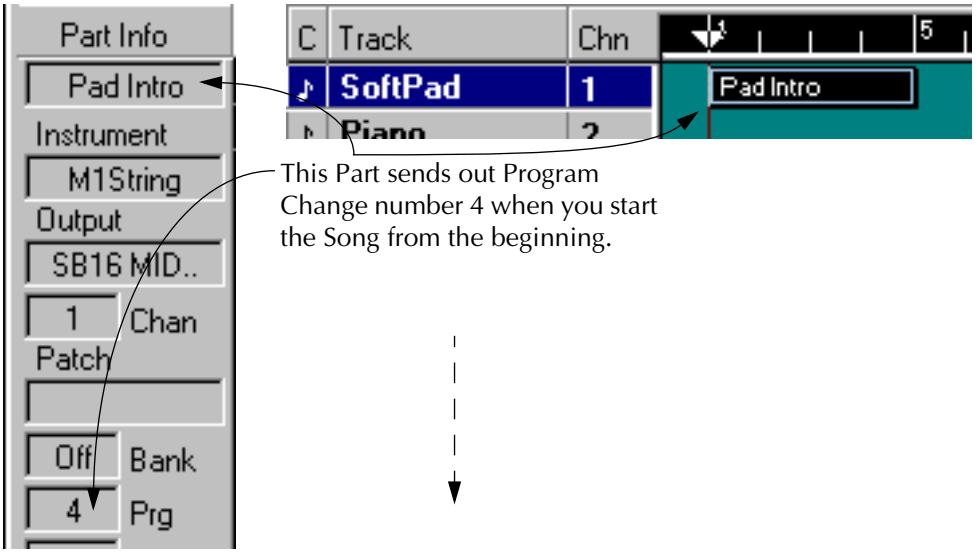
Program Change messages are used to switch between sounds in your instruments. By inserting Program Change messages for all MIDI Channels, at the *beginning* of the Song, the instruments will automatically play with the correct sounds when you open and play the Song (if you haven't "re-programmed" your instruments since you played the Song last).

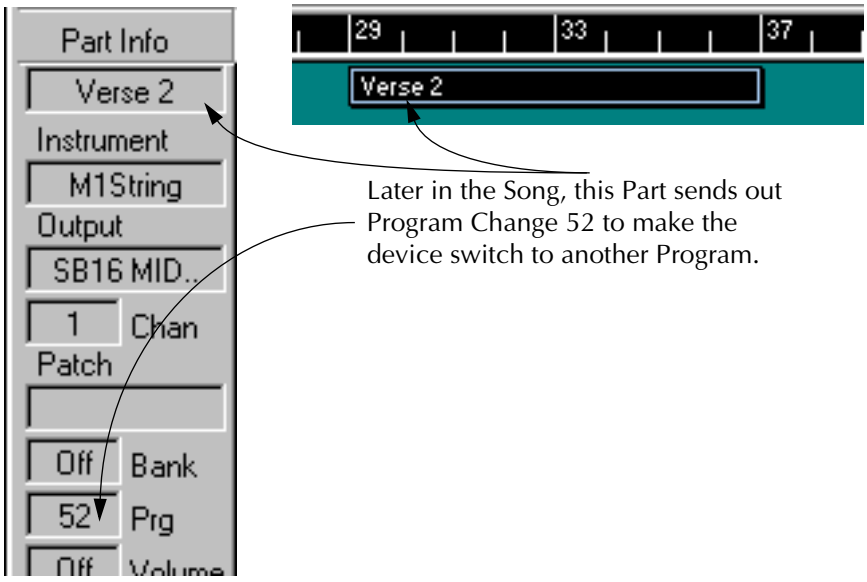
By inserting Program Change messages *somewhere in "the middle"* of a Song, you can use one MIDI Channel for playing several different sounds throughout the Song. This allows you to use "limited MIDI resources" as effectively as possible.

Entering Program Change in the Inspector

As described in the Getting Started book, you can enter Program Change messages in the Inspector, either for the whole Track or for one Part at a time. If you're not sure how this is done, refer to the chapter "The Track Columns and the Inspector" in the Getting Started book.

- **If you enter a Program Change for *the Track*, this Program Change will be sent out at the beginning of *every* Part on that Track.**
  This might not always be desirable, since some devices shut off their sound momentarily when they receive a Program Change message, see below.
- **If you enter a Program Change message for *one certain Part*, this is sent out where *that specific Part* starts (and for no other Part).**
  For instance you can enter one Program for the first Part on the Track and then another for a Part later in the Song, where you want the device to switch to another Program.





● As described in the "Track columns and the Inspector" chapter in the Getting Started book, the Prg field in the Inspector will show a GM Program name instead of a number, if GM, GS or XG Mode are activated in the GM/GS/XG Editor.

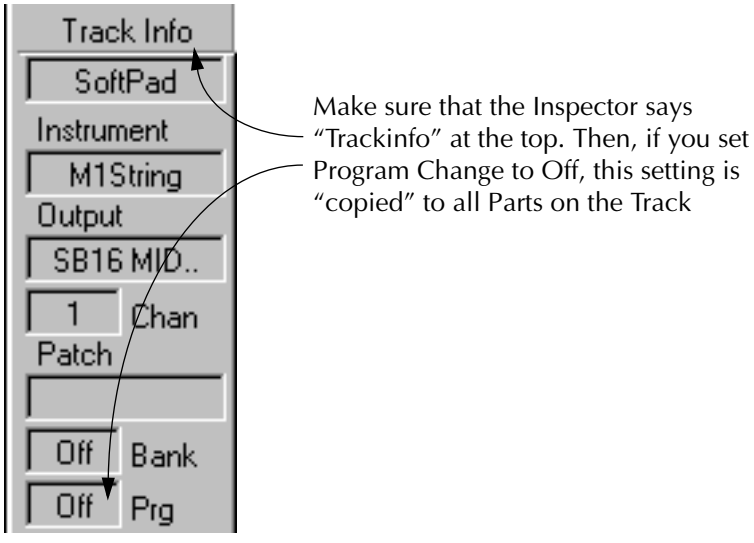
Resetting Program Change

If you for example Copy and Paste or duplicate Parts a lot, Program Change messages setup in the Inspector might get copied or moved too, ending up in positions where you don't want them. The quickest way to get around this might be to start over from scratch:

1. **Make sure no Part is selected.**

2. **Select the Track for which you want to "reset" Program Change.**

3. **Use the Inspector to set the Program Change to "Off".**
   Even if the box already says "Off", adjust the value up and then down again to make sure all Parts are set to "Off".



4. **Now select each Part for which you want a Program Change message, and enter it in the Inspector.**

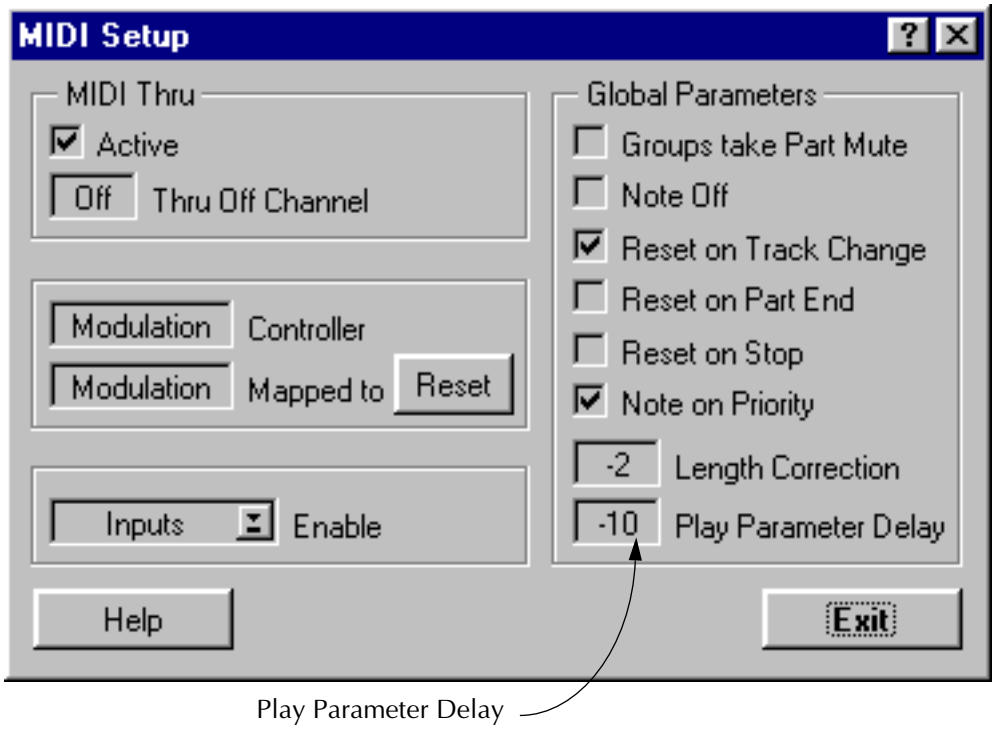
Program Change and Delay

Many devices shut off their sound momentarily when they switch to a new Program. Other devices don't, but still might need some time from the moment the Program Change messages is received until the Program is "loaded and ready". This will be apparent since the device will "choke" on the first notes after the Program Change message, or not play them at all.

For this situation, Cubase VST has a special setting in the MIDI Setup dialog which allows you to have Inspector MIDI messages sent out in advance.

1. **Open the MIDI Setup dialog from the Options menu.**

2. **Adjust the "Play Parameter Delay" value.**



- If the Value is negative, the messages are sent out in advance (before the Part starts).
- If this number is too close to zero, your instrument will "choke" just when the Part with the Program Change message begins.
- If you set it to too large a negative number the instrument will switch to a new Program before the previous Part has ended.

Selecting Programs in the GM/GS/XG Editor

As stated in the Getting Started book, you can also use the GM/GS/XG Editor to send Program Change messages to your instruments. However, there are a couple of things to note:

- **Program Change settings in the GM/GS/XG Editor are sent out when you open the Song and when you make the actual settings.**
  They are not updated, "chased" or sent out automatically during playback.

- **Program Change settings in the GM/GS/XG Editor have no connection with the settings in the Inspector.**
  Combining Program Change settings in Editor and Inspector may cause some confusion.¨

- **The Program settings in the GM/GS/XG Editor are always named according to the General MIDI standard.**
  If your instrument is not GM compatible, you will not get the sound you select.

Therefore, we recommend that you use the GM/GS/XG Editor:

- When you are working with General MIDI instruments only.
- When your music doesn't require any Program Changes during playback.
- When you are sure you don't need to record any Program Change settings, or make any in the Inspector.

Recording or Entering Program Change in the Editors

You can record Program Change messages if you have equipment that can transmit them. This is done as with any other MIDI recording in Cubase VST, simply enter Record mode and transmit the message (probably be selecting a new Program on the front panel of your instrument). Please also refer to the chapter "Filtering and Mapping MIDI Data".

You can also enter Program Change messages "by hand" in List Edit and in Key Edit's and Drum Edit's Controller Display. List edit is probably the best choice in most situations, since it shows you more precisely where the message has been entered.

Entering Program Change messages in List Edit allows you to put them anywhere you want them, even in the middle of a Part. It also allows you to perform editing functions on them.

Finding Program Change messages in Parts

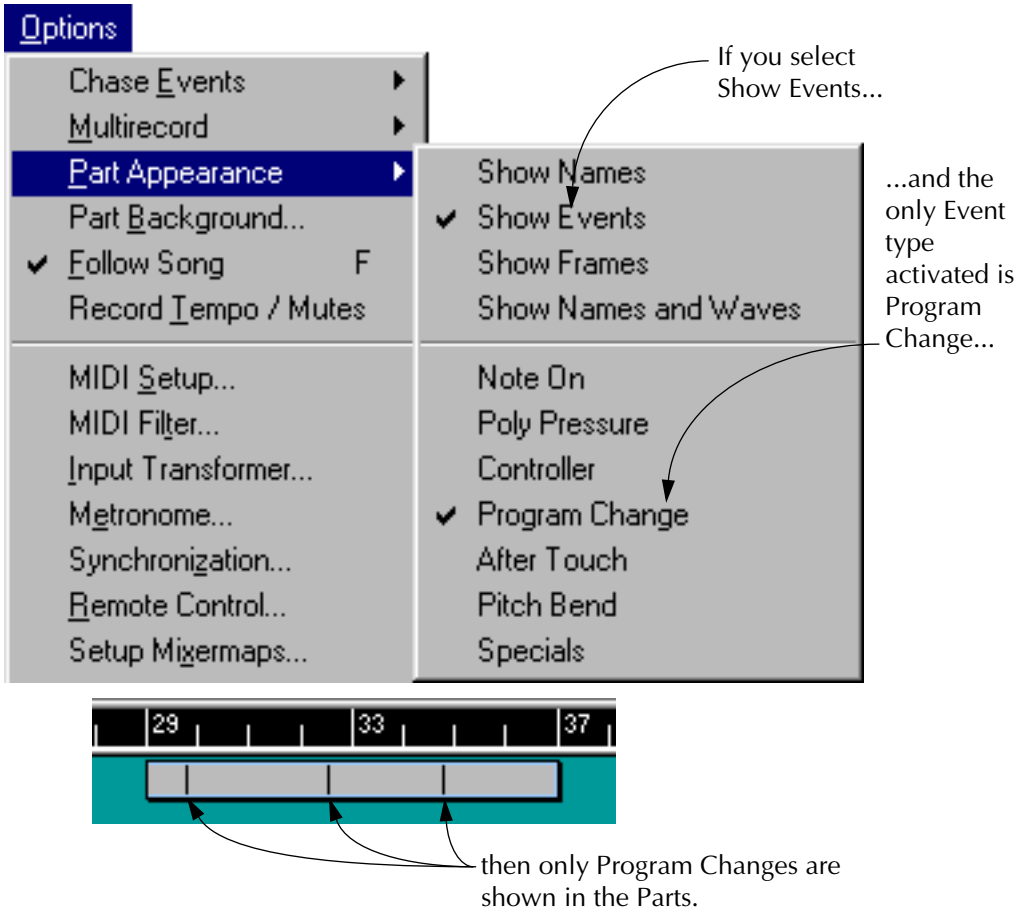
If you are unsure of if a Part contains Program Change messages there are two easy ways to find out:

Method 1

1. **Pull down the Options menu.**

2. **Switch Part Appearance to "Show Events".**

3. **Use the lower half of the Part Appearance menu to deactivate all options except "Program Change".**
   The Arrange window now shows Program Change messages as vertical lines in the Parts.



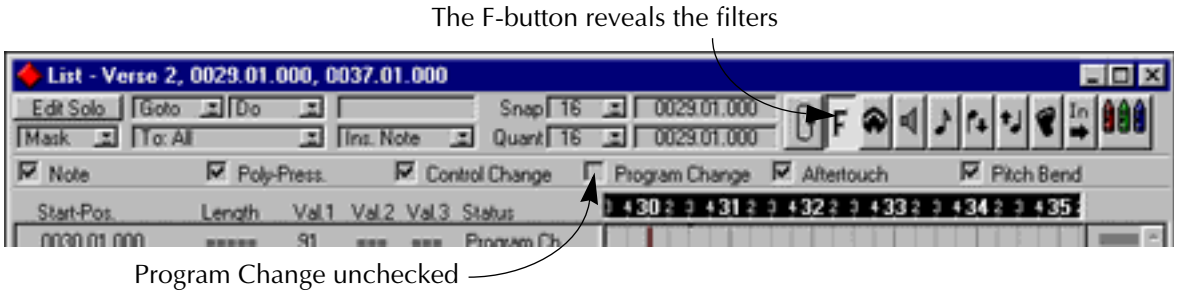
Method 2

1. **Open the Track, in List Edit.**

2. **Click on the "F" (Display Filter) button.**

3. **Make sure that Program Change is the only *un-checked* item.**

Now only Program Change messages are shown in the List.



Which should I choose?

Well it's of course up to you. The only advice we'd like to give is not to mix the two methods unless you are absolutely sure of what you're doing. For more help in your decision, please check the table below:

Method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Inspector	• Can be viewed and changed in real time from the Arrangement, while the music is playing.	• Always positioned at beginning of a Part.
GM/GS/XG Editor	•Graphical overview of the Program settings for all 16 MIDI Channels at the same time.	•Program Change messages sent out at the beginning of the Song only. •Program names apply to GM instruments only.
Recording or entering into an editor	• Can be entered anywhere in a Part. • Can be edited using all the available edit tools. • Finding the right Program number might be easier by recording a button on the synth front panel than by typing in a number.	• Cannot be changed from the Arrange window.

Program Change Numbering

Program Change numbers range from 1 to 128 in MIDI. Some instruments use other types of numbering; some count from 0 to 127 and others have the numbers divided into Banks (A 1 to 32, B 1 to 32 etc). To find the right number to enter in for example the Inspector, consult the device's operation manual or simply experiment until you get it right!

About Bank Select

With Program Change messages, you are able to select between 128 different programs in your MIDI device. However, many MIDI instruments contain a larger number of program locations. To make these available from within Cubase VST, you need to use Bank Select messages, a system in which the programs in a MIDI instrument are divided into Banks, each Bank containing 128 programs. If your instruments supports MIDI Bank Select, you can use the Bank field in the Inspector to select a Bank, and then the Prg field to select a program in this Bank.

- Technically, a Bank Select message is actually a combination of two MIDI Controller messages (Controller 0 and 32). However, not all manufacturers follow the MIDI Standard in this aspect; some instruments use Controller 0 messages as a replacement for standard Bank Select messages. If this is the case with your instruments, you need to multiply the value in the Bank field with 128 to select program Banks. Refer to the documentation for your MIDI equipment for more information.

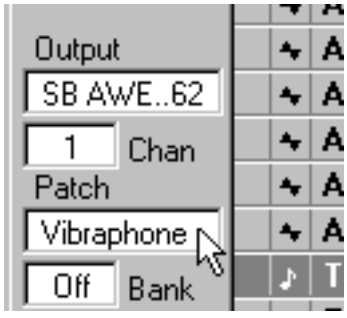
Selecting SoundFont Banks and Patches

If you are using a soundcard that supports SoundFonts, such as the Creative Labs AWE series, Cubase VST offers a special feature to make it easier to select sounds for the card's built-in synthesizer:

1. **Make sure the card's built-in wavetable synthesizer is selected on the Output pop-up menu.**

2. **Pull down the Bank pop-up menu and select a SoundFont Bank.**
   The Banks are displayed with names instead of numbers.

3. **Instead of using the Program Change (Prg) pop-up menu, pull down the Patch pop-up menu.**



   A list is displayed, containing all the SoundFont names for the sounds in the selected Bank.

4. **Select a Patch from the pop-up menu.**

- Cubase VST automatically detects an installed SoundFonts compatible soundcard and makes the SoundFonts Patch pop-up menu available, provided that the proper software is installed. This is usually done automatically when installing the card. If in doubt consult the documentation for the card.

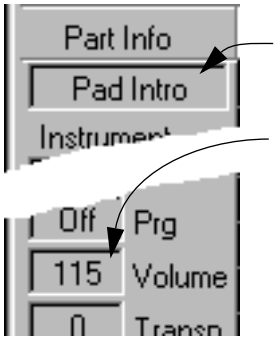
MIDI Volume

MIDI Volume is a MIDI Controller message, Controller 7 to be exact. When a device receives MIDI Volume messages it is supposed to adjust its volume for that MIDI Channel, just as if you had changed the it directly from the front panel.

- Some older synthesizers might not be able to respond to MIDI Volume!

Entering Volume in the Inspector

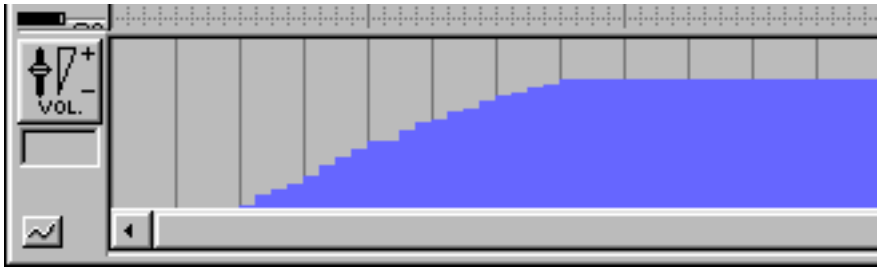
Just as with Program Change messages you can enter MIDI Volume messages in the Inspector for individual Parts, for example to get a basic mix at the beginning and to introduce volume changes at different positions in the Song.



When Cubase VST plays back this Part, the instrument will receive a MIDI Volume message to set its Volume to a value of 115.

Entering Volume in an Editor

You can enter single MIDI Volume messages in the List editor, but it is probably more convenient to use the Controller Display in Key and Drum Edit. This allows you to “paint” volume curves, to easily create fade ins and fade outs etc.



A Fade in, drawn in Key Edit.

Finding Volume messages in Parts

The same method described above for finding Program Changes can be used to find Volume. The only difference is that you specify Controllers in the Part Appearance pop-up or in the List Edit Filter section. Please note that this displays all Controllers, though, not only Volume.

Which should I choose?

Again – it's your choice, but the table might give some advice:

Method	Advantages	Disadvantages
Inspector	• Visible directly from the Arrange window. • Can be changed in real time from the Arrangement, while the music is playing.	• Can only be used for "direct changes" not for fades. • Always appear at the beginning of the Part.
Recording or entering into an editor	• Can be entered anywhere in a Part. • You can draw in smooth curves in Key and Drum Edit. • Can be recorded from external equipment such as a foot pedal or slider. • Can be edited using all the available edit tools.	• Not visible from the Arrange window. • Can't be changed from the Arrange window.

About Chase

Chase is a function that makes sure your devices always are set to the right Program and Volume among other things. Chase works both on Inspector settings and on "real data" in the Parts. See the Online Help for more information.

7

Programming and Recording Mutes and Solo

Pre-programming Mutes

You can define and store up to ten Track Mute settings. These can be used for instant recall of any combination of muted Tracks.

1. **Mute the Tracks you want Muted.**
   You can use either the Mute function or the Solo function, as described earlier.

2. **Hold down [Shift]+[Alt]+[Control] and press one of the function keys [F2] to [F11].**
   The Mute setting is now stored under that key.

3. **To recall a setting: Hold down [Alt]+[Control] and press the corresponding function key ([F2] to [F11]) .**

Recording Mutes and Solo

It is possible to record Mutes and Solo, just like any regular MIDI data. Recording Mutes can be very handy, since it allows you to have automated Mutes happening at certain positions on playback, as an alternative to permanently deleting some music or other information on a Track. You can record Mutes in several ways:

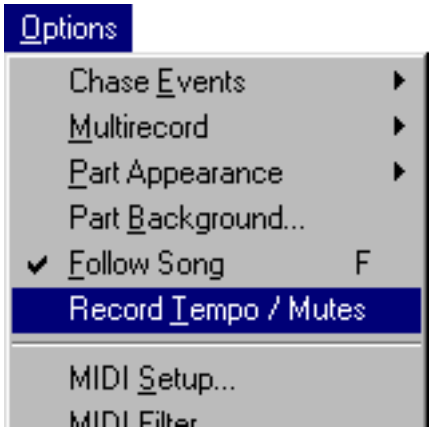
- **Record a single Mute-click in the Track list.**
  Instead of clicking on the Mute button, you can press [Alt]+[Control]-[M] to mute the selected MIDI Track.

- **Record pre-programmed Mutes on several Tracks.**
  See the previous page.

- **Record the fact that you activated the Solo function.**
  Solo is just a special case of Mute, where all but one Track are muted.

Performing the Recording

1. **Select the "Record Tempo/Mutes" item on the Options menu.**
   When this is ticked, recording of Mutes is possible. (The flag is also used for recording tempo changes, see page 394).



2. **Select a MIDI Track to record the Mutes on.**
   You should *not* select a MIDI Track onto which you have recorded music. We strongly recommend you to use a separate Track for recording Mutes, to avoid confusion (see later in this chapter). You can then record all the different mute settings for any and all other Tracks on this single Track.

3. **Activate recording at some point.**
   If you want to mute a Track from the beginning, put your Mute Events one or two ticks before the first notes, so that you are sure the first note also gets muted.

4. **When you reach the point where you want the mute to happen, perform it by clicking in the Mute column, by pressing [Alt]+[Control] and [F2] to [F11] or by activating the Solo function.**

5. **Keep on muting and un-muting Tracks for as long as you wish.**
   The Record switch (Overdub/Replace) applies, so that you can overwrite or add Mute and Un-mute Events as you wish.

6. **Terminate recording as usual.**

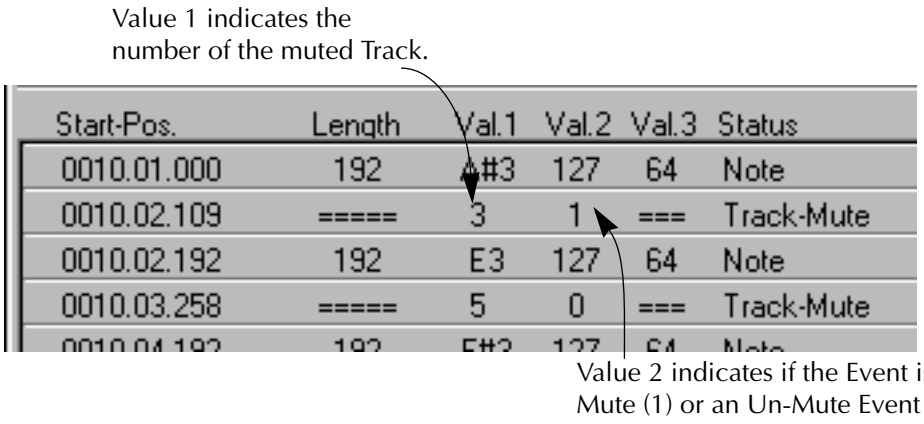
About recording Mutes

There aren't really any restrictions to what you can do. Things can get quite involved if you indulge in complex mute setups. Observe the following:

- **Muting silences *all output* from a Track, notes, Continuous Controllers, MIDI Mixer data, System Exclusive, everything - including the mute Events themselves!**
  This means, that you should avoid recording mute Events for the very Track you are recording on.
  An example might clarify this: Let's say you are recording mutes on Track 1, and happen to record a mute Event followed by an un-mute Event, both for Track 1. When you play back the Track and the song position reaches the first Event, the Track will mute itself. The un-mute will never happen since the Track is muted for all output. This is why you should always record mutes on a separate mute-Track, and never record any mutes for that Track.
- **A mute Track may of course be muted by another Track, which leads to the same confusion as above.**
- **Notes that have started before the mute are not cut off by the mute itself. They always play to their end.**
- **Mutes are chased (see page 71 and the Online Help) if the Chase Events function on the Options menu is activated, but only within one Part. Make sure to end your Mute recording with the Track in the right status (muted or un-muted).**
- **You can only use Tracks 1 to 128 for Mute recording.**

About editing recorded Mutes

If you need to edit or delete your recorded Mute Events, this is done in List Edit. The Mute Events are shown just like any other Events, and are handled in the same way.


Value 1 indicates the number of the muted Track.
Start-Pos. Length Val.1 Val.2 Val.3 Status
0010.01.000 192 A#3 127 64 Note
0010.02.109 ===== 3 1 === Track-Mute
0010.02.192 192 E3 127 64 Note
0010.03.258 ===== 5 0 === Track-Mute
Value 2 indicates if the Event is a Mute (1) or an Un-Mute Event (0).

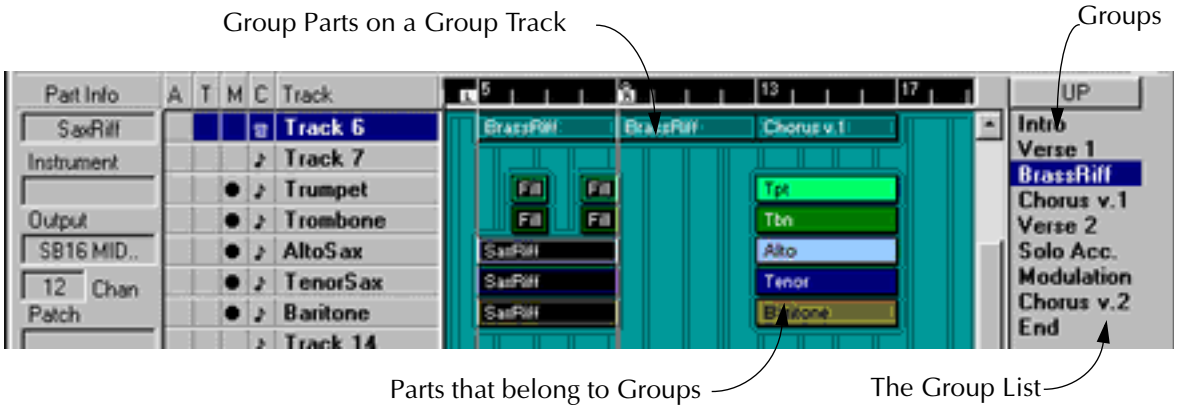
The mute Events that get recorded are of two types: Mute Events and Un-mute Events. When one of these Events is played back, the Track changes to the status of that Event. This means that if the Track is already muted when a mute Event is played back, nothing happens. This may sound obvious, but when you rewind or fast forward to some point, and start playback from there, this might confuse you. A Track that is "manually" muted is also un-muted by an Un-mute Event.

8

Groups

About Groups

● Audio Parts cannot be Grouped.



Defining a Group is a way to make Cubase VST look at several Parts as one entity. This allows you to handle a set of Parts as one section, making it easier for you to experiment with the structure of your song. To play back Groups, you need to place them as Group Parts on a special Track called a Group Track. Groups can be used in many ways:

- **Group all the brass parts in a chorus (trumpet, sax, trombone...) so that they can be handled as a section of the orchestra and easily be repeated in every chorus.**
- **Turn every section of a song (intro, verse, chorus, etc), into a Group so that the song can be remodelled fast, on a separate Group Track.**
- **Build up each Part of the song (intro, verse, chorus...) in one Arrange window each, and assemble the song on a Group Track in yet another Arrange window.**

As you understand from the examples above, the Groups are global for the whole Song. A Group created in one Arrange window can easily be played back in another. All in all you can have 64 groups, which are saved with the Song.

● A Part isn't muted or deleted when it is used in a Group. Parts can both be used as members of one or several Groups and as regular Parts at the same time. Therefore, you might have to Mute the Tracks with the Parts that make up the Group. If you don't and both the Group and the regular Parts are positioned at the same positions, you will get double notes that might give you an increase in volume, reduced polyphony or unwanted flanger effects.

● Parts that have been used as components in a Group, can be moved around without affecting what the Group plays. However, if you change the *contents* of the Parts, this will be reflected in the Groups.

How to use Groups - the basic steps

Using Groups can be broken down into the following steps:

1. **Use the "Build Group" command to assemble Parts into one or several Groups.**
   This determines which Parts should be in each Group. The created Group is placed in the Group List (see page 81).

2. **Create a Group Track.**
   This is necessary to be able to play back the Groups (see page 82).

3. **Select Groups from the Group list, and place them on the Group Track as Group Parts.**
   This is how Groups are played back - see page 83.

Building Groups

Creating a new Group

1. **Select the Parts you want to include in the Group.**
   A Group can contain any type of Part, except other Group Parts.

2. **Select "Build Group" from the Structure menu, or press [Control]-[U].**
   A dialog appears:

3. **Enter the name you want for the Group.**

4. **Click "New" or press [Return] on the computer keyboard.**
   The Group is created and added to the Group List . If the list is hidden, it is automatically displayed when you create a new Group.

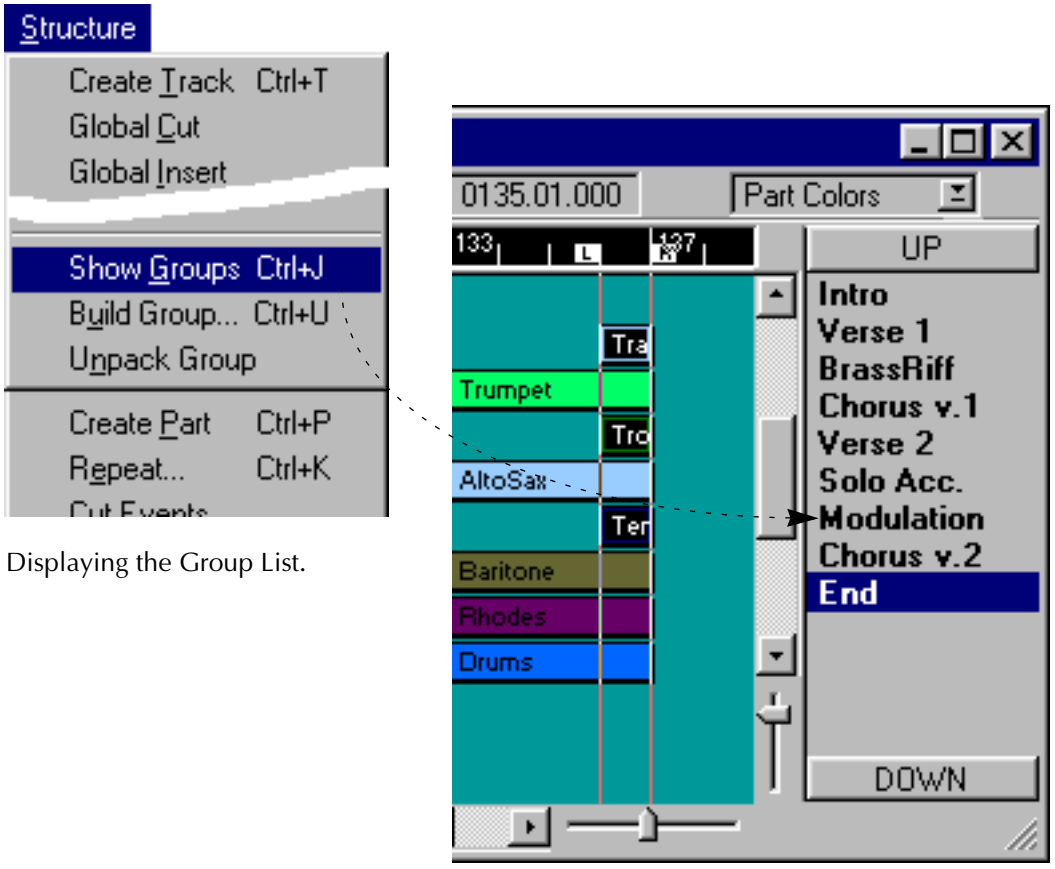
● The Parts keep their Playback Parameter settings within the Group. They also keep their relative starting points.

The above means that all the Parts that are selected when you created the new Group are considered as one block of music. This block is made up of several Parts which all have a relation to each other, positionwise, and which all send out on their respective MIDI Channel, and Output, and which all can have different Playback Parameter settings.

Adding Parts to a Group

If you already have created a Group, but want to add one or more Parts to it, proceed as follows:

1. **If the Group List is hidden, display it by selecting the "Show Groups" item on the Structure menu (or by pressing [Control]-[J].**



Displaying the Group List.

2. **From the Group List, select the Group you want to add to.**
   How to scroll, show/hide and generally handle the Group List is described on page 81.

3. **Select the Parts you want to add.**

4. **Select "Build Group" from the Structure menu or press [Control]-[U].**
   The Build Group dialog appears.

5. **Click on "Add to".**
   The selected Parts are added to the selected Group.

● The Added Parts keep their relative position in relation to the existing Parts in the Group, and they also keep their internal relative starting points.

The above basically means that they wind up where you want them. Let's say that you have a Part that starts one bar later than the first Part in a Group. When you add that Part to the Group, it is put in so that it starts one bar later than the first Part in the Group. The only exception is if the Part starts *before* the Group. In this case it will be put in at the beginning of the Group.

Replacing all Parts in a Group with new Parts

This function is used when you already have created a Group with a certain name, and want to keep it but completely change its contents:

1. **From the Group List, select the Group you want to replace.**
   The Group List is described on page 81.

2. **Select all the Parts you want the Group to include.**

3. **Select “Build Group” from the Structure menu or press [Control]-[U].**
   The Build Group dialog appears.

4. **Click on “Replace”.**
   The new Group takes the place of the selected one in the list. If you have Group Parts from this very Group placed on a Group Track, the contents of these will change too.

Using Groups

The Group List

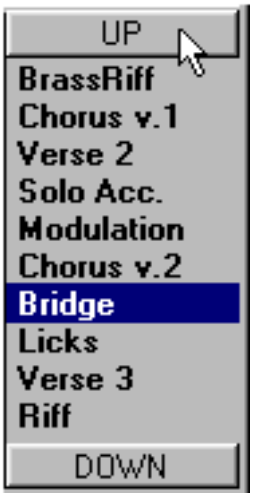
On the right side of the Arrange window a special column can be made to appear, containing all the Groups. This list, called the Group List, is used as a “palette” when placing the Groups on Group Tracks (see page 83).

Showing and Hiding the Group List

The list is first displayed when you create the first Group. To hide the list, select “Hide Groups” from the Structure menu, or press [Control]-[J] on the computer keyboard. To show the hidden list, select “Show Groups” from the Structure menu (this menu item toggles between “Show Groups” and “Hide Groups” depending on whether the Group List is visible or not), or press [Control]-[J] again.

Scrolling the Group List

Since you can have up to 64 Groups in a Song, you may have to scroll the list to be able to see all Groups. This is done by clicking on the UP and DOWN buttons on the top and bottom of the Group List.



The Groups in the list are always sorted so that those Groups that were created in the selected Arrange window appear at the top of the list.

Displaying the contents of a Group

When you click on a Group in the List, all the Parts in the active Arrange window that are members of the Group get selected. This can also be used as a quick way of selecting a number of Parts, for example for editing.

Renaming a Group in the Group List

1. **Double click on the name of the Group in the Group List.**

2. **Type in the new name.**
   The change is reflected in the Group Parts on the Tracks (see below).

Deleting a Group from the Group List

- **Drag the Group past the top or bottom of the Group List.**
  This deletes the whole Group. The individual Parts that have made up the Group are of course not affected.

Deleting a Part that is in a Group

If you delete a Part from the Arrange window it is also deleted from the Group.

How Groups are saved

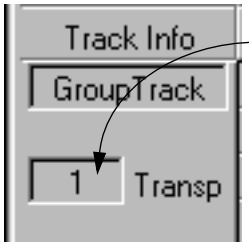
The Group List and all the Groups in it are part of the Song. When you Save or Open a Song, all the Groups are saved/opened with it. On the other hand, when you save an Arrangement, only the Groups created in *that* Arrange window are saved.

Creating a Group Track

You use Groups by placing Group Parts on a Group Track. To create a Group Track, press [Control]-[T] and change the Track Class in the “C” column of the Track List to Group.

You can create several Group Tracks if necessary.

- Group Tracks can't be set to a certain MIDI Channel, Instrument or Output, since this is independent for each Part in the Group.

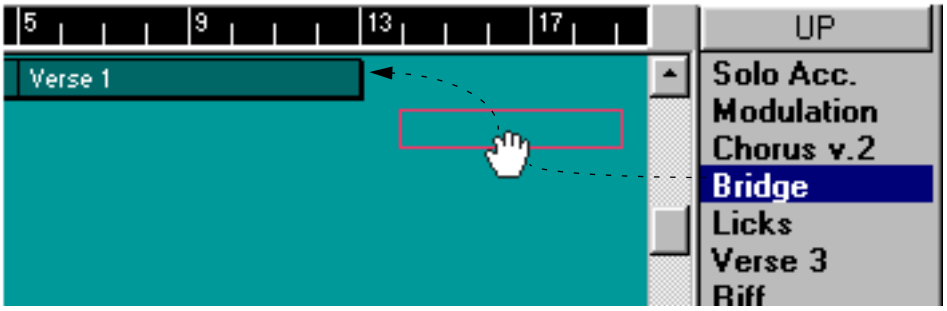


Group Tracks only have one Playback Parameter in the Inspector, Transpose, which transposes all notes in MIDI Parts in the Group.

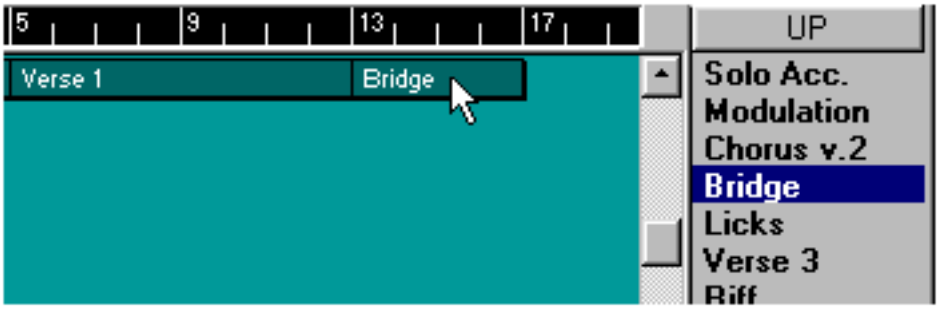
Placing Groups on Group Tracks

As explained earlier, you need at least one Group Track to place the Groups on. You also need to have the Group List displayed to do this.

1. **Drag a Group from the Group List.**
   An outline is shown to help you position the Group.



2. **Place the outline at the desired position on a Group Track and release the mouse button.**



   A Group Part is created. This has the name of the Group, and is as long as the Parts the Group is made up of. The Group Part will start where you place the outline.

- If you hold down [Alt] while dragging, the Group Part will be *inserted* on the Track instead. This means that all the Group Parts after it will be moved down the line to make room for the new Group Part.

---

3. **Continue placing Groups on the Group Track.**
   The same Group can be used as many times as you like, on one or many Group Tracks, in the same or different Arrange windows.

About Parts and Group Parts

- **A Part can be used as it is, even though you have put it into a Group. Therefore, you might have to Mute a Track if the Parts on it are used in a Group and the Group is played back at the same time as the Parts in it.** Otherwise you will get double notes that might give you an increase in volume, reduced polyphony or strange flanger effects.

- **You can decide if Parts on muted Tracks should be muted when played back from the Group or not.**
  This is done using the "Groups take Part Mute" checkbox in the MIDI Setup dialog (see the online Help).

- **A Group Part has "living" links to all the Parts in it.**
  If you delete a Part, it disappears in the Group, and if you change its Playback parameters, this is also reflected in the Group. If you move it, however, this is not reflected in the Group.

- **If you add Parts to a Group, so that this lengthens the Group, this is not shown in the Group Parts on the Group Tracks.**
  That is, the already placed Group Parts keep the original length. Use the Pencil tool to lengthen the Group Part and "reveal" the added music. When you place Group Parts from the Group List *after* having added Parts to the Group, these *new* Group Parts automatically get the right length.

Once they're on the Group Track, Group Parts are treated just as regular Parts. They *can* be:

- Moved.
- Selected in any way that regular Parts can.
- Duplicated (Hold down [Alt]).
- Muted.
- Deleted in any way that Parts can.
- Sized using the pencil tool.

● You can also use any function, like Quantizing, directly on a Group Part. However, this will not affect the Group Part itself, but rather all Parts that make up the Group.

Group Parts *can not* be:

- Recorded into.
- Merged with other Parts.
- Grouped.
- Edited in any way (split, joined, or edited in the Edit windows. You can edit the contents by editing the Parts that make up the Group).

Placing Groups on a Group Track during playback

It is possible to actually build the Group Track in real-time, while the music is playing:

1. **Start playback.**

2. **Hold down [Control].**

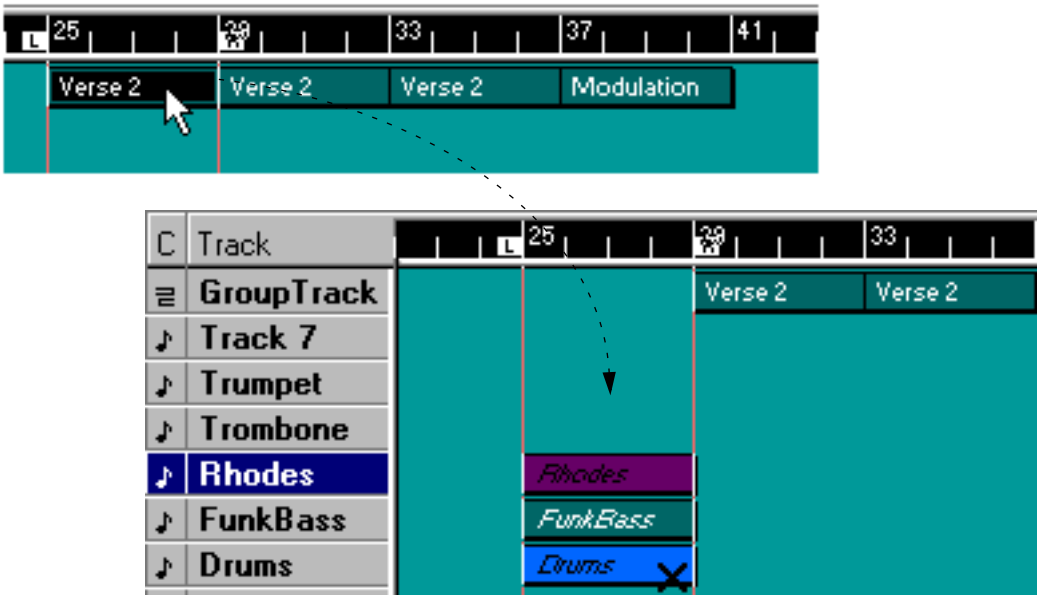
3. **Click on a Group in the Group List.**
   The Group is inserted on the active Group Track, at the beginning of the next bar.

- If you have already made up the basics of your Arrangement and wish to experiment with adding Group Parts this way, create a separate Group Track for the Group Parts you are adding in real-time. This will give you a better overview of what is going on.

Unpacking Group Parts

About Unpacking

You can take a Group Part apart into its original components by using the "Unpack Group" command on the Structure menu.



An example: you have repeated a verse several times during a piece of music by making a group out of all the Parts that make up that verse. This Group has then been used several times on a Group Track. Now you find that you want to leave out one of the instruments in the first verse only. A convenient way to do this is to Unpack the Group Part on the Group Track that plays that first verse, and then simply Mute the desired Part.

- It is the *Group Parts* on the Group Track that can be Unpacked, not the Groups in the Group List.

Performing the Unpacking

1. **Select the Group Part (on the Group Track) that is to be Unpacked.**

2. **Select Unpack Group from the Structure menu.**
   One of two things happens:

- **If the Group was created in the *same* Arrange window as it is used, Ghost Parts are created on the original Tracks at the same Positions as the Group Part.**
- **If the Group was created in *another* Arrange window, real Parts are created at the same Position as the Group Part.**
  If possible, the Parts are put in on existing Tracks set to the same MIDI Channel and Output. Otherwise, new Tracks are created as needed.

  In both cases, the Group Part is of course removed from the Group Track.

● Unpacking can be undone using the Undo command.

The Group feature can be used to an extreme by packing all different sections of a song (intro, verse, chorus...) into Groups to get an overall feeling of the structure of the song. Then you can Unpack all Groups and start making detailed changes.

● If you want to use the Unpack feature for detailed editing this way, make sure that the Group Parts you Unpack are in another Arrange window than the Parts that make up the Groups. If not, Unpacking will create Ghost Parts, and if you make changes to a Ghost Part, they will affect *all* Group Parts containing the original Part.

9

The MIDI Editors - General Information

About this Chapter

This chapter is similar to the chapter “An Introduction to the MIDI Editors” in the Getting Started book, but contains more detailed information. Please read the “An Introduction...” chapter first to get used to the basic concepts and procedures. It is also a good idea to have the Getting Started book at hand, since this Chapter refers to the “An Introduction...” chapter now and then.

Similarities and differences between Editors

Even though the Edit windows all look fairly different, they have similar behaviours. In this chapter you will find all things common to several editors, while the features that are unique to the different editors are described in the following chapters.

You will no doubt find a special way to work with the editors that fits you personally, but the following suggestions may be of help if you’re new to the program:

Use Key Edit when...

- You want to get a quick overview of the Events.
- You want to edit several Parts at the same time.
- You’re editing Continuous Data and velocity values (see page 110).

Use List Edit when...

- You need to perform detailed editing of single Events.
- You’re editing Mute or Stop Events (see page 139).
- You’re editing MIDI Mixer Events (see page 138).

Use Drum Edit when...

- You are editing Drum Parts.

Use Score Edit when...

- When you are used to reading and writing scores.
- You are using a score printing version of Cubase VST, and are preparing your music for printing.

● Key, Drum and Score Edit can be used to edit any combination of Parts from different Tracks. List Edit can only be used for Parts on one Track at a time.

Opening an Editor

If you double click on a Part, if appropriate, a default editor is opened. Exactly which editor opens, is determined by the Track Class of the Part's Track and by the settings in the Preferences dialog in the File menu, according to this table:

Track Class	Default editor opened
MIDI Track	Key Edit, Score Edit or List Edit, depending on the "Double Click Opens" setting in the Preferences dialog (found on the File menu).
Audio Track	Audio Edit.
Drum Track	Drum Edit.
Mixer Track	Mixer window.
Group Track	None.
Tape Track	None.
Chord Track	Score Edit.

- **If you want to edit several Parts of the same type, select them and select Edit as described above.**
  If the Tracks are of different types, only one editor will be opened.

● In List Edit, only Parts on the same Track can be edited simultaneously.

- **If you use the Edit command with no Parts selected, all Parts on the Active Track will be edited.**

Opening a non-default Editor from the Edit Menu

If you want to open another editor than the default, select the Part(s) you want to edit (or a whole Track), and use the Edit menu to select a specific editor. The following options are available (note that not all combinations of Track class and editor are possible):

Editor	Keyboard Equiv.	Can be opened for
Key Edit ("Edit" on the Edit menu)	[Control]-[E]	MIDI Tracks. For other Track classes, pressing [Control]-[E] opens the default editor as described on the previous page.
List Edit	[Control]-[G]	All Track classes except Tape and Group Tracks.
Drum Edit	[Control]-[D]	MIDI and Drum Tracks.
Score Edit	[Control]-[R]	MIDI, Drum and Chord Tracks.

Opening several editors at once

Normally you will want to use one editor at a time for a Part or a selection of Parts. If you for example have Key Edit up on the screen and open List Edit from the Edit menu, Key Edit will disappear and be replaced by List Edit. However, two (or more) editors can be open at the same time:

1. **Open an editor as usual.**

2. **Press [Control] and [Shift] on the computer keyboard.**

3. **While holding down [Control] and [Shift], open a second (or third, or fourth) editor.**
   The other(s) are not closed, but remain on the screen and can be selected and resized as usual.

- **To be able to see all open editors, use the Tile item on the Windows menu.**

  You can also switch back to the Arrange window and select other Part(s) and open the same type of editor (or another type) for these by using the [Control] and [Shift] keys. The possible number of editors might be restricted by the available RAM in your computer.

Communication between Open Editors

The editors communicate in "real-time", sharing the following information:

- Changes made to the Events.
- What Events are currently selected.
- The Loop settings.

Other settings remain independent for each editor.

This makes it easy to switch between editors, taking full advantage of their different styles of presentation. You will probably establish working practices whereby you utilise specific editors to perform particular functions.

● Remember: the changes you make while editing will not be permanent until *all open editors* (editing the same Parts) are closed! If you Cancel changes (by pressing [Esc]) in the *last open editor,* changes made in any of the editors will be cancelled.

Closing an Editor

As described in the Getting Started book, when closing an editor, you can choose between keeping the changes you made, and cancelling (undoing) all changes.

To close the editor and keep the changes:

- **Press [Return].**

  or

- **Close the edit window by clicking on its close box.**

  or

- **Press [Control]-[W] on the computer keyboard.**

If you are editing a Ghost Part (described on page 45), and close the editor as above (keeping the changes), a dialog box will ask if you want to convert the Ghost Part to a real Part. If you answer Yes, the changes will only appear in this new Part. If you answer No, the Ghost Part will remain a Ghost Part, and the changes will appear in the real Part the Ghost Part was made from as well as in all other Ghost Parts made from the same real Part.

To close the editor and cancel the changes:

- **Press [Esc] on the computer keyboard.**
  All changes you have made since you opened the editor, will be undone.

● If "Fewer Alerts" in the Preference dialog (on the File menu) is unchecked, a dialog box appears, asking you if you really want to discard your changes.

● If you have entered Events outside the range of the edited Part(s), a dialog with the text "Keep Appended Events?" will appear when you close the Editor. Clicking "Yes" will extend the Part to make room for the new Events while clicking "No" will discard any Events outside the Part.

● If you enter the Edit window while recording, stop the recording while in the editor and then Cancel, the *whole* recording is deleted.

Editing music during playback

To make changes to the music while you are actually listening to it, is probably the most practical way to work. There are some features included just for these occasions:

Edit Solo

Using this function you can mute playback for all Parts that make up your Arrangment except for those currently edited in the open editor. To activate/de-activate Edit Solo click on its button in the upper left corner of the Status Bar in any of the editors, or press [A] on the computer keyboard.

Follow Song

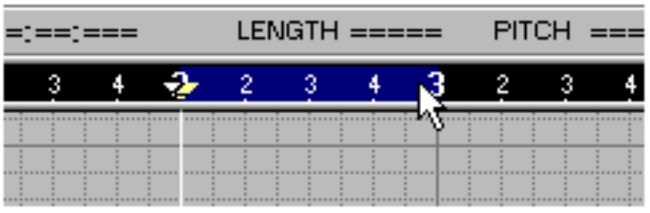
Normally, the Follow Song option will be turned on, making the Arrange and Edit windows “follow” the music at playback, so that the Parts or Events currently played always are visible. However, when you are editing Events in an editor, you may want to turn Follow Song off, either on the Options menu or by pressing [F] on the computer keyboard. This way the Events you’re working with will stay visible.

The Loop Function

In all of the MIDI editors you can set up a local Loop, which is a sort of "mini-cycle" for the Parts being edited. The Loop facility operates in addition to the Cycle, meaning you can Loop the Parts you are editing *while* Cycling Parts that are not being edited!

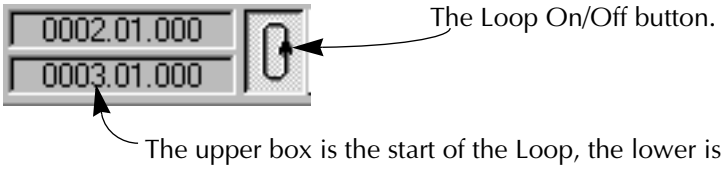
There are three ways to set the Loop:

- **Drag the mouse on the Position Bar to draw the Loop area.**



This does not work in Score Edit, since it has no Position Bar.

- **Use the mouse and/or computer keyboard to set the values in the Loop boundary boxes on the Status Bar.**



- **Use [Alt]+[Control]-[L] and [Alt]+[Control]-[R] to open the Loop boundary boxes and enter the values.**

Either way, the current Loop is shown in black on the Position Bar when it is on, and in grey when it is off.

Turning the Loop on or off

- **Turn the Loop on/off by clicking on its button or by pressing [Alt]+[Control]-[O].**
  For this to work, you have to define the Loop first, as explained above.

  When the Loop is active, the Parts within the Loop in the Edit window loop almost independently of the rest of the music. We say "almost", because the Loop is still dependant on the Cycle. Every time the Cycle starts over again, so does the Loop.

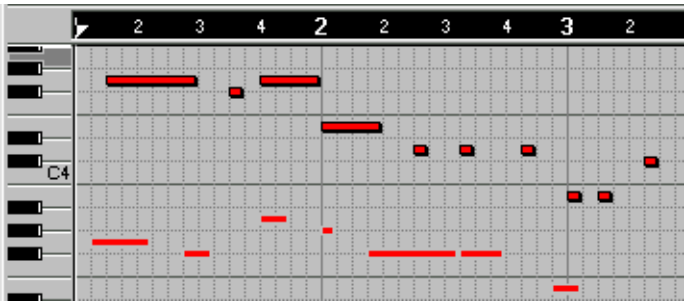
  The Loop is also used to direct editing to the Events inside the Loop. See page 99 in this chapter.

How Events are displayed in the Editors

This is where the various editors differ most. The different representations of Events are described in the chapter “An Introduction to MIDI Editing” in the Getting Started book, but there are some common properties worth pointing out:

Active and Inactive Parts

In Key, Drum and Score Edit, several Parts on different Tracks can be displayed at the same time. However, only one at a time is active. The active and inactive Parts are separated graphically. In Key and Drum Edit, notes belonging to an *active Part* are bright-colored (black when they are selected), while notes belonging to an *inactive Part* are dimmed. Furthermore, in Key Edit, notes belonging to inactive Parts are thinner than the notes of the active Parts.



An active and an inactive Part in Key Edit.

- **To activate a Part, click on any Event that belongs to that Part.**
  You can also use the Next/Previous Part commands on the Goto menu, which is convenient if the Part is empty.

● When you record, use Step Input or make any other changes via MIDI, it is always the active Part that is affected.

Notes and Continuous Events

Even though every MIDI message consists of single Events, the editors make a distinction between regular notes and what is called continuous Events. The Continuous Events, Pitch Bend, Modulation, Aftertouch and many others, have special displays in all editors except Score Edit. They are described separately in the Getting Started book and on page 110 in this chapter.

Playback Parameters

The Playback settings you may have done in the Inspector are not visible when you edit the Part. This means that if a Part is transposed using the Inspector, it will be shown at its original recorded pitch in the editor, even though you will hear it playing back transposed.

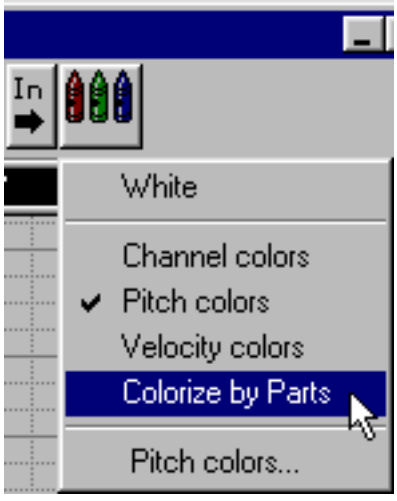
- **If this is a problem, use the “Freeze Play Parameters” function on the Functions menu.**
  This function, explained in the chapter “The Track Columns and the Inspector” in the Getting Started book, transforms the settings in the Inspector (e.g. a transposition) to “real” MIDI data (in the case of transposition, changed pitches for each note), visible and editable in the editors.

Coloring notes in the editors

In Key, List and Drum Edit, you can use the Color menu on the Status Bar to add color to the notes.

- If you run Cubase on a black and white monitor, the color symbols are not shown.

1. Pull down the color pop-up menu.



2. Select one of the five options on the pop-up menu.
The options are described below.

- Score Edit has a different color palette, which lets you choose colors individually for each note, much like you color Parts in the Arrange window.

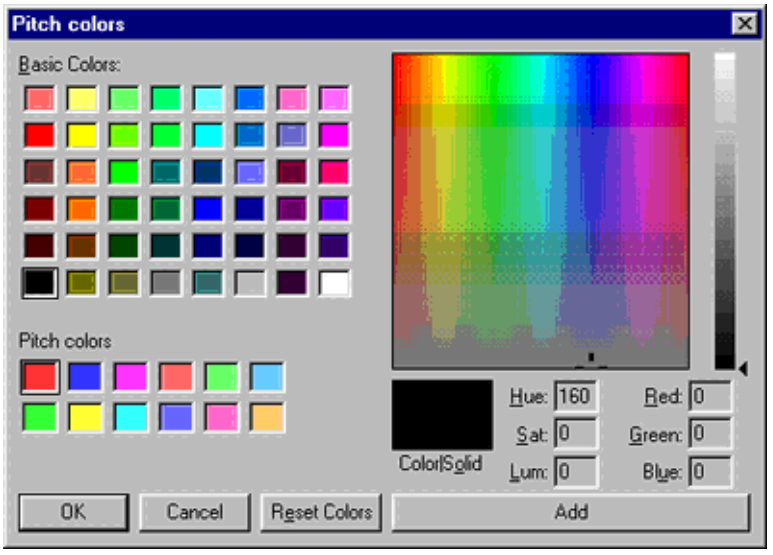
Color options

White	No color is used for the notes.
Channel colors	The notes get different colors depending on their individual MIDI Channel values. Which color is associated with which MIDI Channel, can be set with the Edit option (see below).
Pitch colors	The notes get different colors depending on their pitch. Which color is associated with which pitch, can be set with the Edit option (see below).
Velocity colors	The notes get different colors depending on their velocity values. Which color is associated with which velocity, can be set with the Edit option (see below).
Colorize by Parts	The notes get the same color as their respective Part in the Arrange Window. Use this option when you are working with two or more Tracks in an editor, to better see which notes belong to which Track.

Editing Color

If you have selected Channel, Pitch or Velocity colors, an extra item appears at the bottom of the pop-up menu. This is used to set which colors should be used:

1. **Select the option at the bottom of the color pop-up menu (named "Channel colors...", "Pitch colors..." or "Velocity colors..." depending on what is selected).**
   A color dialog is opened. Channel, Pitch and Velocity have separate color dialogs, allowing you to set different color schemes for each color option.



The Pitch color dialog. There are twelve different pitch color steps (one for each semitone).

2. **Choose colors for the velocity levels/pitches/channels, using standard Windows color selection.**
   See the Windows documentation for detailed information.

3. **When you have edited the colors, click on the "OK" button.**

Moving around and the Goto pop-up menu

You can move directly to certain useful positions in an editor by selecting from the Goto menu on the Function Bar. These options will scroll your view to show the Events at the chosen position.

- The Goto commands don't affect selection in any way. They only change the view as if the scroll bars were used.

Song Position	Takes you to the Song Position.
First Event	Takes you to the first Event in the active Part.
Last Event	Takes you to the last Event in the active Part.
First Selected	Takes you to the earliest of all the selected Events.
Next Selected	Takes you to the next selected Events.
Last Selected	Takes you to the last of the selected Events.
Prev Selected	Takes you to the selected Event before the one currently in view.
Next Part	Takes you to the beginning of the next Part. This might just lead to a vertical scroll if there are several Parts beginning at the same Position.
Prev Part	Takes you to the beginning of the previous Part. This might just lead to a vertical scroll (see above).

Monitoring Events in the Editors

As already mentioned, you can have playback running while you are editing. And, you can also use the cue function (see the Getting Started chapter “Playback, Tempo and the Transport Bar”) in the Edit windows. But there are two more ways to listen to your music in the editors:

The Magnifying Glass

The Magnifying Glass tool is common to all MIDI editors. When you click on an Event using this tool, the Event is played back. You can also hold the mouse button and drag the Magnifying Glass around over the Events.

The Speaker

When you click on the speaker symbol on the Status Bar, Events will be output automatically when you click on them, when you create them using the pencil or paint brush, and when you make changes on the info line.

Selecting and the To pop-up menu

The concept of selecting Events is much the same as selecting Parts, described in the Getting Started book. You can:

- **Click on an Event to select it (and deselect all others).**
- **Hold [Shift] and click on an Event to select it, keeping any previously selected Events.**
- **Select several Events by enclosing them in a rectangle using the Arrow tool.**
- **Press [Control]-[A] to select all Events in the editor.**
  This is the same as using the Select All item on the Edit menu.
- **Use the [←] and [→] keys to select the previous/next Event in the Active Part.**
  If you hold down [Shift] and use the arrow keys, the next/previous Event will be selected, without deselecting already selected Events.
- **Use the “Select” submenu on the Edit menu.**
  The contents of this submenu varies depending on which editor you’re in. See the Online Help.

Selecting Events from different Parts

You can select Events from both an active and an inactive Part:

1. **Select the Events you want in the active Part, using any method described above.**

2. **Hold down [Shift].**

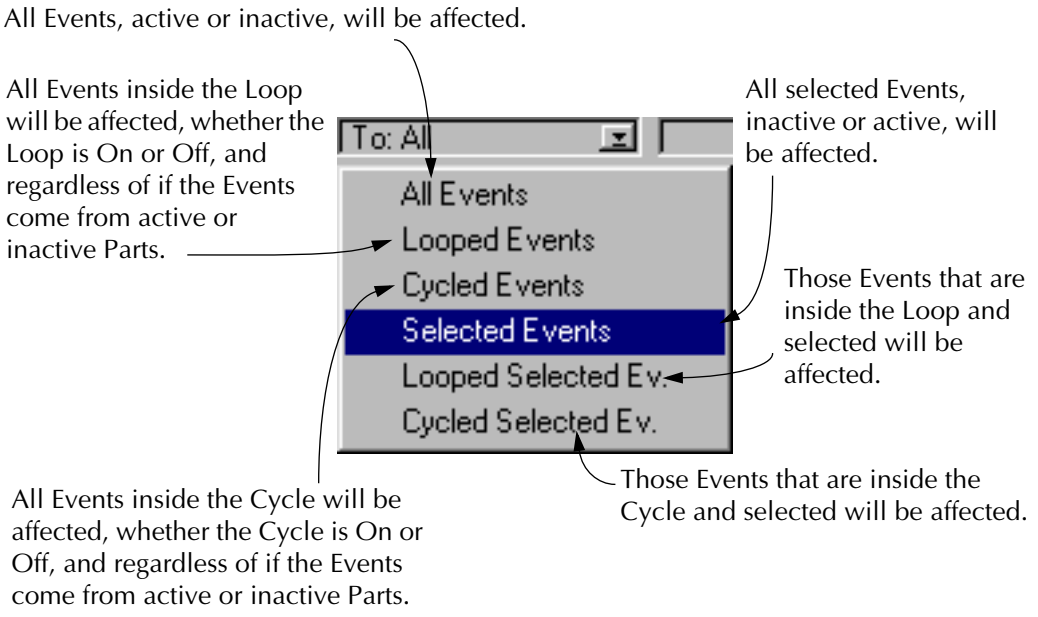
3. **Select one Event from an inactive Part by clicking on it.**
   This Part now becomes active.

4. **While keeping [Shift] pressed, use any method to select more Events from the now active Part.**
   As long as you keep [Shift] pressed, you can switch active Parts and select from as many as you like, using this method.

● Any type of editing you do (like moving, copying and so on) will affect all *selected* Events, whether they are in active or inactive Parts.

The To Pop-up

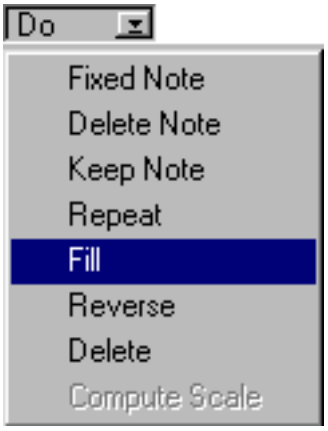
All the editors have a pop-up menu called "To". This is used together with the Loop and Cycle functions to collectively choose a group of Events to be affected by your editing.


All Events, active or inactive, will be affected.
All Events inside the Loop will be affected, whether the Loop is On or Off, and regardless of if the Events come from active or inactive Parts.
All selected Events, inactive or active, will be affected.
To: All
All Events
Looped Events
Cycled Events
Selected Events
Looped Selected Ev.
Cycled Selected Ev.
Those Events that are inside the Loop and selected will be affected.
All Events inside the Cycle will be affected, whether the Cycle is On or Off, and regardless of if the Events come from active or inactive Parts.
Those Events that are inside the Cycle and selected will be affected.

The Do pop-up menu

This pop-up menu is found on the Status Bar, next to the Goto pop-up. It contains some special functions to make editing and creating Events easier. The items common to all editors are described below (the Do Pop-up in Score Edit Window in score printing versions of Cubase VST have even more options, described in the "Score Layout and Printing" documentation).

- Use the commands in the To menu to first define a selection of notes you want to edit. Then use the commands in the Do menu to perform one of the available actions.



Fixed Note

This gives all the affected notes the same pitch as the last selected note. The positions, velocity and MIDI Channel values for the notes are left intact.

- Make sure you only have one note selected when you use this function.

Delete Note

Deletes all affected notes with the same pitch as the selected note, but leaves all other notes. This means that if you select a C3 then all C3's (in the range defined by the To menu) will be deleted.

- Make sure you only have one note selected.

Keep Note

This function is sort of the reverse of Delete Note. All notes (in the range defined by the To menu) that have the same pitch as the selected one are *kept*. All others are deleted.

- Make sure you only have one note selected.

Repeat

This function is used to repeat a section of the Part until the end of the Part. You define the "repeat cycle" by setting the Loop or the Cycle. From there on there are two options:

- **The To menu is set to "Looped Selected Events" or "Cycled Selected Events":**
  The selected Events (notes and other) inside the Loop/Cycle are repeated until the Part is filled. The created Events are added to the existing.

- **The To menu is set to just "Looped Events" or "Cycled Events":**
  All the Events inside the Loop/Cycle are repeated and the created Events *replace* the existing. The repeating goes on until the Part is filled.

Fill

This function only works when the To menu is set to "All Events", "Looped Events" or "Cycled Events". It then fills the whole Part/the Loop/the Cycle with notes that have the same pitch. The notes are spaced according to the Snap value and are all given a length corresponding to the Quantize value.

Reverse

This reverses the order of all Events (notes and other) in the range defined by the To menu.

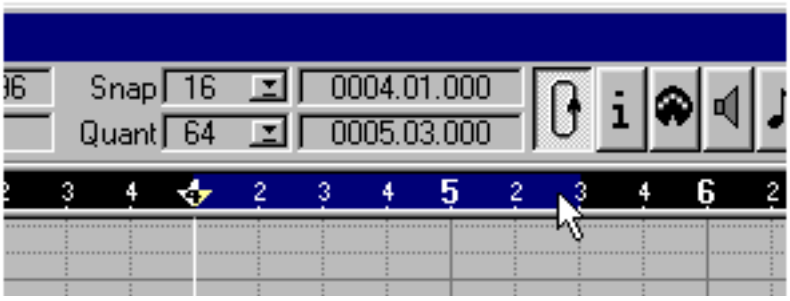
Delete

This deletes *all* Events in the range defined by the To menu (notes, Controllers, the lot).

An Example

This example shows one way to use the To and Do pop-ups in conjunction. Let's say you want one and a half bars of short, staccato-like 16th notes. Instead of drawing or playing them from your instrument, you can proceed like this:

1. Set up the Loop to the range you want filled with notes.

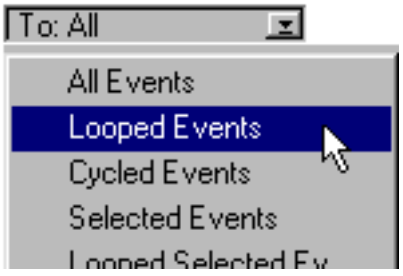


The Loop does not have to be active.

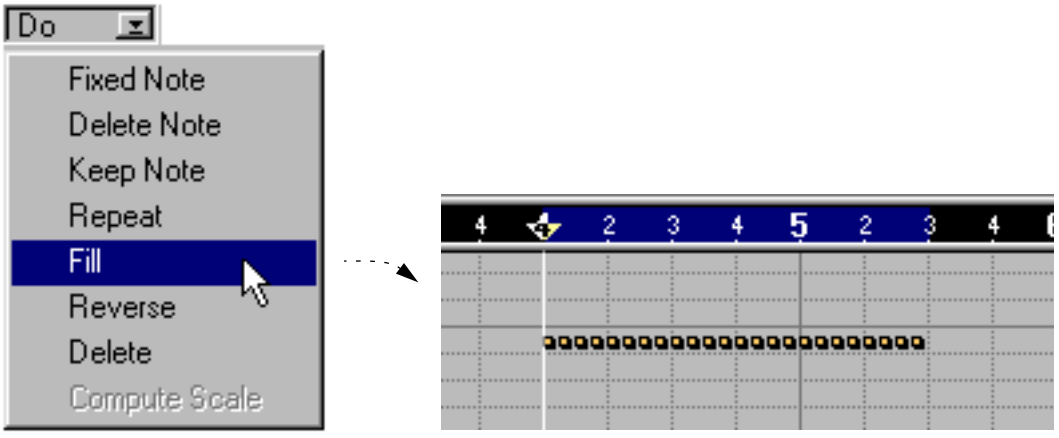
2. Set Snap to 16.

3. Set Quantize to 64.
This should give the notes the desired, short length.

4. Pull down the To menu and select "Looped Events".



5. Pull down the Do menu and select "Fill".



The area within the Loop is filled with 16th notes, each with the length of a 64th note.

The Info Line

The Info Line is the area directly above the main display in the Key, Drum and Score editors.You use the Info Line for precise, numerical editing.

Editing on the Info Line

1. **To show/hide the Info Line, click on the i-button on the Status Bar or press [Alt]+[Control]-[I] on the computer keyboard.**

2. **Select a single Event.**
   Its values are shown on the Info Line.

   If no Event or several Events are selected, the Info Line shows "– – – " for all values.

3. **Change the desired values using regular value editing.**
   As always, you can use the mouse or type in values from the computer keyboard.

Info Line Parameters

The following parameters can be changed on the Info Line:

Parameter	Remark
Start	Changing this value is the same as moving the note.
Length	In ticks.
Pitch	Changing this value transposes the note.
Velo On	The Note On velocity; the speed with which you press a key on a MIDI keyboard.
Velo Off	The Note Off velocity; the speed with which you release a key on a MIDI keyboard.
Chn	The “original” MIDI Channel associated with the note (see page 17).

- Not all MIDI Instruments send and/or read velocity (especially true with Note Off velocity). Check your instrument’s operation manual if you are unsure.

Quantize and Snap Values

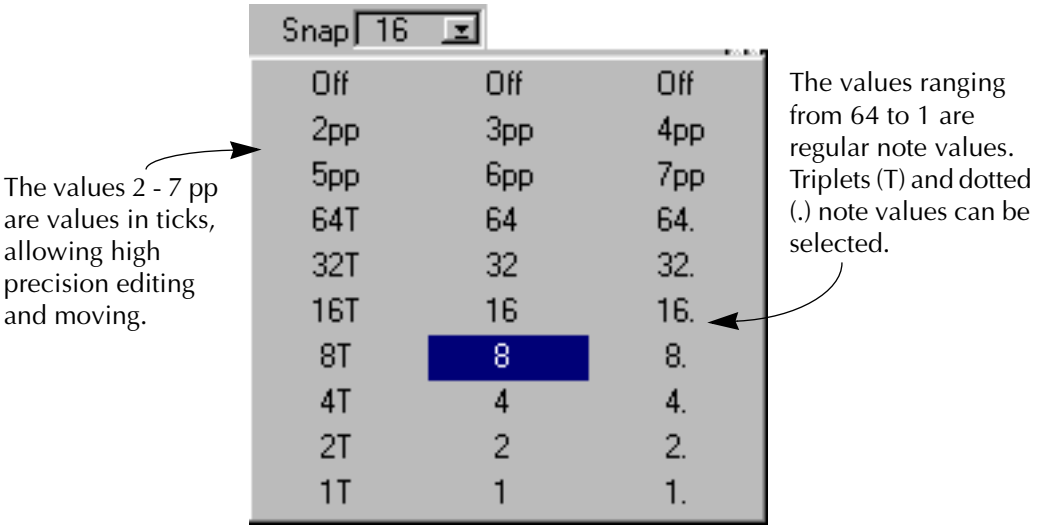
The Quantize and Snap values work exactly like in the Arrange Window (see the Getting Started book). However, there are a couple of things worth pointing out:

- **Each editor has separate settings for Quantize and Snap values.**
  This means that the settings you make in the Key Edit window will not automatically be transferred to Score Edit. This is practical, due to the different work methods you will employ in the different editors.

- **The Quantize value also works as a length determinator when inputting notes.**
  If you for example have the Quantize value set to 8, the notes you create will automatically become 1/8-notes.

- **The Snap value also defines the spacing between input notes.**
  This applies when you use the paint brush or the Fill command from the Do pop-up. With a Snap value of 4 and a Quantize value of 16, you will get sixteenth notes, positioned on the beats (quarter-note positions).

- **The Snap pop-ups in the editors contain more options than the one in the Arrange Window.**
  The reason for this is of course that you do not need small or uneven Snap values when moving Parts. In the editors, however, you do. The following Snap values are available:


Snap 16
Off Off Off
2pp 3pp 4pp
5pp 6pp 7pp
64T 64 64.
32T 32 32.
16T 16 16.
8T 8 8.
4T 4 4.
2T 2 2.
1T 1 1.
The values 2 - 7 pp are values in ticks, allowing high precision editing and moving.
The values ranging from 64 to 1 are regular note values. Triplets (T) and dotted (.) note values can be selected.

● In Drum Edit, each Sound has separate Quantize and Length values.

Creating Note Events

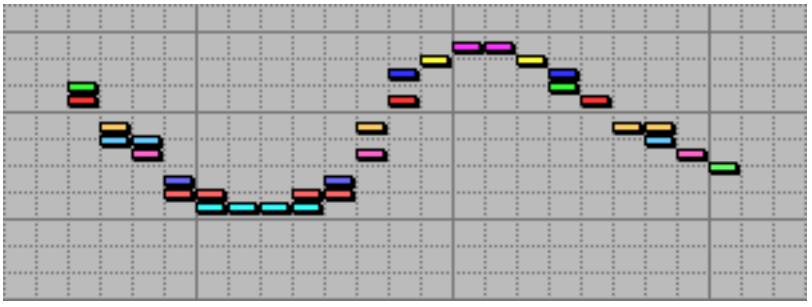
You can paint new notes into the active Part using different Toolbox tools. Which tools are available depends on what editor you are using:

Using the Pencil tool

You can use the Pencil (or Drumstick, in Drum Edit) to draw new notes one at a time. This is described in detail in the Getting Started book, but here are a few rules-of-thumb (the Quantize and Snap values apply as described on the previous pages):

- **Click once with the Pencil to create a single note.**
  The new notes will get the length of the Quantize value.
- **Click and drag with the Pencil to create a note with a length of your choice.**
- **In Score Edit, you use the note and rest tools in a manner similar to the Pencil, see the chapter “Score Edit”.**

Using the Paint Brush tool



Use the Paint Brush to ‘paint’ in several new notes at a time. The following rules apply:

- **The notes are created at a spacing defined by the Snap value.**
- **The new notes will get the length of the Quantize value.**
- **Movement is restricted to horizontally only when you are dragging.**
  That is, in Key edit for example, all notes will have the same pitch, and in Drum Edit they will belong to the same "Sound". If you want to paint “free-hand”, with no restrictions in pitch, hold down [Alt] when you are using the Paint Brush.

Velocity and MIDI Channel values for Created Notes

When you draw or paint notes, you can give them one of four fixed velocity values by holding down keys on the computer keyboard while you are painting.

Key	Velocity value
None	127
[Shift]	96
[Control]	64
[Shift]+[Control]	32

- **Drum Edit has a special function for assigning velocity values to created notes, see page 131.**
- **The Note-Off velocity for notes will always be set to 64.**
- **Created notes will get the MIDI Channel value of their respective Parts.** In Drum Edit, created notes get the MIDI Channel value set for their Drum Sounds, respectively.

The Insert Button

The Insert button

If the Insert button is activated on the Status Bar when you use the Pen or Brush, then all Events in the Part will be moved one Quantize value forward when you input new Events, just as with Step Input.

● You can also create new Events using the pop-up Do menu, see page 100 in this chapter.

Editing Notes

To edit the values of a note in detail, select it and edit on the Info Line (as described on page 103 in this chapter) or make the changes in List Edit. However, there are quicker and more intuitive ways to edit notes in the Graphical editors:

Using the Tools

Moving Notes with the Arrow tool

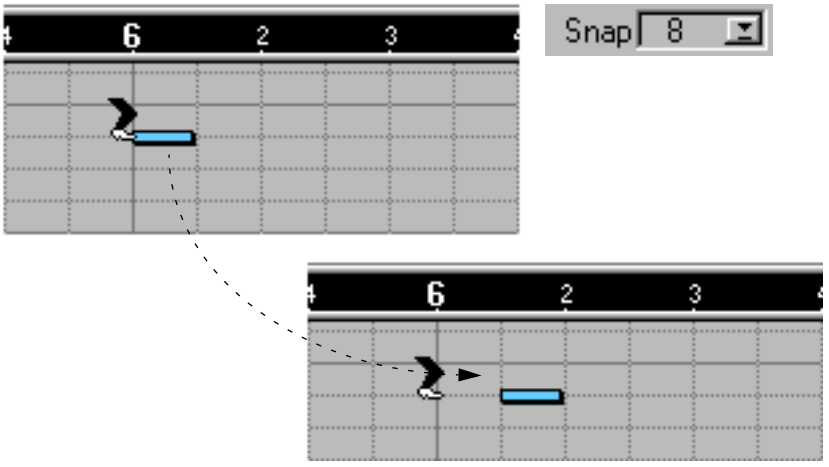
You can move notes by dragging them around using the Arrow tool (also see the chapter “An Introduction to the MIDI Editors” in the Getting Started book). The smallest distance you can move a note, is equal to the Snap value set with the Snap pop-up menu.

Moving Notes with the Kickers

For fine adjustment of a note’s position, use the two Kickers.

1. **Set the Snap value to the distance you want to move the note.**

2. **Click on the note with the left or the right Kicker, to move it left or right respectively.**



If you for example set the Snap value to “8” and click on the note with the right Kicker, the note will be moved an eighth note to the right.

Resizing Notes with the Pencil tool

In Key and List Edit, you may change the size of notes that you have drawn or recorded, using the Pencil tool:

1. **Set the Snap value.**
   What you do when you resize a note, is moving the position where the note ends. You can only move notes in multiples of the set Snap value. That means, if Snap is set to 8, you can move the end-position of a note to 1/8, 1/4, 3/8, etc.

2. **Press the mouse button with the Pencil tool selected, and the pointer inside the note you want to resize.**

● It might be hard to determine whether you have the pointer inside a note or not. To avoid painting in new Events, hold down [Alt] on the computer keyboard. This disables creation of new Events.

3. **Position the pointer at the length you want the note to have, and release the mouse button.**
   The note gets resized, taking the set snap value into account.

Editing Notes via MIDI

You can change the properties of notes via MIDI. This can be a handy and fast way to get for example the right velocity value, since you will hear the result even as you edit:

1. **Select the note you want to edit.**

2. **Click on the MIDI Connector symbol on the Status Bar.**

   The symbol should be "lit". This enables editing via MIDI.

3. **Use the Note buttons on the Status Bar to decide what properties will be changed by the MIDI input.**
   You can enable editing of Pitch, Note On- and/or Note Off-velocity.

   With this setting, the edited notes will get the Pitch and Velo-off values of the notes inputted via MIDI, but the Velo-on values will be kept as they are.

4. **Play a note on your MIDI instrument.**
   The note selected in the editor will take on the properties of the played note, according to the setting made in step 3.

   The next note in the active Part automatically gets selected. A series of notes can therefore quickly be edited.

- **If you want another try, select the note again (easiest by pressing the [←] key on the computer keyboard) and again play a note on your MIDI Instrument.**

Cutting, Copying and Pasting

You can use standard Cut, Copy and Paste commands to move Events between editors or to duplicate a series of Events.

- **Cut or Copied Events are Pasted in starting at the Song Position. The Events will keep their relative positions, pitch and other properties.**

Deleting Events

Events can be deleted in several ways:

- **Select them and select Delete Events from the Edit menu.**

  or

- **Use the Delete command on the Do pop-up menu (see page 101).**

  or

- **Select them and press [Backspace] on the computer keyboard.**

  or

- **Click on them with the Eraser tool.**

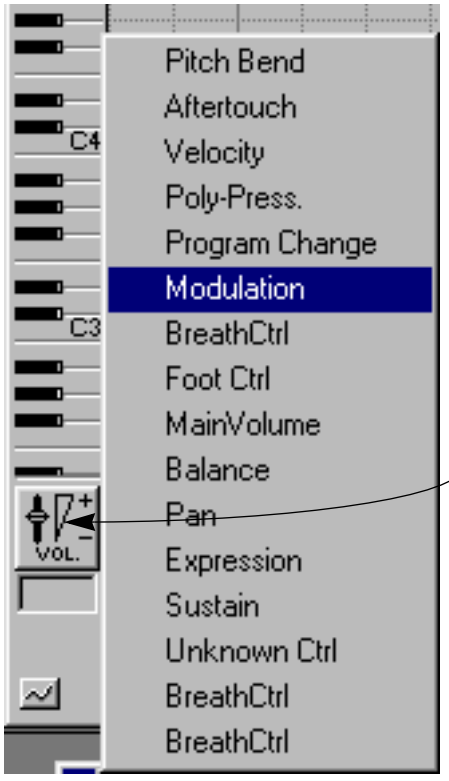
Creating and Editing Continuous Data

In Key and Drum Edit, there are special displays for graphical editing of Events other than notes. These include Modulation, Main Volume and Pitch Bend Events, but also Poly Pressure and Velocity values (which are not really Events of their own but rather properties of notes).

Continuous Data can also be edited in List Edit, using the List, the Event display and/or the special “Value 2 display”, which lets you edit the data in a bar graph form (see page 143).

How to create and edit Continuous Data is described in the chapter “An Introduction to MIDI Editing” in the Getting Started book. Here is a brief rundown of the features:

- **Open and close the display by clicking on the icon in the lower left corner of the Edit window.**
- **Change the size of the display by dragging the Divider up or down.**
- **To select data type to be displayed, press the mouse button with the pointer on the data type icon (to the left in the display).**
  This pulls down the data type pop-up menu.



- **If you move the pointer up and down in the Controller Display, the value corresponding to the pointer position is shown in the box below the data type icon to the left.**
  This helps you position the Pencil/Line tool when creating or editing Events.

● All values range between 0 and 127, except Pitch Bend, which has a value range from –8192 to +8191. For Pitch Bend, value 0 is equivalent to no Pitch Bend (the Pitch Bend wheel/lever in centre position).

Selecting Non-standard Controller Types

The data type pop-up menu lists only the most common Continuous Controllers. If you want to view and edit other Controllers, you can use the two custom data types at the bottom of the pop-up menu. Proceed as follows:

1. **Double click on the data type icon.**
   This opens a small dialog box with the Controller number settings for the two custom data types.

2. **Select Controller numbers for the two custom data types, using regular value editing, and press Exit.**

3. **Select one of the two custom Controllers (the two last items on the pop-up menu).**

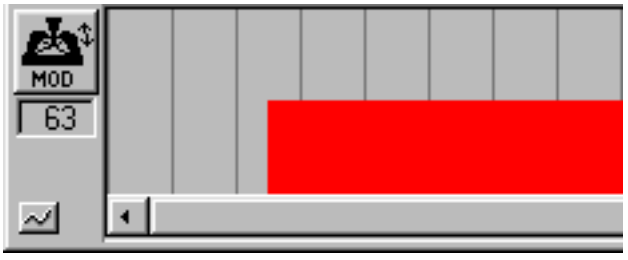
Velocity

The velocity values of notes are shown as thin vertical bars, with higher bars representing higher velocity values. Since a velocity value always belongs to a note, you can not create new velocity “bars” in the Controller Display, only edit existing.

- **Selecting a note also selects the velocity bar in the Controller Display.**
  And in the same way, selecting a number of velocity bars, by enclosing them with a selection rectangle, will select the notes in the note display.

Non-Note Events

These Events include all Controllers, Pitch Bend, Sustain-pedal etc. There is one very important thing to observe about non-note Events. If you for example put in one single MIDI Modulation wheel Event with a value of 63, this will be displayed like this:



The figure above might look like an "infinite" series of modulation Events all with the value 63, but it is not, it is only one. It is a graph of instantly moving the modulation wheel to position 63 *and leaving it there*.

It is important to remember that if drawing Controllers or inputting them in any other way, makes them stay at the last set value for an infinite amount of time (or until you change it the next time). Sustain pedal (damper) for instance, will vary between 0 and 127 every time you press or release the pedal, but stay at the last value as long as you don't move your foot on or off it. Draw in one "foot down" Event, and the notes will sustain until a "foot up" Event appears.

Selecting Non-Note Events

Click with the Arrow tool to select Events in the Controller Display. To select several Events, you may hold down the [Shift] key on the computer keyboard and click, or enclose the Events in a frame, just like when selecting notes.

Creating and Editing Non-note Events

The Pencil and Line tools can be used to create and edit non-note Events in the Controller Display.

- **You edit existing Events by drawing with the pen or making a ramp with the Line tool.**
- **You create new Events by holding down [Alt] on the computer keyboard, and drawing/making a ramp.**

Deleting Non-note Events

Just like with note Events, this can be done in several ways:

- **Select the Events and select Delete Events from the Edit menu.**

  or

- **Use the Delete command on the Do pop-up menu to delete all Events within a certain range (set by the Loop or Cycle).**

  or

- **Select the Events and press [Backspace] on the computer keyboard.**

  or

- **Click on the Events with the Eraser tool.**

● Please observe that deleting an Event makes the last Event before this valid up until the next Event. It does not "zero" any Controller changes.

Poly Pressure

Polyphonic pressure data has two values that go with it. First the key that was pressed, and then the amount of pressure.

In the Controller Display in Key and Drum Edit, only the Poly Pressure data for the note displayed on the Note Info Line (select one note only!) is shown. When you draw or paint in Poly Pressure data it also gets this note number (pitch) value.

10

Step Recording

Introduction

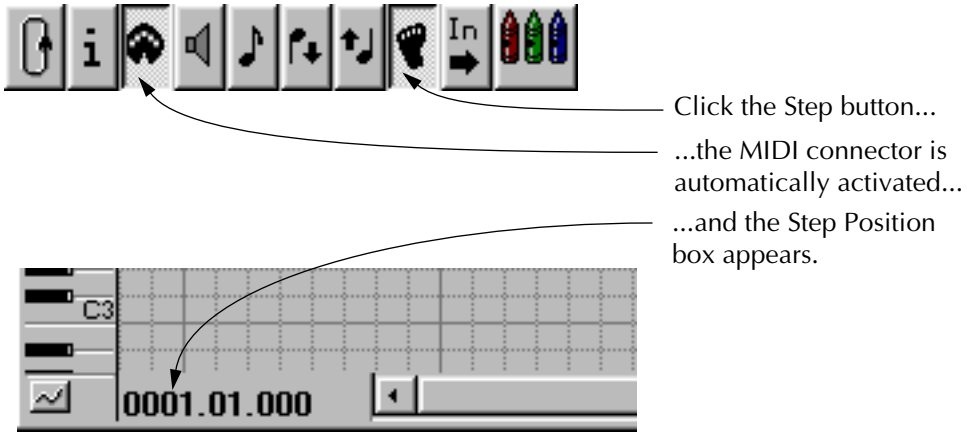
Step Input is when you enter notes one at a time (or one chord at a time). This is useful when you know the part you want to record but are not able to play it exactly as you want it.

Preparations

1. **Create an empty Part, as a container for the notes you are about to Step Record.**
   You can of course also use an exisiting Part.

2. **Open the Part in a MIDI editor of your choice.**
   In the pictures below we will use Key Edit, but it doesn't matter which you select.

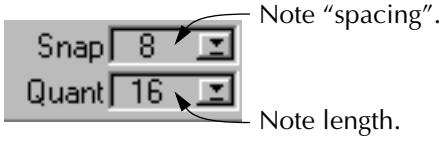
3. **Click on the Step button.**
   This automatically activates the MIDI In icon and the Step Position box



Determining Note Lengths and Positions

- **To set the length of the notes you are about to input, adjust the editor's Quantize value.**
  If you e.g. set this to "16" all notes you input will be sixteenth notes.

- **To set the "spacing" between the notes and chords, adjust the editor's Snap value.**
  If you e.g. set this to "8" all notes will appear on eighth note positions.



Setting the Position for the first note

To set the position where you want the first note to appear, adjust the regular Song Position (for example on the Transport Bar) and the Step Position is automatically set to the same value.

Selecting a Track for input

If you are editing several Tracks at the same time, you must decide which Track to enter notes into by making a Part/Track active (see page 94).

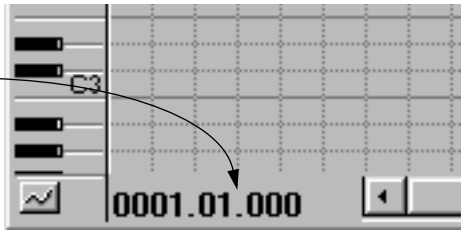
Entering notes and chords

1. **Play one key or a chord.**
   If you just played one key it appears as soon as you release it. If you play a chord it appears when you release the last key. In either case, the velocity you played is recorded with the note.
   No matter how long you hold down the key, the note will get the length set in the Quantize box.

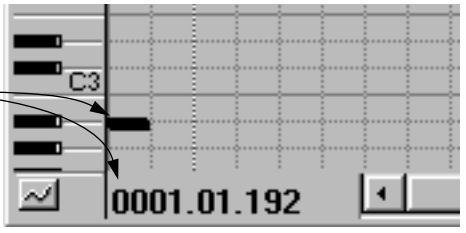
2. **The Step Position has now advanced one Snap value.**

3. **Enter the notes for the next position.**

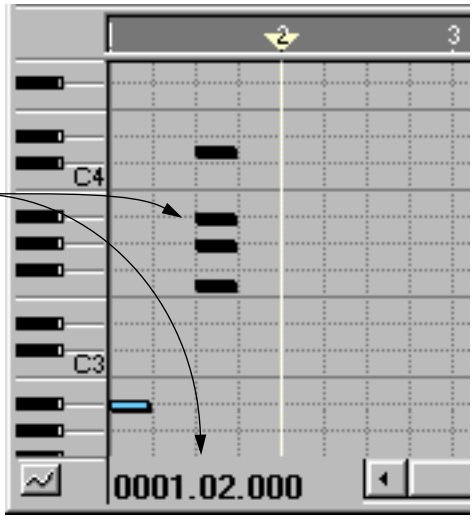
1. Start by setting the Step Position



2. Press and release the first key.The note appears and the Step Position box advances one step.



3. Press and release a chord. It appears and the Step Position advances again.

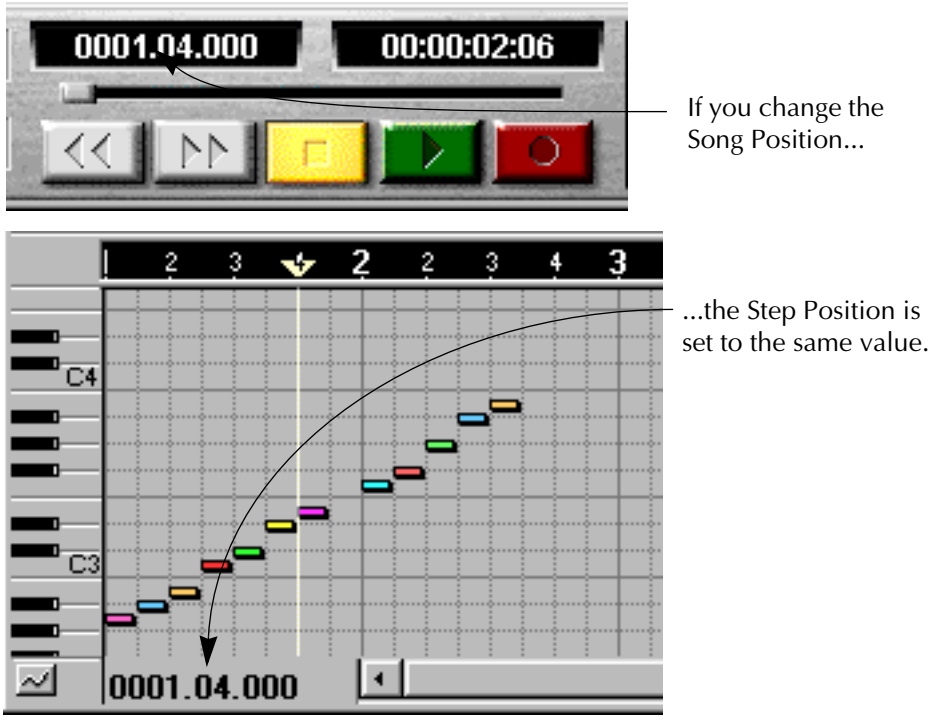


Adding Rests

To move one step without entering any notes, press the [Tab] key on the computer keyboard.

Changing note values and positions as you go along

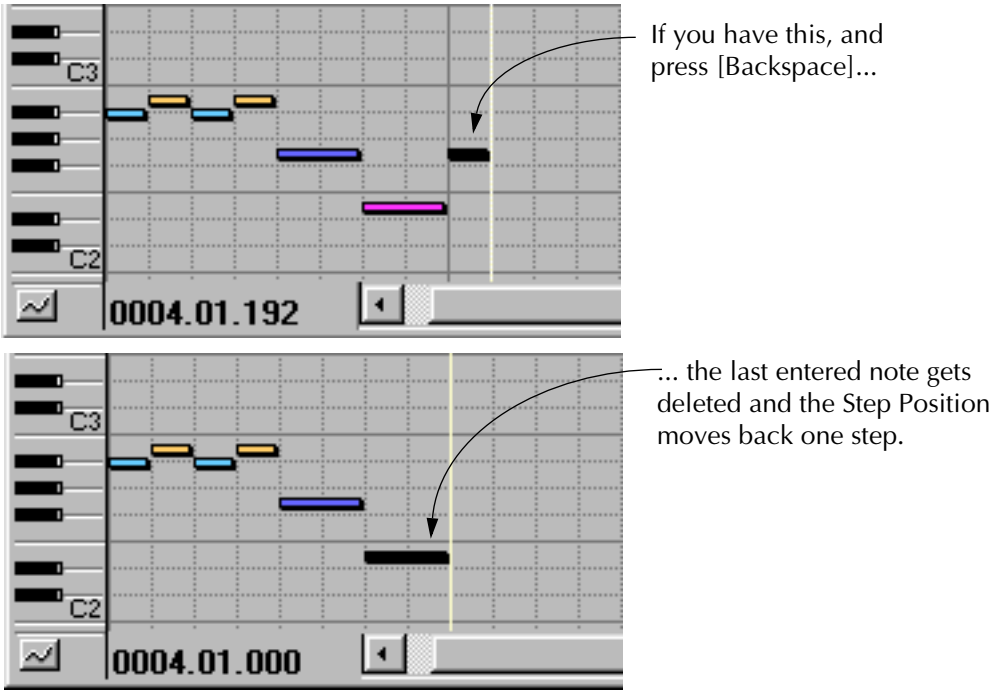
- **If you want to enter notes of another length, simply change the Quantize value at any point.**
- **If you want to input notes with a different "spacing" simply adjust the Snap value.**
- **If you want to move to a completely new position, change the Song Position or use Fast Forward or Rewind.**



- **To move one step back or forward in time, use the [←] and [→] keys. The Song Position Pointer shows you the current position.**

If you make a mistake

If for example you entered a note with the wrong pitch or made a mistake when playing a chord, press [Backspace]. This deletes the last note/chord you entered, and moves the Step Position one step backwards. You can press this key repeatedly to “delete backwards”.

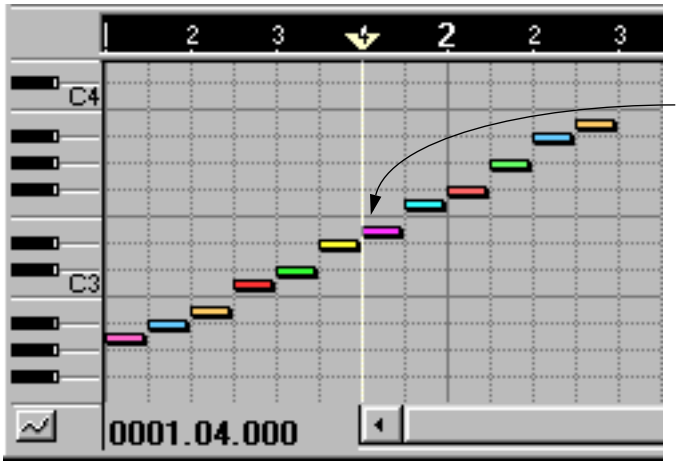


You can also use the tools and menu for editing (deleting, moving etc).

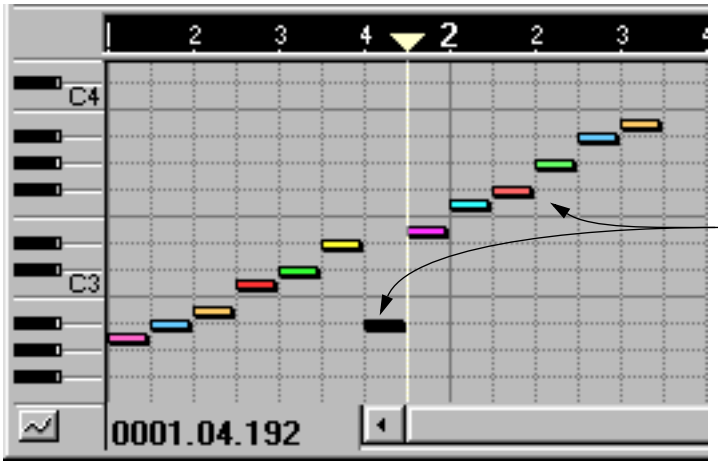
Using the Insert button

The Insert button.

If the Insert button on the Status Bar is activated, the notes are inserted rather than added. That is, any existing notes are moved to a later position to make room for the new notes.



With Insert on, and the Step Position here...



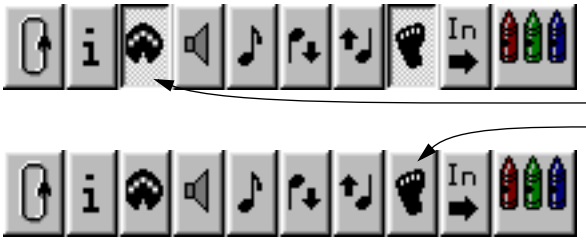
...the new note is inserted, and the following notes are "pushed forward".

Playing back

You can activate playback at any time and from any position, to hear what you have done. Please note, though, that moving the Song Position also moves the Step Position.

When you are finished

When you have entered all the notes you want, don't forget to deactivate step mode by clicking on the MIDI In button.



Click on the "MIDI connector", and the Step button is automatically deactivated.

11

Key Edit

About this “Chapter”

You do not find any additional information here because Key Edit is a very straightforward editor. We have therefore used it as an example in the chapters “An Introduction to the MIDI Editors” (in the Getting Started book) and “The MIDI Editors - General Information” (in this document). If you have read these two chapters, you do know everything there is to know about Key Edit.

12

Drum Edit and Drum Tracks

About Drum Tracks and Drum Parts

In MIDI instruments, drum sounds most often are separated by being placed on different keys, i.e. assigned to different MIDI note numbers. This means that when you use a keyboard to record a drum part in a sequencer, you usually use one key for bass drum, one for snare and so on. On many instruments used to play back drum sounds (drum machines, samplers and some synths) you can re-arrange the order in which the sounds of the single instruments are assigned to the keys. (Instead of assigning the bass drum to the key C1 you could for instance assign it to D1, or any other key available on your keyboard).

Unfortunately, most MIDI instrument manufacturers place their drum sounds on different keys and in different orders. This can be troublesome if you have made a drum pattern using one instrument, and then want to try it on another. When you switch instrument, it is very likely that your snare drum becomes a ride cymbal, or your hi-hat becomes a tom, etc, just because the drum sounds are distributed differently in the two instruments.

To solve this problem, and simplify several aspects of MIDI drum kits (like using drum sounds from different instruments, in the same “drum kit”), Cubase VST features a Track class called Drum Tracks. Parts on Drum Tracks are called Drum Parts.

The thing that separates Drum Tracks from MIDI Tracks is that everything played back from (or routed Thru) a Drum Track, is “filtered” through a Drum Map. Among other things, this Drum Map (described in detail on the next page) determines exactly which MIDI Note Number is sent out for each sound in your drum pattern (and thereby which drum sound is played in the receiving instrument). A solution to the problem above, would therefore be to make up Drum Maps for all your instruments. When you want to try your drum pattern on another instrument, you simply switch to the corresponding Drum Map as well, and your snare drum sound will remain a snare drum sound.

About Drum Maps

A Drum Map consists of settings for 64 drum sounds, from now on called Sounds. For each Sound you may define the following values:

Parameter	Description
Sound	The name of the Sound.
I-note	When this MIDI note is sent into Cubase VST, (i.e. played by you), the particular Sound is “triggered” (played).
O-note	When the Sound is triggered (either by you playing it, or by the program playing back a Drum Part), this is the MIDI note number that is sent out.
Chn	The MIDI-channel that the Sound will be output on.
Output	The MIDI Output used by the Sound.
Instrument	A way to name the combination of MIDI Channel and Output (just as in the Track Columns).
Quant	A Quantize value used when editing (see page 129 and page 132 in this chapter).
Len	A Length value used when inputting notes (see page 130 in this chapter)
Lev1 – Lev4 (“Diamond values”)	These are four different velocity values, used when you create notes in Drum Edit (see page 131).

Though this may seem a lot of parameters, only two are really important for understanding Drum Maps: The I-note and O-note values.

I-note

This is a certain key (MIDI note number) used for playing the Sound. Setting the I-note value will let you choose a key on your MIDI instrument (or drum pad or whatever) to play the Sound.

- Two Sounds cannot share the same I-note.

O-note

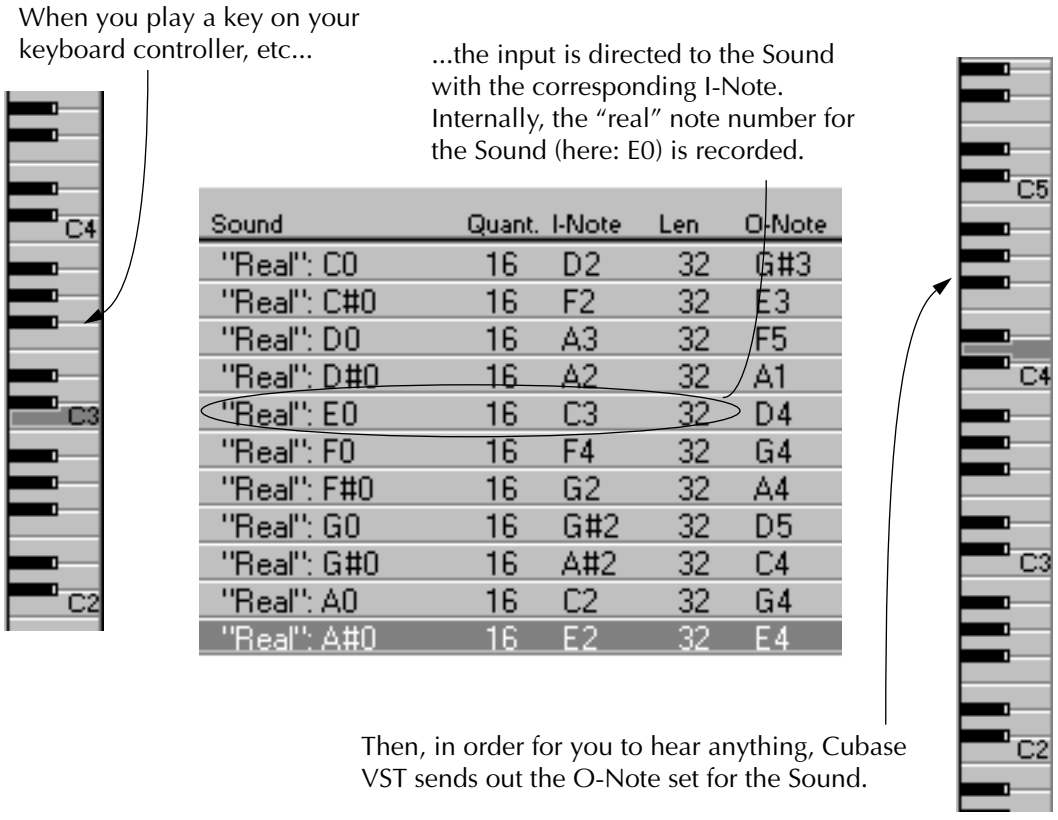
This is the MIDI note number that the Sound actually outputs when played by you or played back by the program.

Say that you have a rack synth with some drum sounds in it. They are spread over the keyboard range in a way that is inconvenient for your playing style. First set the O-notes in the Drum Map so that they match the actual notes that play back the sounds on your instrument. If the instrument plays back the bass drum on the C2 key, then set the O-Note for the bass drum sound to just that, C2, so that the Sound plays the bass drum. Now you can rearrange the whole "drum kit" so that the fingering suits you, just by setting the right I-notes.

● Since you use the Drum Map in Cubase VST to redirect certain note numbers (the ones that you play, the I-notes) to other note numbers (the ones that are sent back into your MIDI Instrument, the O-notes), this assumes that you use Cubase VST's Thru-mode (and your instrument is in Local Off-mode). See the Getting Started book for details.

How Cubase VST looks at the Drum Map

"Inside" the program, the 64 Sounds each have a note number. This is neither the I-note nor the O-note value, but simply a note number used to sort and keep track of the Sounds. This may seem superfluous knowledge for you, but it is actually only this "real" note number that is recorded, and as soon as you open a Drum Part in another editor, the "real" note numbers will be revealed. The figure on the next page shows how the Drum Map system works when you record a Drum Part:


When you play a key on your keyboard controller, etc...
...the input is directed to the Sound with the corresponding I-Note. Internally, the "real" note number for the Sound (here: E0) is recorded.
C4
C3
C2
C5
C4
C3
C2
Then, in order for you to hear anything, Cubase VST sends out the O-Note set for the Sound.

Sound	Quant.	I-Note	Len	O-Note
"Real": C0	16	D2	32	G#3
"Real": C#0	16	F2	32	E3
"Real": D0	16	A3	32	F5
"Real": D#0	16	A2	32	A1
"Real": E0	16	C3	32	D4
"Real": F0	16	F4	32	G4
"Real": F#0	16	G2	32	A4
"Real": G0	16	G#2	32	D5
"Real": G#0	16	A#2	32	C4
"Real": A0	16	C2	32	G4
"Real": A#0	16	E2	32	E4

Finally, when you play back the recorded note, the program doesn't care about the I-Note value, just looks at the recorded, "real" note number, and outputs the O-Note stored with that Drum Sound.

About Output and MIDI Channel

You can set separate Outputs and MIDI Channel for each Sound in the Drum Map. This allows you to use sounds from several different MIDI instruments or sound modules in the same Drum Map. There are a few things to note:

Selecting a MIDI Output for the Drum Sound

This is done in the Output column in the Drum Map (see page 123 in this chapter). The Output setting for the Sound *always* overrides the setting for the Track in the Track list. In other words, the Output setting in the Track list does not apply for Drum Tracks.

Selecting a MIDI Channel for the Drum Sound

This is done in the Chn column in the Drum Map.

- For the MIDI Channel settings in the Drum Map to apply, you have to set the MIDI Channel of the Track (in the Track list) to “Any”.

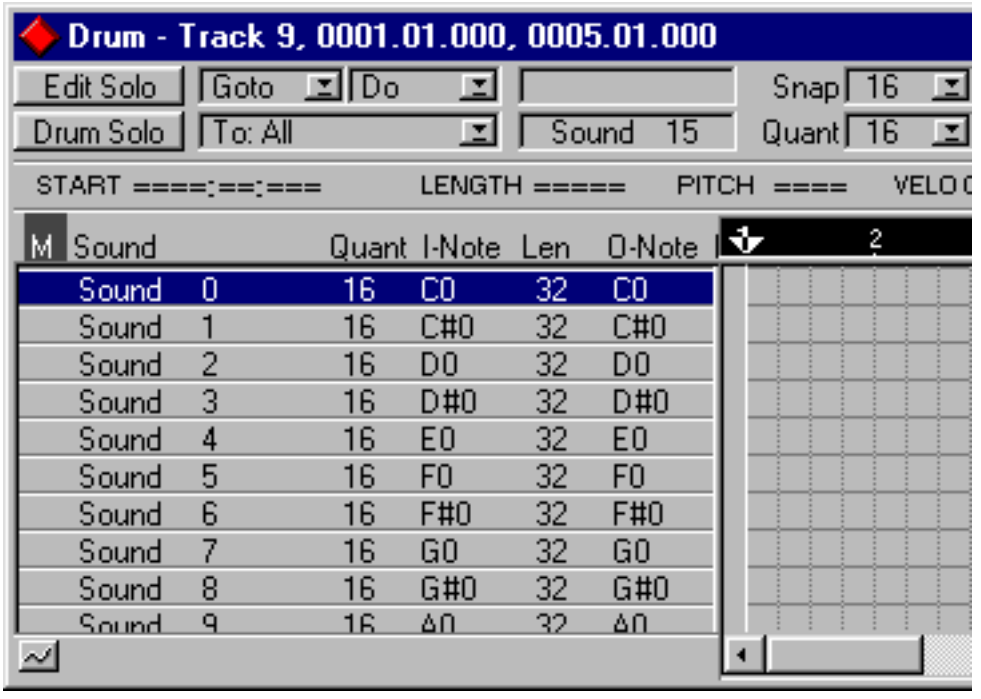
Setting up a Drum Map

Opening the Drum Editor

Drum Maps are created and edited in the Drum Edit window. Open the editor like this:

1. **Select a Drum Part.**
   You may have to create a Drum Track and a Drum Part if you haven't got any already. This is done just as with a MIDI Track, except you set the Track Class to Drum Track (see the Getting Started book for info on Track Classes).

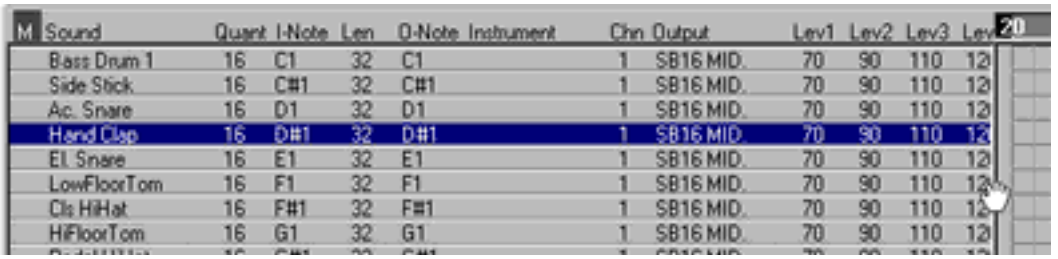
2. **Double click on the Part, select Edit from the Edit menu, or press [Control]-[E] on the computer keyboard.**
   The Drum editor is opened.



Making the Parameter Settings

1. **Click on the Speaker button on the Status Bar.**
   When this is activated, a note will be sent out every time you change a value in the editor. This is essential when setting up and selecting drum Sounds.

2. **Drag the Divider all the way to the right, so that all columns are visible.**
   If you are editing a MIDI Part in the Drum editor (see page 133) the columns look a little different.


M Sound Quant I-Note Len O-Note Instrument Chn Output Lev1 Lev2 Lev3
Bass Drum 1 16 C1 32 C1 1 SB16 MID. 70 90 110
Side Stick 16 C#1 32 C#1 1 SB16 MID. 70 90 110
Ac. Snare 16 D1 32 D1 1 SB16 MID. 70 90 110
Hand Clap 16 D#1 32 D#1 1 SB16 MID. 70 90 110
El. Snare 16 E1 32 E1 1 SB16 MID. 70 90 110
LowFloorTom 16 F1 32 F1 1 SB16 MID. 70 90 110
Cls HiHat 16 F#1 32 F#1 1 SB16 MID. 70 90 110
HiFloorTom 16 G1 32 G1 1 SB16 MID. 70 90 110

3. **Choose an unused Sound and change its O-Note value until you find a sound you want to include in your Drum Map.**
   Each time you change the O-Note value, the new note is output.

4. **Double-click in the Drum Name column and type in a suitable name for the Sound.**

5. **Repeat steps 3 and 4 until you have all the sounds you want in your Drum Map.**

- **If you want to incorporate sounds from several different instruments (or several drum kits from a multitimbral instrument) in the same Drum Map, set the Output and Channel values for each Sound so that the right instrument is addressed.**
  To avoid redoing this over and over again, you can define Instruments just like you do in the Track Columns in the Arrange Window.

● If you use different MIDI Channel settings for different Sounds, you have to set the MIDI Channel for the Track (in the Track list) to "Any".

---

6. **When you have all the sounds you want, set the I-Note values for each Sound.**
   Setting the I-Notes allows you to place your Sounds on convenient keys on the keyboard.

● You might get a warning saying "Double defined I-NOTE in your drum set". This means that more than one Sound is set to the same I-Note value. To avoid problems, be sure to change one of the Sounds to an unused I-Note value.

- **You may move and re-sort the Sounds in the editor if you for example want to have your snare drum sounds gathered on consecutive rows.**
  This is done by dragging the rows in the list, just like re-arranging Tracks in the Track list. Changing the order of the Sounds in the list does not affect the I-Note, O-Note or "real" note values - it is just a display feature, to make editing easier.

  You now have a basic Drum Map. You may want to set the Q and Len parameters and the four pre-defined velocity values when editing or inputting notes in Drum Edit. This can be done for some or all of the Sounds, as described on page 131 in this chapter.

Making parameter settings via MIDI

The I-Note, O-Note and Lev.1–4 parameters can be set using your MIDI controller, which often is a lot easier:

1. **Click on the MIDI connector symbol on the Status Bar to activate it.**

2. **Select the Sound you want to edit by clicking on its name in the Sound list.**

3. **Select the parameter you want to change by clicking on its name, at the top of its column.**
   The name gets highlighted to show that the parameter is selected.

4. **Play a note on your MIDI controller.**
   The note number (I-Note, O-Note) or velocity value (Lev. 1–4) changes accordingly. If you do not get it right, try again.

5. **When you are satisfied, deactivate the MIDI connector symbol.**

Loading a Drum Map

A number of predefined Drum Maps are included with Cubase VST. You can load anyone of them (or a Drum Map created and saved by you) into your Song:

1. **Select "Open" from the File menu.**

2. **Use the File List to open the directory named "drumsets" (or another directory where you have saved Drum Maps).**

3. **In the dialog box that appears, use the File Type pop-up to select "Drumsets (*.DRM)".**
   This causes Cubase VST to display the Drum Maps available in the current directory.

4. **Select and open the preferred Drum Map.**
   The new Drum Map will replace the one currently in the Song. If you save the Song, the new Map will be saved with it, and will automatically be loaded next time you open the Song.

Saving your Drum Map

Created Drum Maps can be saved for later use:

1. **Select "Save As..." from the File menu.**

2. **In the dialog box that appears, use the File Type pop-up to select "Drumsets (*.DRM)".**

3. **Choose a directory and name for the Drum Map and save it as usual.**

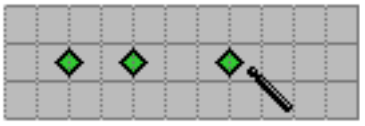
Editing Drum Parts in the Drum Editor

Inputting Notes with the Drum Stick

The Drum Stick tool is Drum Edit's equivalent of the Pencil tool in Key and List Edit. There is however one difference:

If you click in the Event display using the Drum Stick...

...a new note is created.



If you click on the created note again...

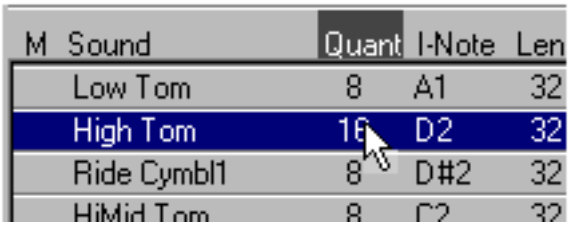
...the note is erased!

This makes it easy to try out rhythmic variations; adding and removing notes without having to switch tools.

- **If you delete a note this way, you can continue dragging, deleting other notes as long as you don't release the mouse button.**

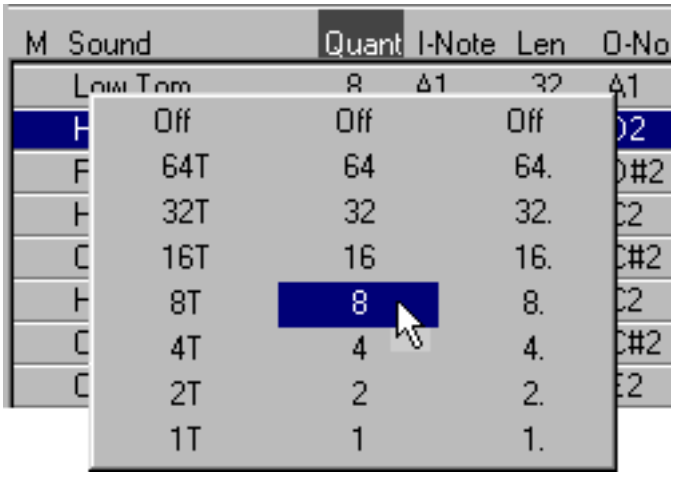
The Quant Value

Exactly where a created note is placed, is determined by the Quant value set for its Sound. This works just like Snap value in the other editors, except you can have different settings for each Sound.



Pressing the mouse button with the pointer in the Quant column...

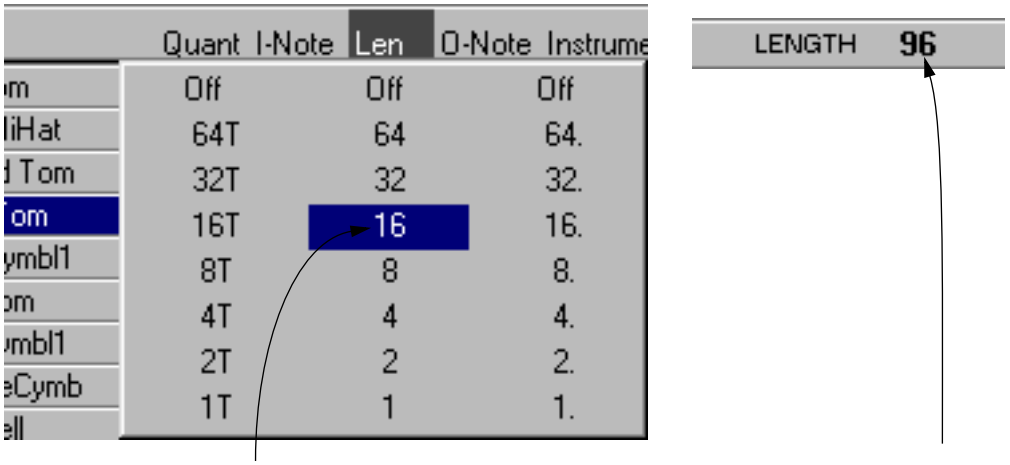
...opens the Quant pop-up menu.



- Note that the Quant value only applies when you *create* notes. When you Quantize notes, the regular Quantize value on the Status Bar applies (usually - see page 132), and when you move a note, the Snap value (on the Status Bar) determines its exact position.

The Len Value

You don't change the length of created notes with the Drumstick (as you can with the Pencil tool in Key Edit). Instead, you can predefine a length value for each Sound, that created notes automatically get.



The Len value is specified as a regular note value, while the Note Info Line shows lengths in ticks.

- The length of a drum note may or may not be important, since many drum sounds play to their end regardless of how long notes you play.

Velocity Values

You can give the notes one of four “levels” (velocity values), by holding down keys on the computer keyboard while you are drawing. The created notes are shown in the display as diamonds. If “White” is selected as the color option, a different pattern is used for different levels:

Modifier key	Level	Diamond symbol
[Shift]+[Control]	Lev. 1	◇
[Control]	Lev. 2	◇
[Shift]	Lev. 3	◈
None	Lev. 4	◆

The actual velocity value associated with each of the four levels, is set individually for each Sound in the Drum Map:

Output	Lev1	Lev2	Lev3	Lev4
SB16 MID.	58	89	110	120
SB16 MID.	70	90	104	113

Making Settings for All Sounds at Once

You can set a parameter to the same value for all Sounds:

1. **Hold down [Control] on the computer keyboard.**
2. **Change the parameter for anyone of the Sounds to the desired value.**
3. **Release [Control].**
   All Sounds in the Drum Map will now get the same value for the selected parameter.

Inputting Notes with the Paint Brush

The Paint Brush tool works just like in the other editors (see page 105). Just remember that each Sound has individual Quant and Len values.

- **When inputting notes with the brush, you can use the modifier keys to control the note velocity in the same way as when you input notes with the drum stick tool. See above.**

Quantizing

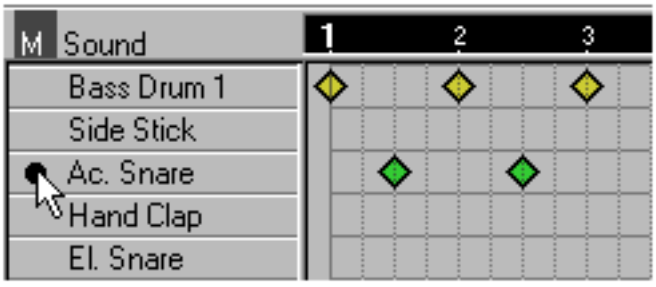
Quantizing Events in the Drum editor works just like quantizing in any other editor, with one exception:

- **If the To menu is set to Selected Events, Looped Selected Events or Cycled Selected Events, and *no Events are actually selected*, then the *selected Sound* will be Quantized after its individual Quant value.**

  In all other cases, quantizing works “as usual”, that is: All Events set to be affected will be Quantized after the Quantize value on the Status Bar.

Muting Drum Sounds

You may mute individual Sounds in the Drum editor. This is done just like muting Tracks in the Arrange Window, by clicking in the Mute column.



Muting a Sound.

There is also a Solo button, just below the Ed Solo button in the upper left corner of the window. This will Mute all Sounds but the selected one.

Editing MIDI Parts in Drum Edit

You may also edit regular MIDI Parts in Drum Edit, by selecting the Part(s) and selecting Drum Edit from the Edit menu or by pressing [Control]-[D] on the computer keyboard. When you do this, a simplified Drum Map is used where there is no O-note or Instrument settings:

M	Sound	Quant	I-Note	Len	Chn	Lev1	Lev2	Lev3	Lev4
	LowMid Tom	16	B1	32	1	70	90	110	120
	HiMid Tom	16	C2	32	1	70	90	110	120

If you open a MIDI Part in Drum Edit, each note will be displayed on the “line” (Sound) whose I-note setting is the same as the note’s actual note number. If you for example have a MIDI Part containing a note with the note number D2, this note will be displayed on the line of the Sound with the I-note value of D2 – if there is such a Sound in the Drum Map! Notes will be “invisible” in Drum Edit if there are no Sounds with the right I-note values.

When you use Drum Edit to edit MIDI Tracks, some of the columns work differently than with Drum Tracks:

I-Note	The I-Note is the note (the key, the MIDI Note number) used to input, display and play back the Sound.
Chn	This will be the Channel number for the notes you draw in or in any other way input directly in the editor. For this to have any effect you must set the Part (or Track) to MIDI Channel "Any" in the Arrange Window.

Changing the Drum Map

If you change the I-Note for a Sound while editing, the notes previously displayed on that line will of course disappear since the I-Note values doesn't correspond to the notes anymore. Conversely, all notes that are already in the Part and have the same note number as the new I-Note value will appear.

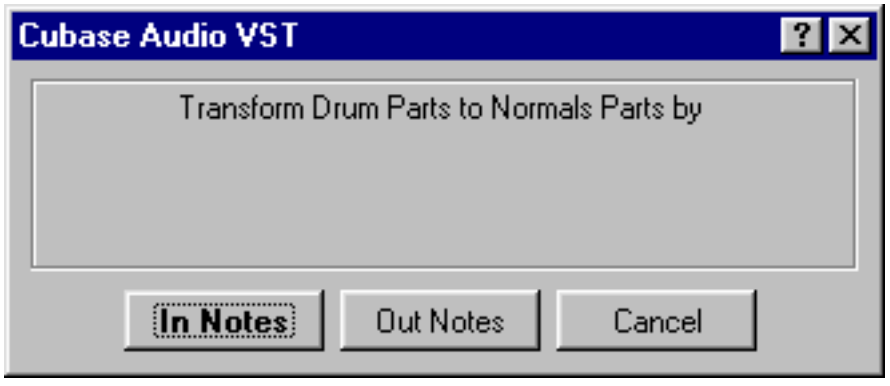
Converting between MIDI and Drum Parts

You may at any time change a MIDI Track to a Drum Track and vice versa. When you change the Track class, a dialog box appears, asking you if you wish to transform the Parts on the Track. These options are slightly different depending on "which way" you are converting.

From MIDI to Drum Track

- **"No" cancels the conversion of the Track.**
- **"Yes" will convert all Parts on the MIDI Track to Drum Parts. The notes will appear on the Sounds with the corresponding I-note values. If you for example have a note with the pitch C3, it will end up on the Sound with the I-note C3.**

From Drum to MIDI Track



- **"Cancel" will cancel the conversion of the Track.**
- **"In Notes" will set the note numbers of the converted notes to the I-Note values they had in the Drum Map.**
- **"Out Notes" will set the note numbers of the converted notes to the O-Note values they had in the Drum Map.**

● When you convert a Drum Part to a MIDI Part, the Output settings in the Drum Map will be lost.

13

List Edit

The Columns in the List

Start-Pos.	Length	Val.1	Val.2	Val.3	Status	Chn	Comment
0001.01.000	384	G#2	127	64	Note	1	
0001.01.192	=====	7	76	===	MainVolume	1	
0001.01.288	=====	7	103	===	MainVolume	1	
0001.02.096	288	E1	127	64	Note	1	
0001.02.288	=====	1	71	===	Modulation	1	
0001.03.000	96	B3	127	64	Note	1	
0001.03.096	96	D#2	127	64	Note	1	
0001.03.192	=====	68	93	===	Pitch Bend	1	
0001.04.000	96	D#3	127	64	Note	1	
0001.04.144	=====	3	1	===	Track-Mute	==	Track 3
0001.04.192	960	A#0	127	64	Note	1	
0001.04.288	288	D2	127	64	Note	1	
0002.01.192	=====	D#2	83	===	Poly-Press	1	
0002.01.226	=====	3	0	===	Track-Mute	==	Track 3
0002.02.000	96	E3	127	64	Note	1	
0002.03.000	480	B2	127	64	Note	1	
0002.03.192	=====	10	86	===	Pan	1	

In List Edit, you can view and edit most of the various Event Types in all of Cubase VST's different Track Classes. The columns in the List represent different values depending on the Track Class and Event Types:

Audio Tracks

If you open an Audio Part or Track in List Edit you get a list of the Audio Events. This is useful when you want to find and keep track of Events, since no Events ever obscure and hide each other as they can do in Audio Edit. When it comes to editing, List Edit is limited to moving the Audio Events around. The columns have the following labels and functions for Audio Tracks:

Startpos	**Endpos**	**Chn**	**Comment**
The meter (or time) position of the Start Inset. Changing this is the same as moving the Audio Event.	The End Inset position. Cannot be edited, but changes automatically when you edit the Startpos value.	The Audio Channel that each Event plays back on. Cannot be edited here.	This column displays the name of the segment and audio file played back by the Event. Cannot be edited.

You can also perform basic editing of Audio Events in the Part Display, to the right in the List Edit window. In brief, you can do the following:

- **Move Events by dragging them or by using the Kicker tools.**
- **Delete Events using the Eraser tool.**
- **Create new Events by clicking with the Pencil tool.**
  As in Audio Edit, this opens a file dialog where you can select an audio file to import.

● The rest of this chapter does *not* apply to Audio Tracks.

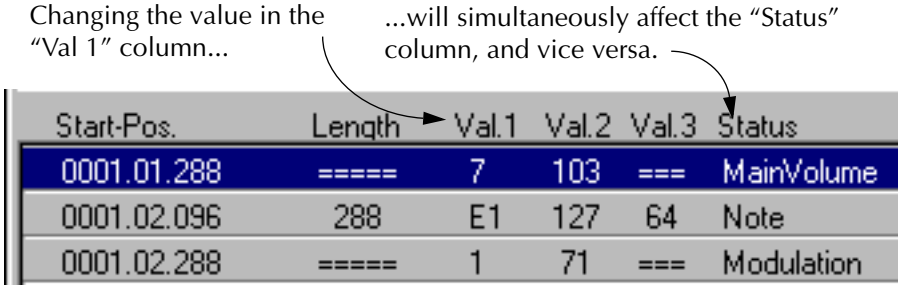
Common to the various Event types, are the Start Position, Length and Chn parameters. As you expected, these show where an Event starts (as a meter or time position value, see page 147 in this chapter), its length in ticks and its MIDI Channel value, respectively. The table below shows the List columns and the parameters for the different Event types (the rows):

	Val 1	Val 2	Val 3	Comment
Notes	Pitch	Note On velocity	Note Off velocity	Sound Name (Drum Tracks)
Poly Pressure	Note Number	Pressure Amount	Not used	Not used
Control Change	Controller Type	Change Amount	Not used	Not used
Program Change	Program Number	Not used	Not used	Not used
Aftertouch	Pressure Amount	Not used	Not used	Not used
Pitch Bend	Bendvalue (fine)	Bend value (coarse)	Not used	Not used
System Exclusive	Not used	Not used	Not used	The Sys Ex message – see page 138

There is also a column named Status. For all Event types except Control Change (see below), this is just an explanatory value that can't be changed, e.g. "Note" for Note Events etc.

Transforming Controller Events

If you change Value 1 for a Control Change Event, you actually change the Controller from one type to another. To simplify this, the name of the Controller type is shown in the "Status" column in the List. You can change the value either in the "Val 1" column or the "Status" column.



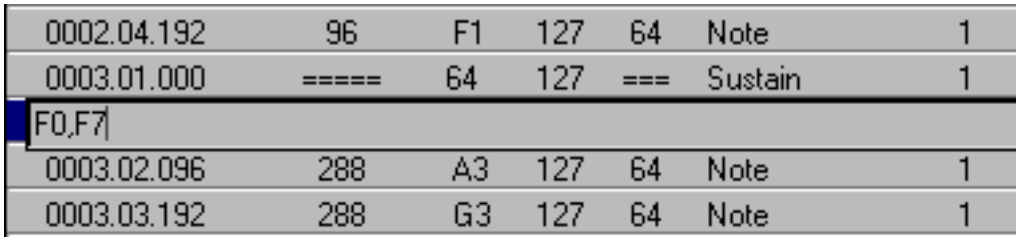
- **If you want to transform all Controller Events of a certain type to another type, use this feature in conjunction with the Mask function (described on page 145 in this chapter) and the [Alt] key on the computer keyboard (which makes changes affect all Events in the List, see page 141 in this chapter).**

Editing System Exclusive Messages

A complete package of System Exclusive data is shown as one Event in the List. The first part of the message is shown in the Comment column, and the Event Type Status column will show the manufacturers ID code, if known.

To view and edit the complete message:

1. **Click in the Comment column.**



A long name box is opened, showing the complete Sys Ex message in hexadecimal code.

- If the message is very long, you will not be able to see all of it.

2. **Enter and edit Sys Ex text.**
   System Exlusive data is written as a string of hexadecimal bytes, each separated by a comma. If you're not absolutely sure of what you are doing, you should probably avoid hexademical editing of System Exclusive messages.

3. **Press [Return] to keep your changes or [Esc] if you want to cancel editing.**

- For more extensive System Exclusive editing, we recommend that you use the SysEx Editor module, as described in the separate document "Handling SysEx and the SysEx Editor".

Mixer Tracks

Event Type	Val 1	Val 2	Val 3	Comment
MIDI Mixer Events	Object Number	Value	Not used	Object Name and Instrument setting

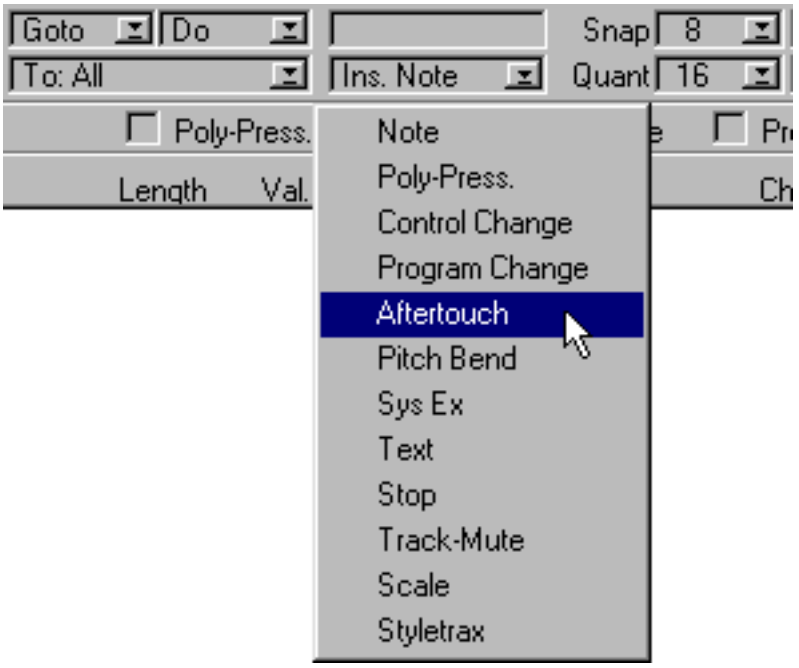
Special Events

These, like Mixer Events, are not really MIDI Events, but rather Events used internally in Cubase VST. Therefore they have no MIDI Channel value.

Event Type	Val 1	Val 2	Val 3	Comment
Track Mute	Track Number	1: Mute, 0: UnMute	Not used	Track Name
Stop Event	No values are used. Stop Events just make Cubase VST stop, just as if you had clicked the Stop button yourself.			
Text Event	Text Events let you enter comments in the list. Click in the Comments column to enter and edit text.These texts do not affect MIDI in any way, they are just meant to serve as remarks for System Exclusive and other Events.			
Score Event	These reflect Symbols in Score Edit. Score Events can not be created in List Edit, but they can be deleted.			
Scale Event	Type of Scale (Major, minor, etc.	Scale Root Key (0–11 = C–B)		Value 1 (the type of Scale), displayed in words.
StyleTrax Event	Style	Variation		

Creating Events

1. **Use the Insert pop-up menu to decide what type of Event to Insert.**



2. **Set the Snap value to the smallest position you want to enter a note at.**

3. **If you are entering notes, set their length with the Quantize value.**

   From here there are three ways to go:

- **Select the Pencil or the Paint Brush and draw the Event in the Event display.**
  The Event appears both in the display and in the List to the left.

- **Activate Step Input by clicking on the foot symbol on the Status Bar.**
  Step programming is described in “Step Recording”.

- **Create notes using the Do menu, see page 100.**

If you are inputting notes, they will have...

- the pitch C3.
- a Note On velocity of 127.
- a Note-Off velocity of 64.
- the MIDI Channel value of the Part.

Editing in the List

The positions and values of Events can be edited in the List, using the regular procedures. There are some things to note:

- **If you hold down the [Alt] key on the computer keyboard while you're changing a value, all Events of the same Event type will be edited.**
  The setting on the To pop-up menu is also taken into account, allowing you to for example edit all Control Change Events within the Cycle, etc (see page 99). If you wish to edit only a certain *type* of Control Change Events, e.g. Modulation Events, use the Mask function (see page 145 in this chapter).

- **If you change an Event's Start Position, the List will be re-sorted.**
  The Events are always shown in the order they are played back, with the earliest Event at the top and the latest at the bottom.

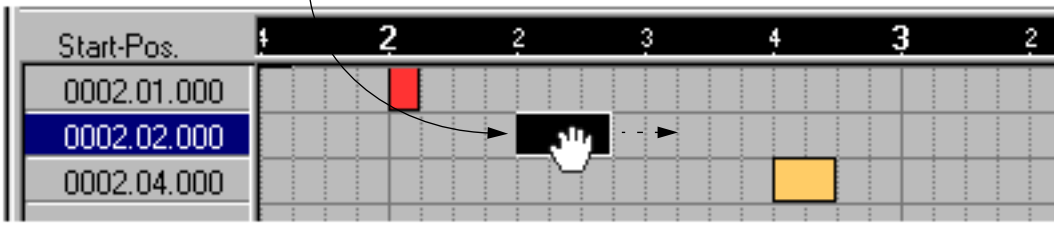
Editing in the Event Display

Moving Events

You can use the Arrow tool to move Events in the Event Display, much like in Key or Drum Edit.However, there is one big difference. This is how you should look at the horizontal and vertical positions:

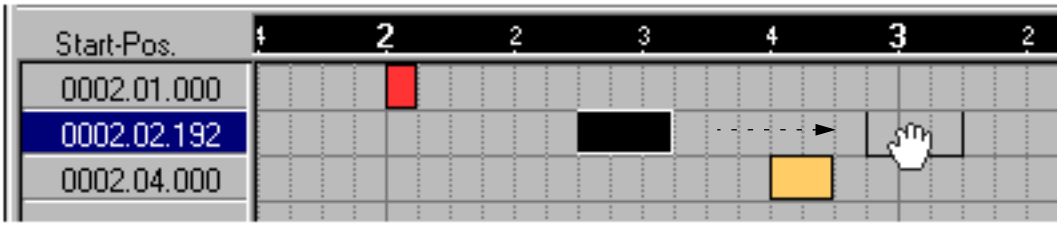
- **The horizontal position of an Event in the Event Display is directly related to the Events Start Position in the Song (just like in Key or Drum Edit).**
- **The vertical position of an Event is just related to the order of the Events, like in the List. It has no *direct* relation to time.**
  The figure below shows an example of this.

Let's say we have three Events, positioned at 2.1.0, 2.2.0 and 2.4.0.
If you move the Event in the middle a bit to the right...

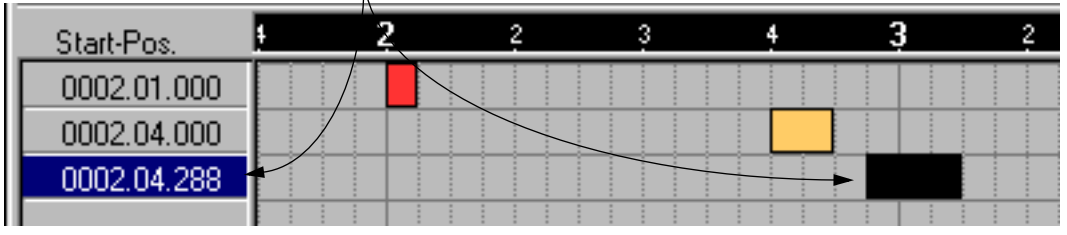


...it will still keep the exact same vertical position, since its position is still after the first Event but before the third.

But if you move the Event further to the right, past the third Event...



...the Event suddenly appears on another vertical position, since the order of the Events has been changed.

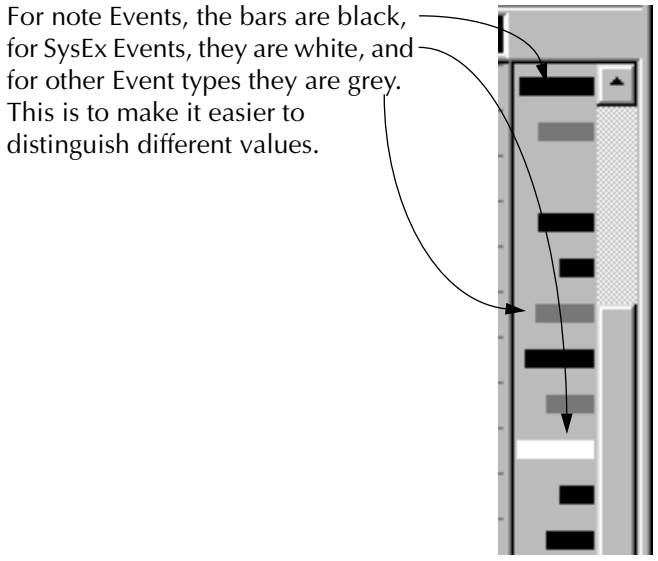


Changing the Lengths of Notes

You can click inside a Note Event and drag it to the desired length, using the Pencil tool. The new length is shown in the Length column in the List.

Editing in the “Value 2” Display

The graphical display to the right shows Value 2 for the Events in the List (where applicable) as horizontal bars. You may use this to change values, create ramps etc.


For note Events, the bars are black,
for SysEx Events, they are white, and
for other Event types they are grey.
This is to make it easier to
distinguish different values.

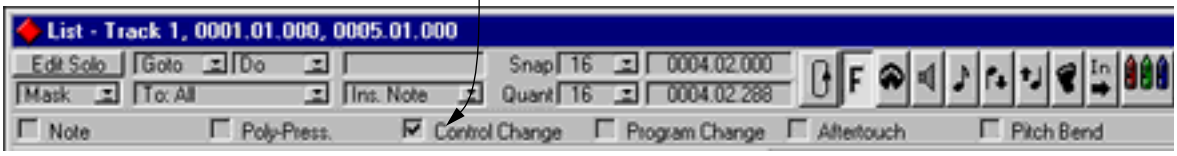
As you can see in the tables on page 137 and page 138 in this chapter, the Event types that use Value 2 are Notes, Poly Pressure, Control Change, Pitch Bend, Scale, Styletrax and MIDI Mixer Events. Perhaps the most common use for the display is to edit Value 2 for Note Events, that is, the Note On velocity value.

- **You do not have to select the Pencil tool to change the bars in the “Value 2” display; the pointer automatically changes to the Pencil when you move it into the display.**

Hiding Events

You might not want to see all types of Events in the list. If you for example are only interested in editing Program Change, then all other Events are just in the way. Use the Display Filters to determine which Event types should be shown:

1. **Click on the "F"-button on the Status Bar.**
   This opens a line with checkboxes for the different Event Types.



2. **Check the checkboxes for the Event Types you want to Hide.**
   These types disappear from the List.

- The Display Filters do not remove, mute or in any other way change the Events. Editing may affect both visible Events and Events hidden with the Display Filters.

- Special Events can not be hidden.

Using Mask

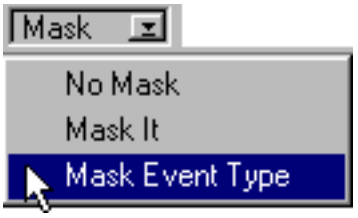
You can Mask Out certain Events in List Edit. This goes beyond the Display Filters in two ways:

- Masking really hides Events from any type of editing like Quantizing, Deleting, etc.
- Masking makes it possible to hide Events not only of a certain Type, but also with certain values.

Masking out all Events of a certain type

To make List Edit only show Events of a certain Type (notes, Controllers, Aftertouch etc), proceed as follows

1. **Select an Event in the List.**
   Let's say that you select a note.
2. **Pull down the Mask menu and select "Mask Event Type".**



All Events that are not of the same type (here: all non-note Events) are hidden.

Start-Pos.	Length	Val.1	Val.2	Val.3	Status
0001.01.000	384	C3	76	64	Note
0001.02.096	288	E1	127	64	Note
0001.03.000	96	C3	102	64	Note
0001.03.096	96	D#2	43	64	Note

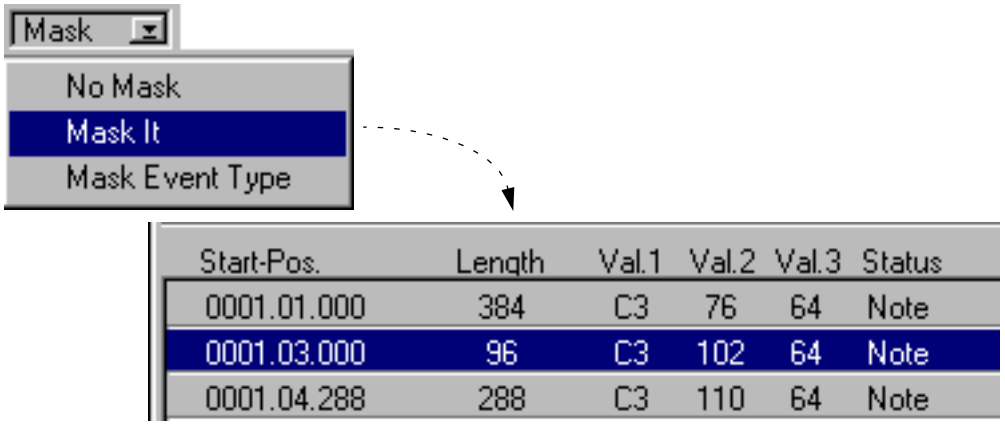
Any editing you do now, including functions in the Do pop-up and on the Functions menu, will only affect the displayed Event Type.

Masking out all Events of a certain type and with the same values

This makes List Edit show only those Events that are of a certain Type and have the exact same Value 1 (for notes, this means the same Pitch, for Control Change Events it means the same type of Controller, etc).

1. **Select an Event in the List.**
   Let's say that you select a note with the pitch C3.

2. Pull down the Mask menu and select “Mask It”.


Mask
No Mask
Mask It
Mask Event Type
Start-Pos. Length Val.1 Val.2 Val.3 Status
0001.01.000 384 C3 76 64 Note
0001.03.000 96 C3 102 64 Note
0001.04.288 288 C3 110 64 Note

In our case, only notes with the pitch C3 will be shown and affected by editing.

Unmasking Events

- **To make all Events visible and possible to change, pull down the Mask menu and select “No Mask”.**

An Example:

Let us say that you have been using a MIDI Instrument with a Breath Controller, and therefore have a lot of Breath Controller Events (Continuous Controller 2). Now you want to transform these Events to Modulation Events (Continuous Controller 1). Proceed like this:

1. Select a Breath Controller Event.

2. Pull down the Mask menu and select “Mask It”.
Now, only Control Change Events with Value 1 set to 2 (that is, Breath Controller Events) will be shown and affected by editing.

3. Press [Alt] on the computer keyboard.
This will let you edit all Events in the List at once.

4. Holding down [Alt], change Value 1 of the selected Event to 1.
You may also change the value in the Status column; it is the same value, only expressed in words.

5. Release the [Alt] key.
Now all Events in the List will have Value 1 set to 1 - they have been transformed to Modulation Events.

6. Pull down the Mask menu and select “No Mask”.

● The only function *not* affected by the Mask command is Playback. All Events are always played back.

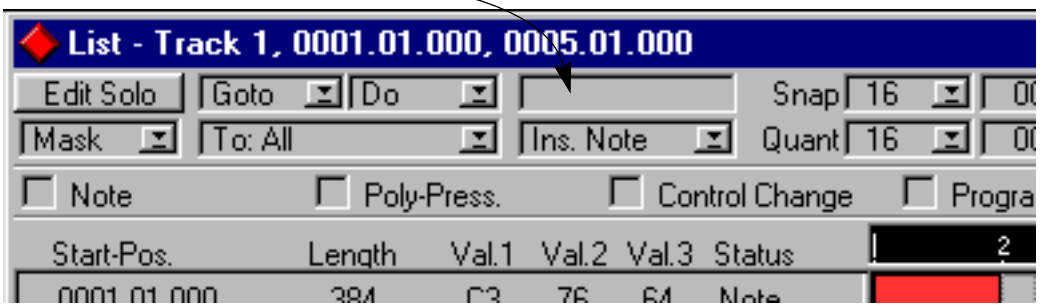
About Quantizing and Functions

In List Edit, you can use all the Functions on the main Functions menu, but many of them, like quantizing, only work on notes.

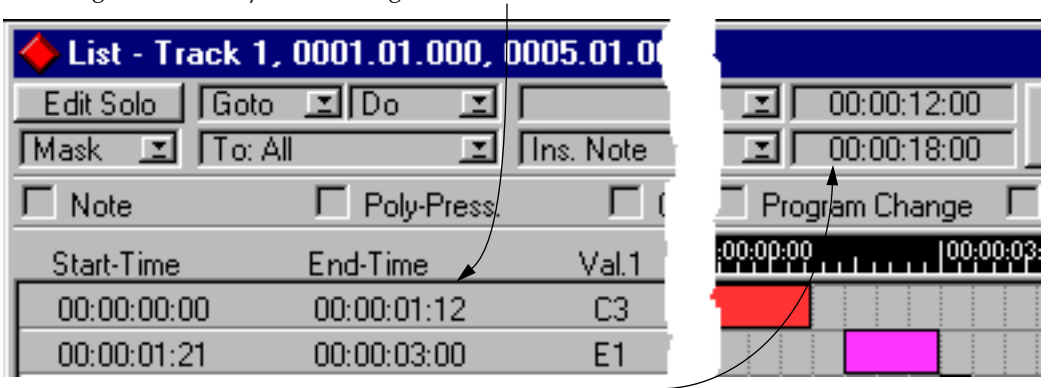
Switching to Time Positions

The default way for Cubase VST to show a note's position in the List, is by showing its Start Position (as Meter position) and Length (in ticks). A note can also be shown as Time position, with Start and End Time shown in hours:minutes:seconds:frames. For more info on Time positions, see the Basic Methods chapter in the Getting Started book.

Clicking on the Mouse box...



...will make the first two columns in the List change from showing an Event's Start Position and Length (notes only) to showing its Start Time and End Time.



The positions for Loop Start and End are also displayed in this format.

To return to Meter Position, click on the mouse box again.

14

Score Edit

About this Chapter

This is a brief description of some of the editing features specific to Score Edit. We will not deal with score printing or the finer aspects of working with scores here. If you want to use the extensive Score layout features of Cubase VST, you should read the “Score Layout and Printing” document, included with the Score and Audio versions of the program.

Cubase vs Cubase Score/Audio

Cubase Score VST and Cubase Audio VST have much more advanced score printing features than the “regular” version of Cubase. If you have Cubase Score VST or Cubase Audio VST and plan to use the Score Editor for printing, we recommend you turn to the “Score Layout and Printing” document rather than reading this chapter.

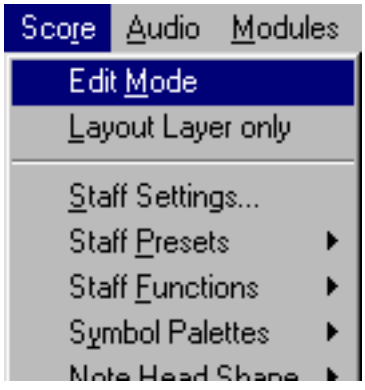
- Whenever a description in this chapter applies to one version only, this is made explicit in the text.

About the Score menu and the Do pop-up menu

One of the big differences between the Score Editors in the “regular” Cubase VST and the Score/Audio versions, is that the latter have a dedicated Score menu, which is only accessible from within Score Edit. The regular Cubase VST does not have a Score menu. Instead, the necessary Score commands and functions have been placed on the Do pop-up menu.

Page Mode and Edit Mode (Cubase Score VST and Audio VST only)

In the Score and Audio versions of Cubase VST, the Score editor has two principal modes, Page and Edit Mode. The difference and implications of these modes are described in the “Score Layout and Printing” book. In this chapter, we assume that you are in Edit Mode.



Switching to Edit Mode (If there is no Edit Mode option on your Score menu, then you already are in Edit Mode).

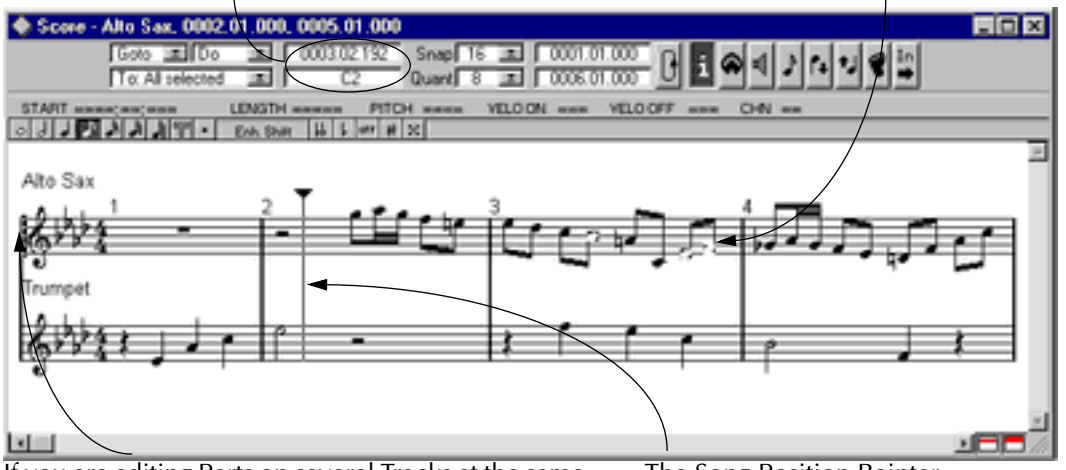
If you don’t use Cubase Score or Cubase Audio, you don’t need to worry about any “modes” in the Score Editor.

Overview

Score Edit displays your music as regular notation. Below you will find a description of some of Score Edit's main features:

The mouse position is shown both in the mouse box and as a note name in the box below. When you move a note, the lower box shows the amount of transposition in semitones.

The "inverted" notes are selected.



If you are editing Parts on several Tracks at the same time, the striped double bar line at the beginning of the score indicates the Active Track.

The Song Position Pointer.

- **If you are editing one Track, as much of it as possible is shown on several staves - one above the other - just as with a score on paper.**
- **If you edit Parts on several Tracks, they are put on a grand staff (multiple staves, tied together by bar lines).**
- **The number of measures across the screen of course depends on how many notes there are in each measure.**
- **The last measure in the Part is indicated by a double bar line.**

Getting the Score displayed correctly

Time Signature

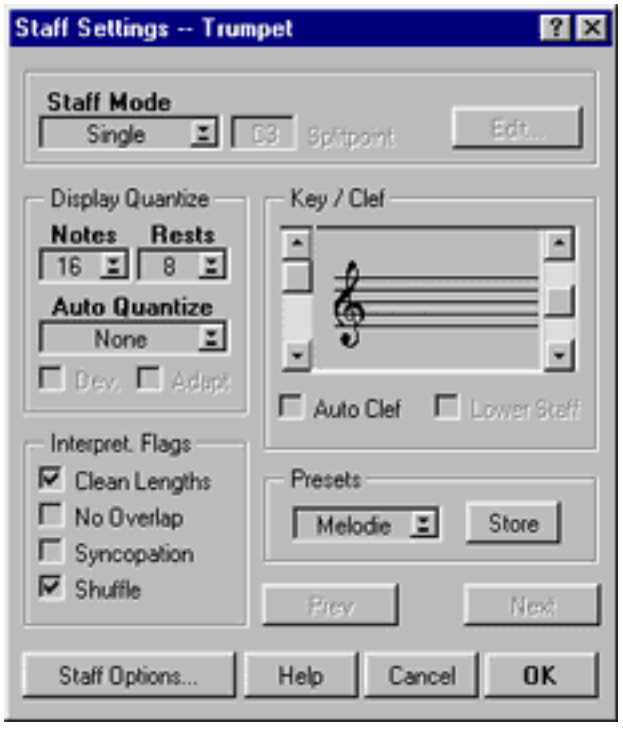
Score Edit always uses the Time Signatures specified in the Master Track.

Staff Settings

When you open Score Edit for a Part played in real-time, the score may not look as legible as you would first expect. The Score editor can ignore the minor time variances in performance and make a neater score almost instantly. To achieve this, there are a number of settings in a *Staff Settings* dialog box that determine how the program displays the music. In this chapter we will describe the options in "regular" Cubase. Cubase Score and Audio have additional options.

There are two ways to open the Staff Settings dialog:

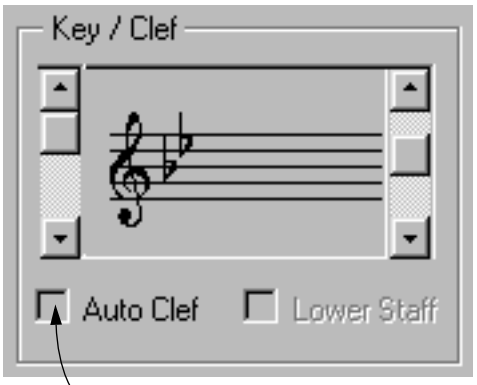
- **Double click in the white area to the left of the staff.**
- **Activate a staff by clicking on the first bar line on any of the staves in the window. Then select "Staff Settings" from the Do pop-up menu (or, if you are using Cubase Score VST or Cubase Audio VST, from the Score menu).**
- **Activate the Staff and press [Control]-[I] on the computer keyboard.**
  The Staff Settings dialog appears:



● The settings you do in this dialog box are independent for each Staff (Track), but common for a piano staff which you have created by choosing the "Split" option in the Staff Mode pop-up menu (see below).

Key and Clef

The correct Key and Clef are set using the two scroll bars in the Key & Clef section.



If you check the “Auto Clef” checkbox, the program attempts to guess the correct clef, judging from the pitch of the music.

Staff Mode

This pop-up determines how the staff should be shown:

- **When set to “Single”, all notes in the Part are shown in the same staff.**
- **When set to “Split”, the Part is split on the screen into a bass and treble clef, as in a piano score.**
  You use the Splitpoint value field to set the note where you want the split to occur. Notes above and including the split note will appear on the upper staff, and notes below the split note will appear on the lower staff.

Before and after setting a split at C3.

- **To set the clef and key for the lower staff, activate the “Lower Staff” checkbox in the Key/Clef section.**

Display Quantize

Notes are not an absolute language, and you must give the program a few hints on how the score should be displayed. This is done using the Display Quantize section of the Staff Settings dialog.

- These are only display values used for the graphics in the Score Editor. They do not affect the actual recording in any way.

Here is a description of the functions:

Parameter	Description
Notes	The smallest note value to be displayed. Set this to the smallest significant note value used in your music. If for example you set this to eighth notes, no note values smaller than eighth notes will be displayed. If you set it to a triplet value, the program expects all notes on this staff to be triplets. This setting is partly overridden by Auto Quantize (see below).
Rests	The smallest rest value to be displayed, as with the “Notes” setting described above.
Auto Quantize	Generally, if your music contains mixed triplets and straight notes, try selecting “Position” or “Distance” from this pop-up menu. Otherwise set it to “None”. Auto Quantize uses involved methods to make your score look as legible as possible. Auto Quantize allows you to mix straight notes with tuplets (triplets) in a Part. But, Auto Quantize also uses the (display) Quantize value. If it can't find an appropriate note value for a certain note or group of notes, it will use the set Quantize value to display it. If the part is imprecisely played and/or complex, Auto Quantize may have a problem “figuring out” exactly what you “mean”. If you are using Cubase Score or Audio, there is more information in the chapter “Transcribing MIDI Recordings” in the Score Layout and Printing document.

Flags

These provide additional options for how the score should be displayed:

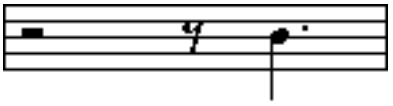
Parameter	Description
Clean Lengths	When this is activated, notes that are considered to be chords will be shown with identical lengths. This is done by showing the longer notes as shorter than they are. When Clean Lengths is turned on, notes with very short overlaps are also cut off; a bit as with No Overlap (see below), but with a more subtle effect.
No Overlap	When this is activated one note will never be shown as overlapping another, lengthwise. This allows long and short notes starting at the same point to be displayed without ties; the long notes are cut off in the display. This will make the music more legible.

An example measure with No Overlap deactivated...

. and with No Overlap activated.

Syncopation	When this function is activated, syncopated notes are shown in a more legible way.

This is a dotted quarter at the end of a bar when Syncope is Off...



... and when it is On.

Shuffle	Activate this function when you have played a shuffle beat and want it displayed as straight notes (not triplets). This is very common in jazz notation.
Flat Beams	When this is ticked, the beams over the notes will be flat (as opposed to slanted).
No Beams	When this is ticked, there will be no beams whatsoever in the Part. This is good for example for vocal scoring.
Track Name	When this is activated, the name of the Track is shown at the beginning of the Staff.

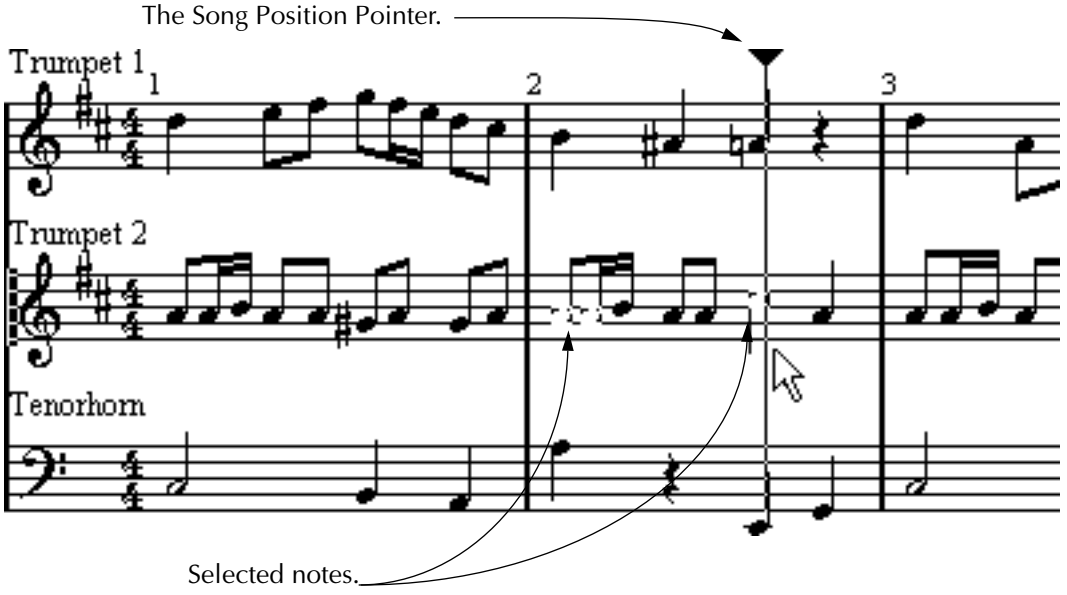
Closing the Dialog

- **When you are done with the settings, close the dialog, by clicking the OK button.**
  This applies the settings to the active Staff/Track. If you are editing several Tracks at once (see next page), you can apply the Staff Settings to all these Tracks at once, by holding down the [Alt] key when you click OK.

● Remember that the Staff settings are done independently for each Track.

Editing several Tracks

You may edit several Tracks simultaneously in Score Edit. The Tracks are shown as multiple staves, tied together by bar lines and placed in the order they appear in the Track List.



- **If you need to rearrange the staves: close the editor, go back into the Arrange window, drag the Tracks to the order you want them, and open Score Edit again.**

The Active Staff

Just as in the other editors, all MIDI input (as when recording from your instrument) is directed to one of the Tracks, here called the Active Staff. The Active Staff is indicated by a black rectangle in the left part of the first visible bar.

To change Active Staff:

- **Click anywhere in the Staff you want to activate.**

  or

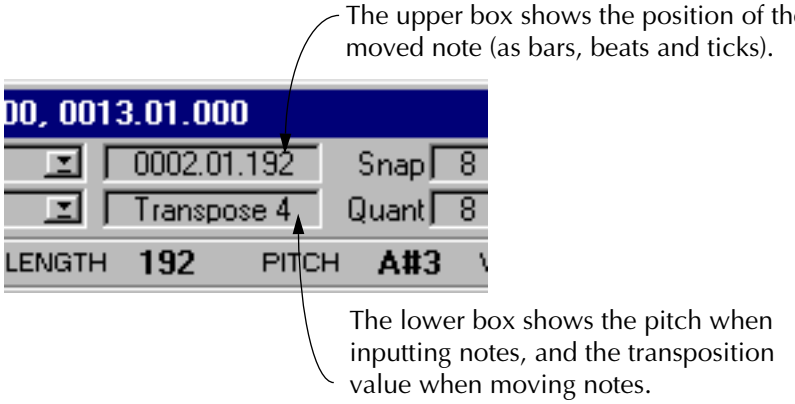
- **Step to the Staff you want to activate, using the [↑] and [↓] keys on the computer keyboard.**

Manipulating Notes

There are a few special features for manipulating notes:

Moving Notes

- **Use the two mouse boxes to determine where to place notes.**


The upper box shows the position of the moved note (as bars, beats and ticks).
00, 0013.01.000
0002.01.192
Snap 8
Transpose 4
Quant 8
LENGTH 192
PITCH A#3
The lower box shows the pitch when inputting notes, and the transposition value when moving notes.

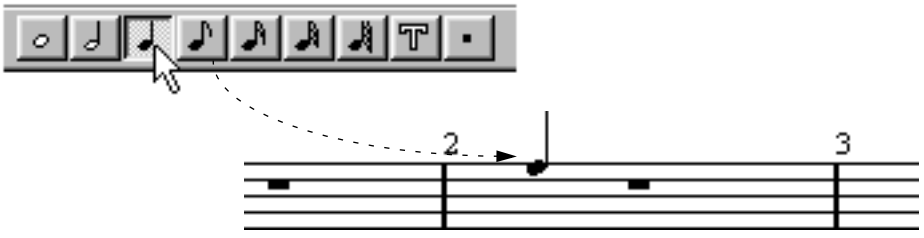
When you move several notes, the upper mouse box shows the position of the note you clicked on when starting to drag.

- **If you hold down [Control] and transpose a note, it will only be transposed within the set key.**
  If, for example, the key is C major (set in the Staff Settings dialog), you will only transpose to notes belonging to the C major scale.

Creating Notes and Rests

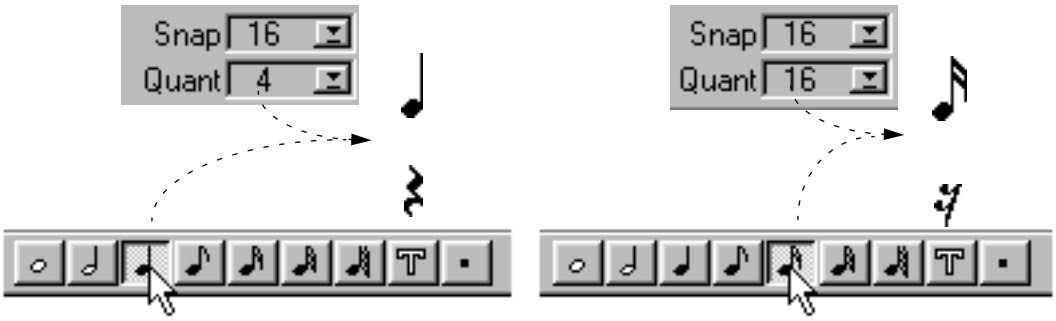
When you input music “by hand” in Score Edit, you can use the Note and Rest tools. The length of the note or rest to be input, is determined by the Quantize value. However, the easiest way to input notes and rests, is to use the note symbols in the Toolbar:

- **To input a note, first click on the desired note value in the Toolbar (the Note tool is automatically selected), then click in the staff where you want the note.**
  If you want to insert a triplet or dotted note, click on the “T” or “·” button when you select the note value.



- **To input a rest, first select the Rest tool, then proceed as when inputting notes.**
  There is one big difference between inputting notes and rests:

● Rests are always inserted (as if Insert was activated) into the music.

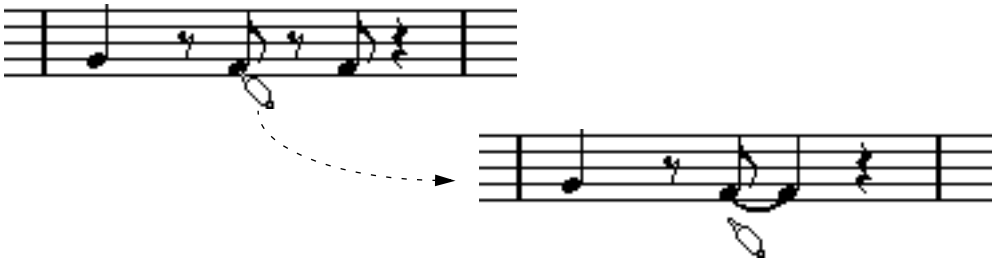


When you change Quantize value, or click on a note button on the Toolbar, the shapes of the Note and Rest tools are changed.

Joining Notes

The Glue Tube allows you to join two or more notes of the same pitch.

- **Click on a note with the Glue Tube tool.**

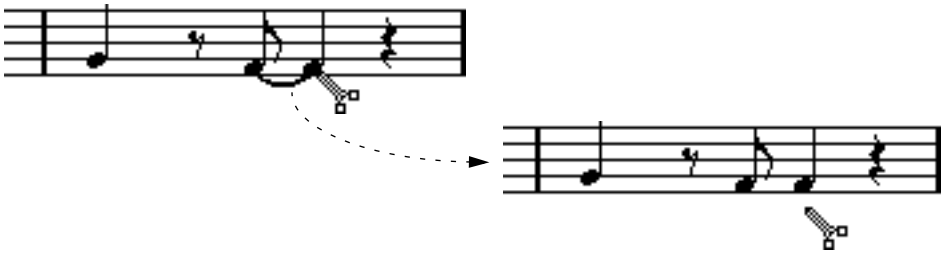


The note is joined to the next note with the same pitch.

Splitting Notes (Cubase Score VST and Cubase Audio VST only)

The Scissors tool does the opposite of the Glue Tube; it splits two tied notes into separate notes:

- **Click on the second of two tied notes.**



The notes are split into two.

Enharmonic Shift

The buttons to the right on the toolbar are used to shift the display of selected notes so that for example an F# (F sharp) is instead shown as a Gb (G flat) and vice versa:

1. **Use the arrow tool to select the note(s) you want to affect.**

2. **Click on one of the buttons to display the selected notes(s) a certain way.**

The middle button resets the notes to original display. The other four options are double flats, flats, sharps and double sharps.

Flip Stems

By selecting this item from the pop-up Do menu or by pressing [Alt]+[Control]-[X] on the computer keyboard, you change the stem direction of the selected note(s).

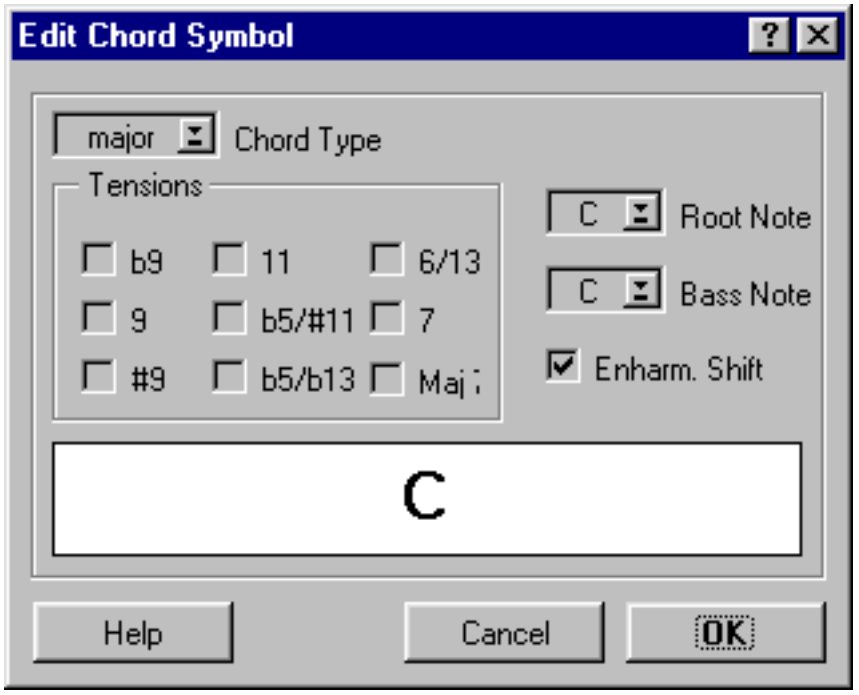
Chord Symbols

You can add Chord symbols to your score. These are normally put in above the notes.

Adding Chords

1. Select the Chord Tool.

2. Click in the score, at the position where you want to insert a chord symbol.
A dialog box opens where you can set a number of parameters:



- The *Root Note* is the actual key of the chord.
- The *Bass Note* should differ from the Key Note if you want to specify a chord with different bass note. “Root Note C” and “Bass Note D” means a C chord with a D bass note.
- The *Chord Type* is the basic type of chord which you select from a pop-up.
- The *Tensions* checkboxes are used to add tensions to the chord, as many as you like (or as makes sense...)
- You can perform enharmonic shift on chords by activating this option in the dialog.

3. **When you have set up the chord, click OK.**
   A chord symbol appears at the position where you clicked.

Editing chords

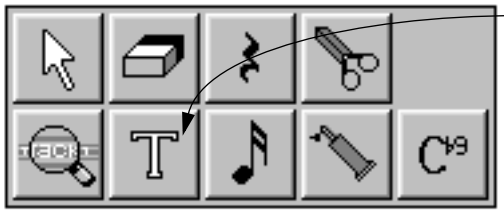
Once a chord is in place, you can edit it by double clicking it.The same dialog box appears as when you created the chord. Change the settings and click OK.

Adding Text

● This procedure applies to the "regular" Cubase VST only. If you have Cubase Score VST or Cubase Audio VST, please refer to the chapter "Working with Text" in the "Score Layout and Printing" document.

Adding Text

1. **Select the "Text" Tool.**



2. **Click anywhere in the score.**
   A text input line dialog box appears.

3. **Enter the text and press [Return] when you are ready.**

Changing the Font and Size

If you wish to change the font and size for some text you already put in, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the text.**

2. **Select "Text settings" from the Do pop-up menu.**

3. **Use the Font pop-up, the size setting and the style options in the dialog box that appears.**
   The fonts you find on the menu depend on what fonts you have installed in Windows. The quality of their printout also depends on what type of font they are and what kind of printer you use. Generally, TrueType fonts (preceded by a "TT" symbol on the pop-up) and PostScript fonts (if you have a PostScript printer) will print fine in any size.

4. **Click OK to apply your settings to the selected text object(s).**

   The font and size settings you just made will also apply to all the text you input onwards (until you change them, of course).

- On your font menu you will also find the *Cubase* font. This is not intended for text, but for the non-text symbols used in the score.

Cutting and Pasting Text

Using the keyboard short-cuts (not the menus) you can Cut and Paste text.Select some text, press [Control]-[X] or [Control]-[C] to Cut or Copy. Click for a new insertion point, and press [Control]-[V] to Paste.

Editing text

To edit text, just double click on it with the Arrow tool and enter new information on the input line, just as when you put in the text the first time.

To change the size or type face of a block of text, select it and then select “Text Settings” from the Score menu, as described above.

Moving and Duplicating Chords And Text

Text and Chord Symbols can be moved freely within the “page”, one at a time or together, just drag it/them to the new location.

If you hold down [Alt] when you drag you are making copies instead of just moving.

Deleting Text and Chord Symbols

As with all other objects in Cubase there are two ways to erase Text and Chord Symbols. Either select them and press [Delete] or [Backspace] on the keyboard, or select the Eraser from the Toolbox and click on them.

Title, Comment and Copyright

These are three standard text elements on the first page of your score. To make settings for these, select “Score Title” from the Do pop-up menu (if you are using the regular Cubase VST version) or double-click on the title in Page Mode (if you are using Cubase Score VST or Cubase Audio VST). This opens a dialog box, in which you can input texts and make settings for font, size and attributes for each of the three elements. Cubase VST will automatically position the elements as follows:

- The Title is always centered, at the top of the page.
- The Comment is always positioned just below the Title.
- The Copyright notice is always positioned at the right side of the page, just above the first system.

In the “regular” Cubase VST, none of these elements are visible on-screen but will be printed out properly.

Printing

● If you have Cubase Score VST or Cubase Audio VST, you should also refer to the chapter “Printing and Exporting Pages” in the “Score Layout and Printing” document.

To print your score, proceed as follows:

1. **Make settings for the Text, Title, Comment and Copyright elements, as described on the previous pages.**

2. **Pull down the File menu and select Print & Page Setup.**
   A dialog with printer settings opens.

3. **Select the preferred printer, paper size, orientation, etc.**

4. **If you need to, change the margins by setting the Left, Right, Top and Bottom settings.**
   Please note that each printer has a minimum margin. To automatically set the values to this, click the Default Values button.

5. **Click OK to close the dialog.**
   The “Print” item should now be available on the File menu. If it is greyed out, you have not made the correct printer settings in the Print & Page Setup dialog - repeat step 6 to 8 above.

6. **Select Print from the File menu or press [Command]-[P].**
   A dialog box appears. The options in the dialog depend on the type of printer you use (explained in your Windows documentation). Normally you should be able to specify a number of copies to be printed, print all pages or just a specified range, etc.

7. **Click OK.**
   A dialog will inform you of the progress of the printout. You can cancel printing at any time by clicking the Cancel button.

● Note that printing is only available from Score Edit!

15

Logical Edit

Why Should I Use Logical Edit?

Most of the time you will probably perform your MIDI editing graphically, from one of the main graphic editors. But there are times when you want more of a "search and replace" function on MIDI data, and that's where Logical Edit comes in. It allows you to find certain MIDI Events, based on criteria that you set up.

Once those Events are found, you might want to delete them, change them in one way or another, or to move them to another Track for example.

To master Logical Edit you need a fair amount of knowledge about how MIDI messages are built up.

Opening Logical Edit

1. **If needed, select Parts or Events you want to operate on.**
   See below for details.

2. **Select Logical from the Edit menu or press [Control]-[L].**

Which part of the Arrangement will be affected?

As always, this depends on the window you "come from" and the selection:

Window/Selection	Logical Edit operates on:
Arrange Window – No Parts Selected	All Parts on the active Track.
Arrange Window – One or more Parts selected	The selected Parts.
Any MIDI editor	The Events that the "To" menu is set for.

What is currently edited is displayed in the title bar of the Logical Edit window.

- Before you enter Logical Edit from an editor, check that the "To" menu is set as desired.

About using Logical Edit with different Track Classes

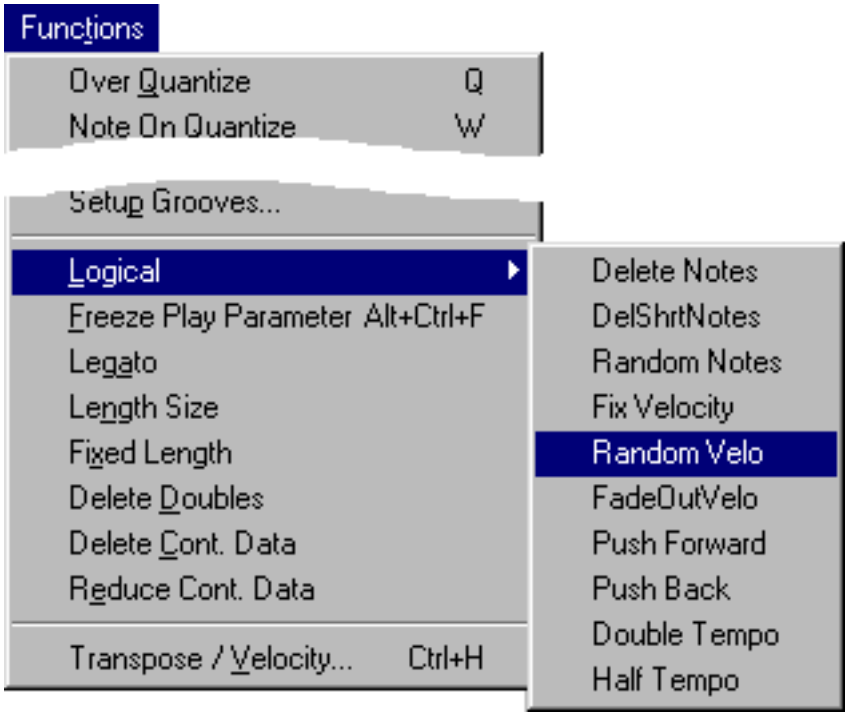
The natural choice is of course to use Logical Edit on MIDI Tracks. But Logical Edit can also be used on Drum Tracks to edit MIDI data and on Mix Tracks to edit Mix data.

Working with Presets

In the lower left corner is the Preset section of Logical Edit. A Preset includes all the settings in Logical Edit. For example, one Preset might find all your Modulation wheel Events and convert them into Breath Controller Events. Another Preset might find all very short notes and delete them.

Logical Presets in the Song appear both on the Main Functions menu (see below), and in the Logical editor (see next page).

When you install the program the first time, ten Presets will be included. These are described in the online Help texts.

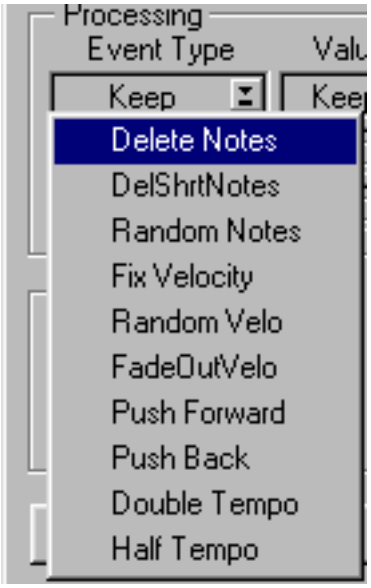


The Logical Presets on the Functions menu.

Applying Ready-made Presets

To apply a Preset from Logical Edit, proceed as follows:

1. **Select a Preset from the pop-up menu.**



The Logical Presets in the Logical Edit dialog box.

2. **Click "Do it".**

Presets can also be accessed from the Functions menu directly, without displaying the Logical Edit window. See the online Help.

Making up your own Presets

If you make settings of your own and wish to save them as a Preset, proceed as follows:

1. **Set up all the fields and values as desired.**

2. **Hold down [Alt] and select any Preset that you wish to overwrite.**
This selects that Preset without changing the settings in the window. If the correct Preset is already selected in the list is already selected, this step is of course unnecessary.

3. **Click the Store button.**

Changing the Name of a Preset

If you want to change the name for a Preset, double click on the Preset name (the pop-up), enter a new name and hit [Return].

How the Presets are Stored

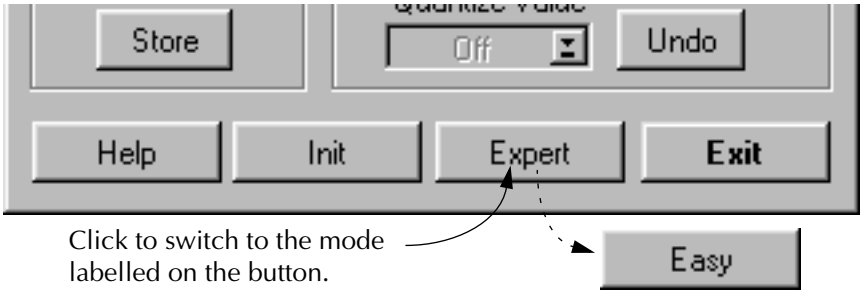
You always have ten Presets, and they are stored in the Song. In other words, if you quit the program without saving, you lose your Logical Presets!

Undo

This undoes the last Function you “applied”.

Selecting Easy or Expert Mode

Logical Edit can be switched between two modes, Easy and Expert. The Expert mode has more possibilities than Easy (see page 179), but is also harder to grasp. Most of the “normal” logical editing like deleting certain types of Events etc, can be performed in Easy mode.



Initializing the Settings

The “Init” button returns all settings to “normal” default values.

How Logical Edit Operates

Filters

The principle for Logical Edit is this: First you set up *Filters*. These are used to decide which MIDI messages will be affected and which will not. An example of a specified Filter could be “all notes that have a pitch of F#3 and a velocity value that is larger than 37". Filters can be set up for all aspects of almost all types of MIDI messages.

This is similar to using “Find” or “Search” in a word Processor, where you specify which text to find, by typing it, in a dialog box.

After setting up Filters, the simplest thing you can do is to perform a *function* like Quantizing or Deleting on the Events that are “found” by the Filters, see below.

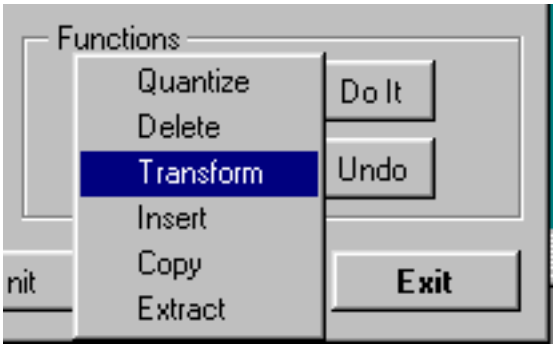
Processing

A more advanced option is to apply some Processing. An example of this would be to “add 7 to all the notes' note number”, which would be the same as transposing them all a perfect fifth.

Processing can be thought of as “replace” in a word processor, where the found text is replaced by some other text.

Functions, Quantize and Do It

In the bottom section of the dialog is a pop-up menu where you select what type of functions to actually perform.



The Functions pop-up.

Most of the functions, like Quantize and Delete, only need the Filters to perform their trick. But Transform and Insert also use the Processing settings.

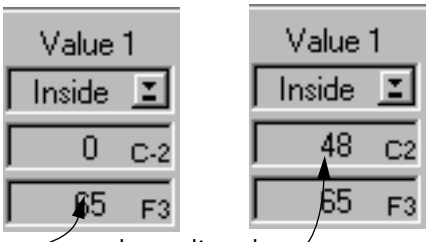
The Quantize setting is for deciding what note value to Quantize to, in Quantizing operations.

The “Do it” button, finally, is used to actually perform the Function.

About Setting Values

In some cases you will define a a range of values by setting two values (for example to define “all pitches between C2 and F3”).

Initially both values are set to 0. To set the values, start raising the “high” value (in the lower field), and then set the “low” value. Not all operations use both values, and some use none of them.

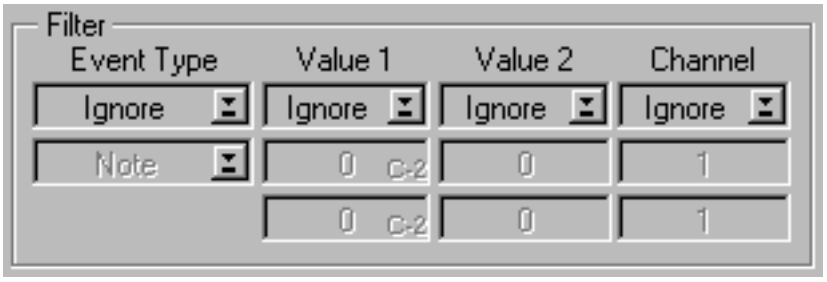


Start by changing the “High” value...

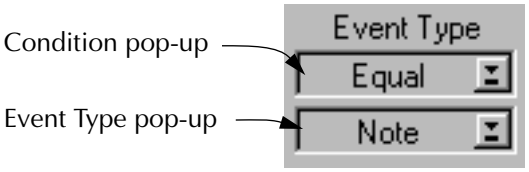
...then adjust the “Low” value.

Setting up Filters

In Easy mode, there are four columns in the Filter area of the dialog box.



Event Type



The first column is called Event Type. This is for setting what type of Event the Filters should operate on.

- The upper field is used to set up a condition for the Event type selected in the pop-up above, as described in table on the next page.
- The lower field lists all types of MIDI Events.

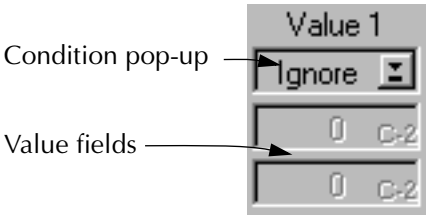
● This can not be adjusted if the upper field is set to “Ignore”, see table below.

Condition	Explanation
Ignore	This means that all Event types will be affected by the operation. The Event type pop-up setting is then of no relevance.
Equal	Only Events of the type indicated on the Event type pop-up will be affected.
Unequal	Only Events that are *not* of the selected type will be affected.

About the Following three columns (Easy Mode)

For each of the next three columns in the Filter section there is one condition pop-up and two value fields. Here is an explanation of each column:

Value 1



The second column in the Filter section is used for the same part of the MIDI messages as the “Val1” column in the List editor displays.

Condition

This pop-up is used to set how the values you set in the field(s) below should be used to pick Events for processing:

Condition	Explanation
Ignore	This means that all Events are affected regardless of the set values. Therefore, both the values below are dimmed.
Equal	Events that have a value equal to the set value are affected. This means that only one value is used, the lower field is therefore dimmed.
Unequal	Events that have a value that is not equal to the set value are affected. This also means that only one value is used, and the lower field is dimmed.
Higher	Events that have a value that is higher (*not* “equal to or higher”) than the set value are affected. Only uses top field.
Lower	Events that have a value that is lower (*not* “equal to or lower”) than the set value are affected. Only uses top field.
Inside	Events that have a value that falls inside the range formed by the two values are affected. You therefore need to set both fields.
Outside	Events that have a value that falls outside the range formed by the two values are affected. Uses both fields.

Value Fields

You use these to specify value(s) for the condition. The exact meaning of the values is different for each Event type:

Event Type	Meaning of Value 1
Notes	The Note Number/Pitch. The pitch is shown to the right of the number (like F#3, C2 and so on).
Poly Pressure	The key that was pressed, also easily found by looking at the letters showing the pitch.
Control Change	The type of Controller, displayed as a number.
Program Change	The Program Change number (Please note that many MIDI units do not display the real Program Change number on the front panel.)
Aftertouch	Simply the amount of pressure.
Pitch Bend	The “fine tune” of the bend. Rarely used.

Value 2

This corresponds to Val2 in the List editor.

Condition

This exactly the same as for Value 1, see above.

Value Fields

Here is a list of the meaning of the values for each type of Event:

Event Type	Meaning of Value 1
Notes	The velocity of the note.
Poly Pressure	The amount of pressure for the note.
Control Change	The amount of Control Change.
Program Change	Program Change messages don't have a Value 2.
Aftertouch	Aftertouch messages don't have a Value 2.
Pitch Bend	The coarse amount of bend.

Channel

This is the MIDI Channel *stored* with the Event, not the one *set* for the Part. See page 17 for a detailed explanation.

Condition

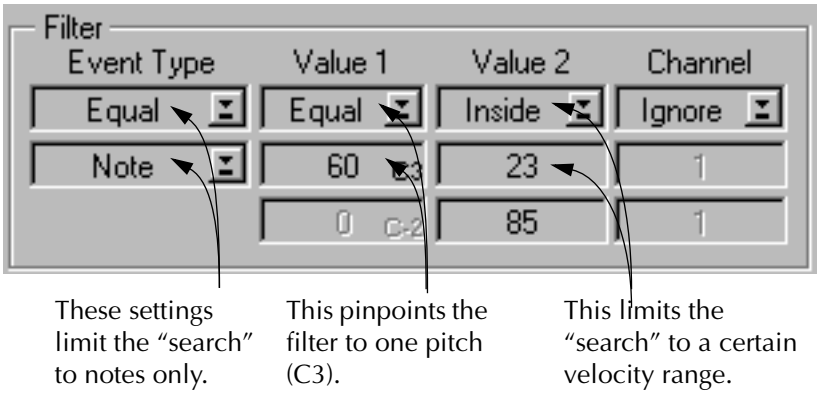
This is exactly the same as for Value 1, see above.

Value Fields

This is simply the MIDI Channel number (1 to 16).

Example

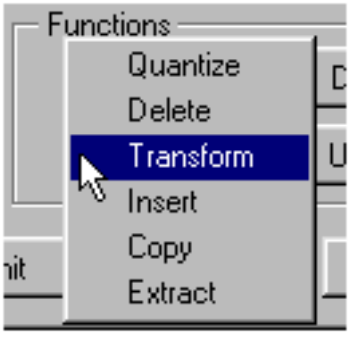
The filter below allows you to find notes with the pitch C3 and a velocity range between 23 and 85.



Applying a Filter

Just setting up the filters is enough for some very complex Logical Editing. Proceed as follows:

1. **Open Logical Edit from the Arrange window or from the editors, depending on what you want to process.**
   See page 164 in this chapter for details.
2. **Set up the Filters to “find” the desired Events.**
3. **Select one of the Functions from the pop-up menu.**



The Function pop-up. See the table below for details.

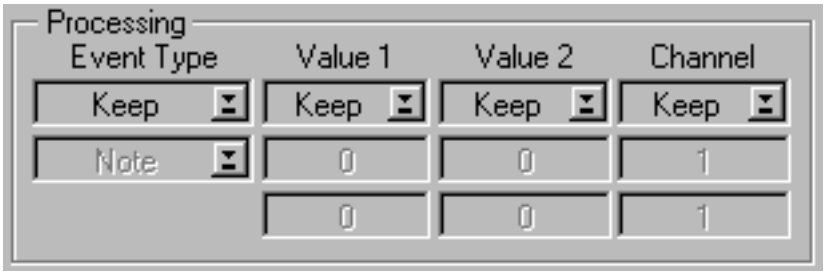
4. **If you have selected “Quantize”, set the Quantize value as desired.**
5. **Click “Do it”.**
   The function is performed.

- You can make as many edits as you wish without leaving Logical Edit.
- Note that Events that do *not* pass through the filters remain intact, they are not affected in any way by the operation.

Functions

Function	Description
Quantize	The Events that pass through the filters are Over-Quantized to the Quantize value set with the Quantize Pop-up menu. Quantizing non-note data, allows you to “thin out” for example Controllers or Pitch Bend.
Select	This Function is only active if you selected Logical Edit from one of the other Edit windows: Key, Drum, List or Score. It simply selects the Events that pass through the filters for future processing directly in the editor, after you have exited Logical Edit.
Delete	The notes that pass through the filters simply get deleted.
Extract	This Function is only active if you selected Logical Edit from the Arrange window. It Cuts the Events that pass through the filters out of the Part, and then creates new Part(s) with the extracted Events only. These new Part(s) are put on a new Track and have the same start and end points as the original(s).
Copy	This Function is only active if you selected Logical Edit from the Arrange window. It works just as Extract, only it doesn't Cut the Events from the Part(s), it Copies them.

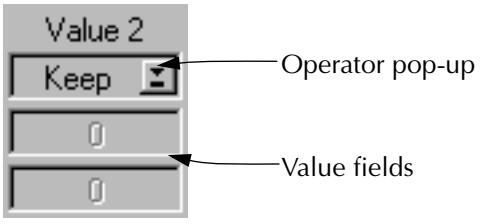
Setting Up for Processing



If you decide to Process Events (Transform existing or Insert new Events) you must decide how the Events that pass through the Filters should be processed. This is done using an *Operator* and one or two *Values* for each column.

The Operators are found on pop-up menus in the Processing section of the dialog box.

The Values are displayed below each operator.



Event Type

For the Event type column you have two Operators to choose from:

Menu option	Description
Keep	The Events will stay the same type as they are.
Fix	The Events will be transformed into some other Event type, as set on the lower pop-up. The options are all the different MIDI types of Events.

- If you Edit Mix Tracks, you can not change the Event type.

Value 1

For the Value 1 Column you have a number of different Operators:

Operator	Description
Keep	The value is not affected in any way. You don't set any number in the value fields.
Plus	A number is added to the existing. You use the upper value field to set how much should be added.
Minus	A number is subtracted from the existing. You use the upper value field to set how much should be subtracted.
Multiply	The existing value is multiplied by a number. You use the upper value field to set how much it should be multiplied with. The Operator contains an integer and two decimals, but the result is always rounded to an integer.
Divide	The existing value is divided by a number. You use the upper value field to set how much it should be divided by. Uses integers and decimals, just as Multiply.
Fix	The existing values are simply replaced by a fixed value that you set in the upper value field.
Value 2	When you select this, the existing Value 2 value in each Event is copied to its Value 1. If you for example use this on notes, this would mean copying its velocity value to the note number. If you used it on Controllers it means replacing the Controller number with the Controller value.
Dyn	This function is used to create a “ramp” from one value to an other, like for example a crescendo or a diminuendo. This function involves four things, the Start and End Value and the Start and End Point. If you open Logical Edit from the Arrange window, the Start and End *points* will be the start and end of the Part(s). If you open Logical Edit it from one of the editors, Start and End points will be one of three things: The start and end of the Part, the Left and Right Locator values, or the Loop boundaries, all depending on how the To menu was set in the editor. The two value fields are used to set the initial value – at the beginning of the range, and the final value – at the end.
Random	This replaces the values with random numbers within a range specified by the two values.

Value 2

Value 2’s Operators are practically identical to Value 1. There’s only one difference:

Value 1	This is the reverse of its “Value 1“column counter part, that is, the existing Value 1 value in each Event is copied to its Value 2. If you for example use this on notes, this would mean copying its the note number (pitch) to velocity.

Channel

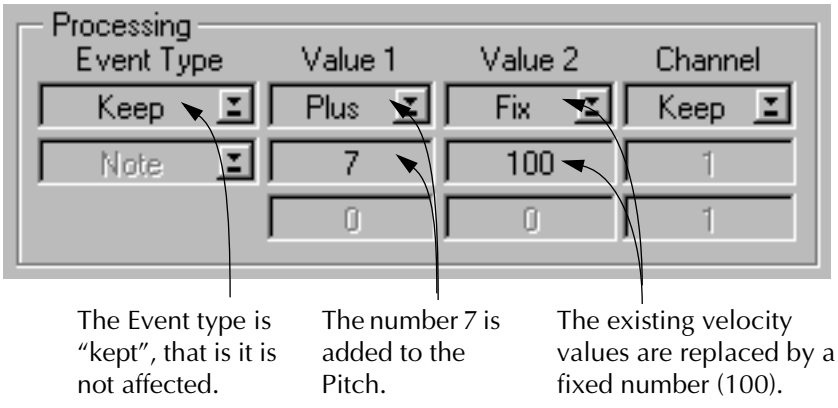
You can also process the MIDI Channel of the Event. The Channel Operator menu only has five options, identical to the same items on the Value 1 and Value 2 menus:

Operator	Description
Keep	The Channel is not affected in any way.
Plus	A number is added to the existing Channel.
Minus	A number is subtracted from the existing Channel number.
Fix	The existing Channel number is simple replaced by the number you specify.
Random	This replaces whatever Channels the Event originally was on,with a random number. The two values fields are used to set the lower/upper limit of the random numbers.

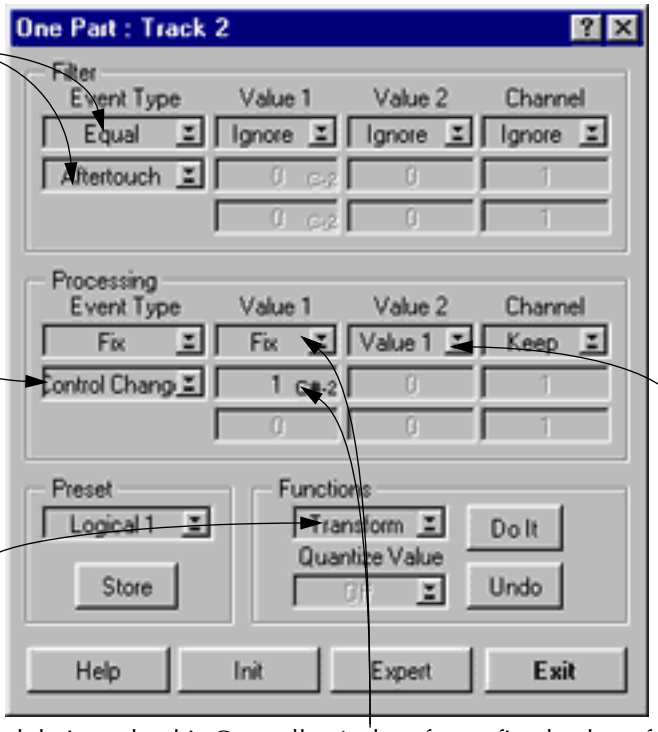
- For this to have any effect when you play back the Part, the Track/Part must be set to MIDI Channel “Any”.

Examples

The Example below, applied to notes, would transpose them a fifth and set their velocity to a fixed level of 100.



The next example converts Aftertouch into Modulation wheel Events.



Only Aftertouch Events will be affected.

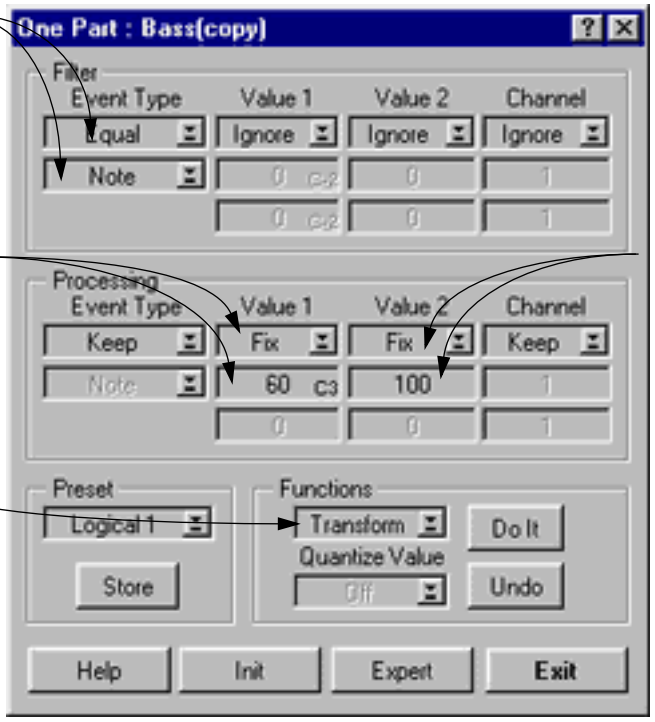
The Event type is changed to Control Change.

This setting "moves" the Aftertouch amount (stored in Val 1) to the Controller amount (stored in Val 2).

Transform is chosen since Events are to be converted.

Modulation wheel is Controller 1, therefore a fixed value of 1 is entered here.

The last example allows you to make up a bass drum part that exactly follows for example a bass part on the selected Track. Work on a copy of the bass Track. The value in the Value 1 Processing field is the key you have the bass drum on.



Only notes will be affected.

Regardless of their original pitch, the new Events will have a fixed pitch of C3.

Regardless of their original velocity, the new Events will have a fixed velocity of 100.

Transform is chosen since Events are to be converted.

For further examples, please examine the Presets in the Def.All Song that comes with the program. Their functionality is described in online Help.

Processing Functions

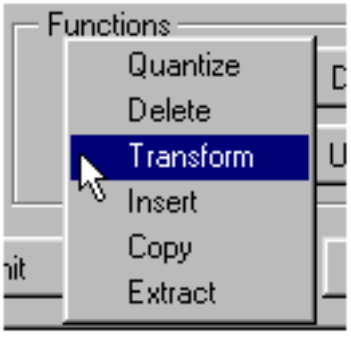
To use the Processing functions, proceed as follows:

1. **Open Logical Edit from the Arrange window or from the editors, depending on what you want to process.**
   See page 164 for details.

2. **Set up the Filters to “find” the Events that you want processed.**

3. **Set up the Processing.**

4. **Select Transform or Insert from the pop-up menu.**



The Function pop-up. See the table below for details.

5. **Click “Do it”.**
   The processing is performed.

- You can make as many edits as you wish without leaving Logical Edit.
- Note that Events that do *not* pass through the filters remain intact, they are not affected in any way by the operation.

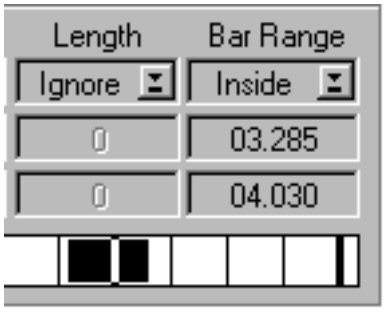
Functions

Function	Description
Transform	The notes that pass through the filters have their values Transformed (i.e. changed) according to the values set in Processing. This doesn't add any new Events, it just changes the existing ones.
Insert	The Events that pass through the filters get copied, transformed (see above) and then inserted among the existing Events. This adds new Events to the Part(s).

Expert Mode

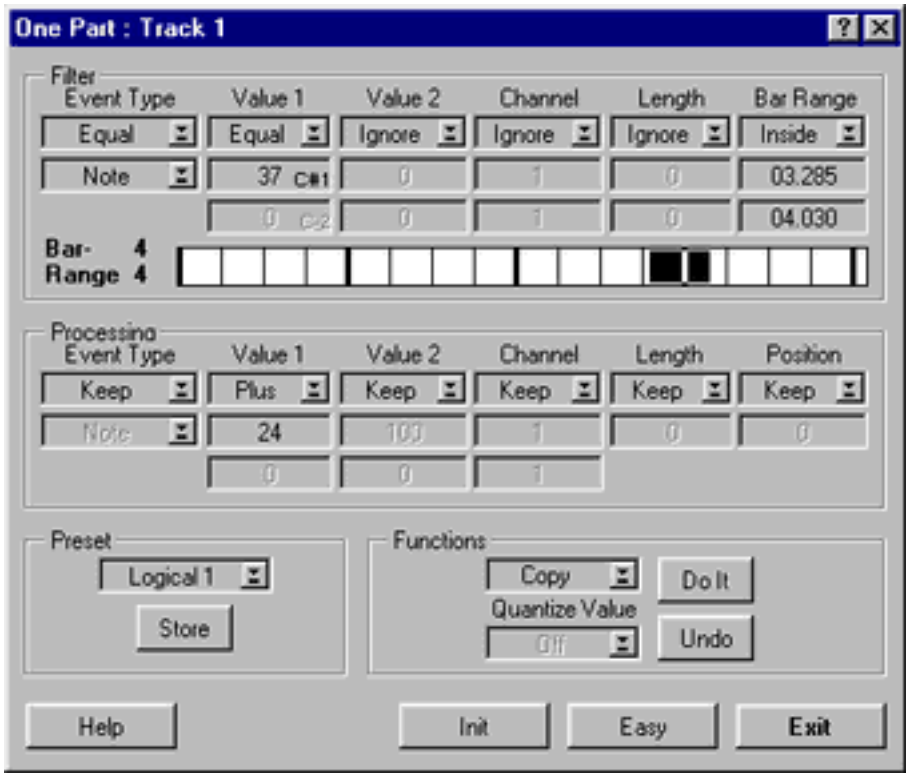
When you switch Logical Edit to Expert Mode (by clicking the “Expert” button) you get two more columns in the Filter and Processing sections, plus a graphic Bar Range setting in the Filter section. The pop-ups in the Processing section are also extended with additional functions.

Additional Filter Columns



Column	Description
Length	This allows you to select notes depending on their length. This value is displayed in ticks.
Bar Range	This allows you to only include Events at a certain position *within each Bar* in the editing. You can type the beat and tick value. Or, you can drag a range in the Bar Range graphic at the lower part of the whole dialog box. This is done in the same way as when you drag to set the Loop range in Key, Drum or List Edit.

Bar Range Example



Check out the settings above. If you have a snare drum playing on the key C#1, this setting will allow you to pin-point all snare drum beats that lie around the fourth quarter in each bar and transpose them up two octaves to C#3. This is useful if you want to double up the second snare drum in each bar in a basic rock beat, with some other Sound. Since this example uses Copy, it assumes that you entered Logical Edit from an Arrange window. Click on “Do it” to make up a Part with the copied beats only. Then use transposition and MIDI Channel settings to assign the new Track to another Sound.

Additional Processing Columns

The Processing section also gets two new *columns* in Expert mode.

Column	Description
Length	By using processing on this value, you can manipulate notes' lengths. The Operations for it are Keep, Plus, Minus, Multiply, Divide, Fix.
Position	Processing position will affect the Events' position values so that you are able to move Events and create Events at new positions. The Operations for it are Keep, Plus, Minus, Multiply and Divide. The integer (the number to the left of the decimal point) represents ticks. If you for example add to the Position value and use Insert, this will result in some sort of echo effect. If you multiply or divide the Positions, this will be the same as changing the tempo of the music in the Part. There are examples of this in the Logical Presets in the Def.All Song that comes with the program.

Additional Operators

In Expert Mode, the Value 1 and Value 2 pop-ups menus in the Processing section contain additional Operators:

Processing	Description
Invert	This inverts the values, so that the bigger it originally was the lower it comes out. If you for instance select Controller values in Key or Drum Edit and Invert them, you will find that it looks as if the graph has been turned upside down. An upwards scale becomes a downwards scale etc. This Operation needs no values.
ScaleMap	Appears for Value 1 only. This works like Scale Correction in the Transpose/Velocity dialog box. The upper value field is the Scale type, which is selected from a pop-up, and the second value is the Key Signature.
Flip	Appears for Value 1 only. This flips the Events around a set axis. For notes this will invert the scale, with any key as a “center point”. For velocity it will make high velocities low and low velocities high, with any value as a flip axis. It will have similar effect on Controller values etc.

16

Filtering and Mapping MIDI Data

Introduction

Cubase VST has a number of real time features for filtering out MIDI data and for converting one type of MIDI data into another. These are called “real time” functions because they work “in the background” while the program is recording or playing back. It is these features that are described in this chapter.

In addition, Cubase VST has a number of filtering and mapping (transformation) editing features, in List Edit, Logical Edit and on the Functions menu. These permanently change the recorded data. They are described in their respective chapters.

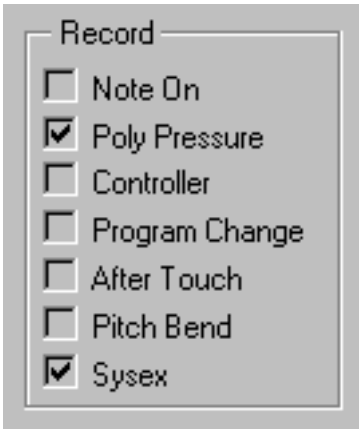
Recording Filters

By Event Type

You might want to prevent some type of MIDI data from being recorded. If for example you have a master keyboard transmitting Poly Pressure, but no sound module set to react to it, recording the Poly Pressure data wastes precious memory space and might even clog up the MIDI data stream.

1. **Open the MIDI Filter dialog from the Options menu.**

2. **In the “Record” section, activate the check boxes for the MIDI data types you don’t want to record.**



In this example Poly Pressure and System Exclusive data will not be recorded.

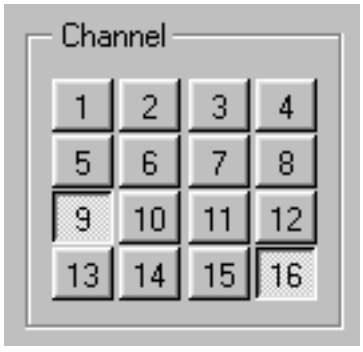
3. **Close the dialog box.**

By MIDI Channel

You might also want to filter out all Events that are coming in on a certain MIDI Channel. If you for example are transmitting data from another sequencer, this will allow you to record only a selection of the MIDI Channels it is transmitting.

1. **Open the MIDI Filter dialog from the Options menu.**

2. **In the "Channel" section, activate buttons for the MIDI Channels you don't want to record.**



In this example, data coming in on MIDI Channels 9 and 16 will not get recorded.

3. **Close the dialog box.**

Controllers

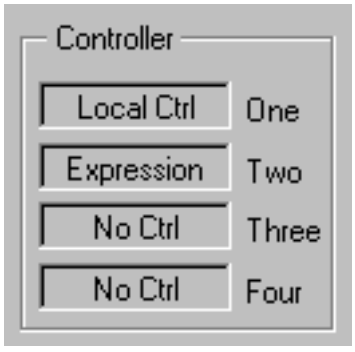
As explained above, you can filter out all Controller data. But Cubase VST offers more detailed filtering than just filtering a whole class of Events! If you need to you can filter out up to four user-specified Controllers.

1. **Open the MIDI Filter dialog from the Options menu.**

2. **Make sure Controller messages are not filtered out altogether (see above).**

3. **Locate the Controller Filters.**
   As you can see, there are four of them.

4. **To filter out one certain Control Change message set one of the four fields to that Controller number or name.**
   To turn off one of the four Filters, set it to "NoCtrl" (the lowest value).



In this example, Expression pedal and Local Control On/Off messages will be filtered out

5. **Close the dialog box.**

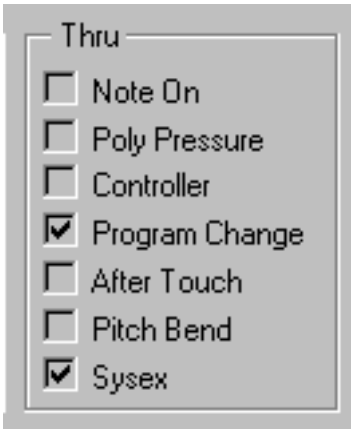
Thru Filters

There might be situations where you want to have MIDI Thru active (see the Getting Started book), but still don't want one certain *type* of MIDI message to be sent "Thru" Cubase VST.

For example, System Exclusive that you send out from a MIDI Instrument to record into Cubase VST, should most probably not be immediately sent back to the instrument, since this might lead to serious confusion.

1. **Open the MIDI Filter dialog from the Options menu.**

2. **In the "Thru" section, activate the check boxes for the MIDI data types you don't want to record.**



In this example System Exclusive and Program Change will not be Thru-put

3. **Close the dialog box.**

Mapping Controller Messages

There might be situations where you want one Control Change message to "masquerade" for another. For example, you might have a unit that reacts to Breath Controller messages, but nothing to generate them with. You might then set up Cubase VST to convert for example Modulation Wheel Events to Breath Controllers, before recording them. Proceed as follows:

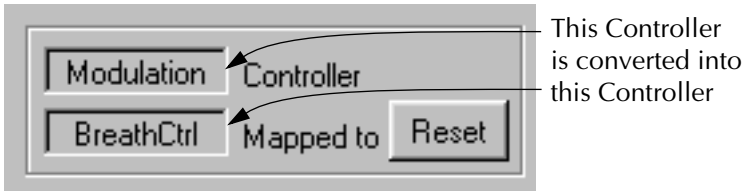
1. **Open the MIDI Setup dialog from the Options menu.**

2. **Locate the Controller Map section.**

3. **If you want to make sure no mapping takes place, click the Reset button.**
   This turns off mapping for all Controllers.

4. **Scroll the upper field to select the Controller you want to map.**
   In our example, this would be Modulation Wheel.

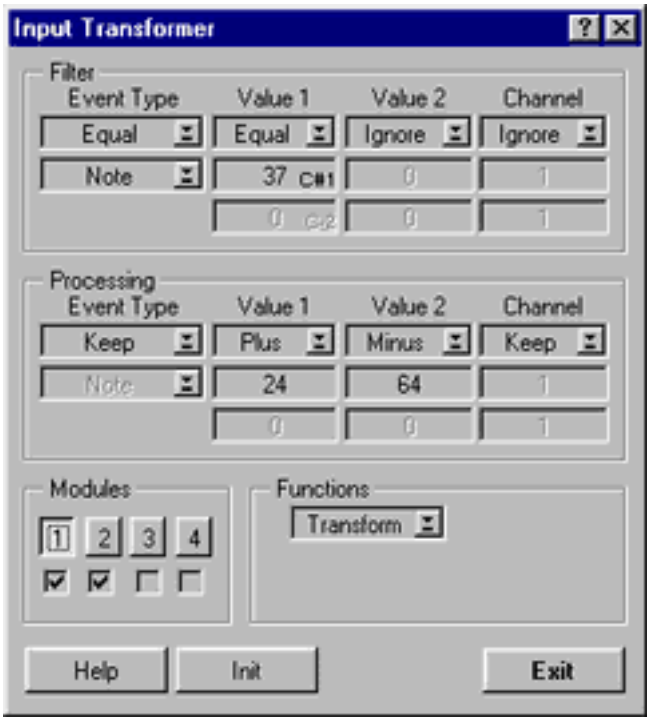
5. **Use the lower field to set which type of Controller to map *to*.**
   In our example this would be Breath Controller.



6. **Continue setting up mapping for as many Controller as you wish, in the same way.**
   Any Controller can be mapped into any other, and all at the same time if you wish.

7. **Close the dialog box.**

The Input Transformer



This function (reached from the Options menu) is used to selectively filter out and change data that is coming in to Cubase VST, before it is recorded. To use the Input Transformer you should be reasonably acquainted with Logical Edit, since the two are very similar.

Here are some of the things the Input Transformer allows you to do:

- Use four different filters/transforms at the same time.
- Make up split keyboard combinations for recording left and right hands separately.
- Turn a Controller like a foot pedal into MIDI notes (for playing bass drum the right way)
- Filter out one specific type of MIDI data on one MIDI channel only.
- Turn Aftertouch into any Controller (and vice versa)
- Inverse velocity or pitch.
- etc...

And again: four of these things can be done at the same time.

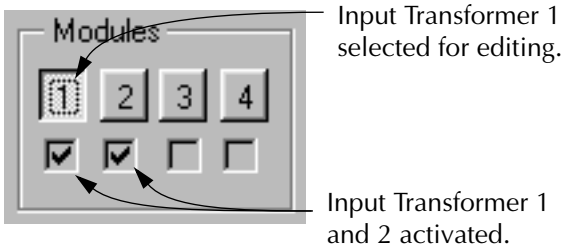
Filter and Processing

The Filter and Processing sections work exactly as in Logical Edit in Easy mode (see page 167). The big difference is that the Input transformer acts in real time on the incoming MIDI signals.

Selecting and Activating

The buttons labelled 1-4 at the bottom of the window are used to decide which of the four transformers should be displayed.

The check boxes just below these are for turning each of these four transformers on and off.



Initializing

If you want to reset any of the transformers to its initial setting (everything turned off), select it and click the Init button.

Functions

When you have set up the Filtering and Processing sections, you have to select one of two functions from the pop-up menu in the lower half of the dialog box, Filter (remove, delete) or Transform (change using Processing settings). If you select the Filter option, only the Filter settings are of any interest. If you select Transform, both the Filter and Processing settings apply, just as in Logical Edit.

Events are put through module 1 first, then 2 etc. But, if a module "selects" Events for filtering or processing, they will not reach the other modules at all.

- It is very well possible to create transformations that lead to "hanging" notes! (Note Ons without Note Offs).

About the Default settings

The following four Input Transformations come with the program. They are stored in the DEF.ALL Song. They are all turned off initially, so you will have to open Input Transform and turn on the ones you plan to use.

"Preset"	Description:
1. Split Keyboard	This Transformation takes all notes from C3 and up, and adds 1 to their MIDI Channel. For this to have any effect you must set the Track to MIDI Channel "Any". If you do this and for example set a regular MIDI keyboard to send on MIDI Channel 3 you will get an output where all notes below C3 come out on MIDI Channel 3 and all notes above come out on MIDI Channel 4. Use this to play one sound with the left hand and another with the right hand.

"Preset"	Description:
2. Fix Velocity	This Transformation makes all notes have velocity 100, regardless of how you play. It is easy to change the output velocity value in the dialog box, if you need to.
3. Modulation Transformed into Aftertouch	This Transformation takes incoming Modulation wheel Events and turns them into Aftertouch. Many rack synthesizers can receive Aftertouch, but not all keyboards send it. This allows you to use your "mod wheel" to send Aftertouch to a synth and there use it to control volume, filter or anything else the synth module is capable of doing via Aftertouch.
4. Invert keyboard	This Transformation turns your keyboard "upside down", "Joe Zawinul Arp 2600" style. Enjoy!

17

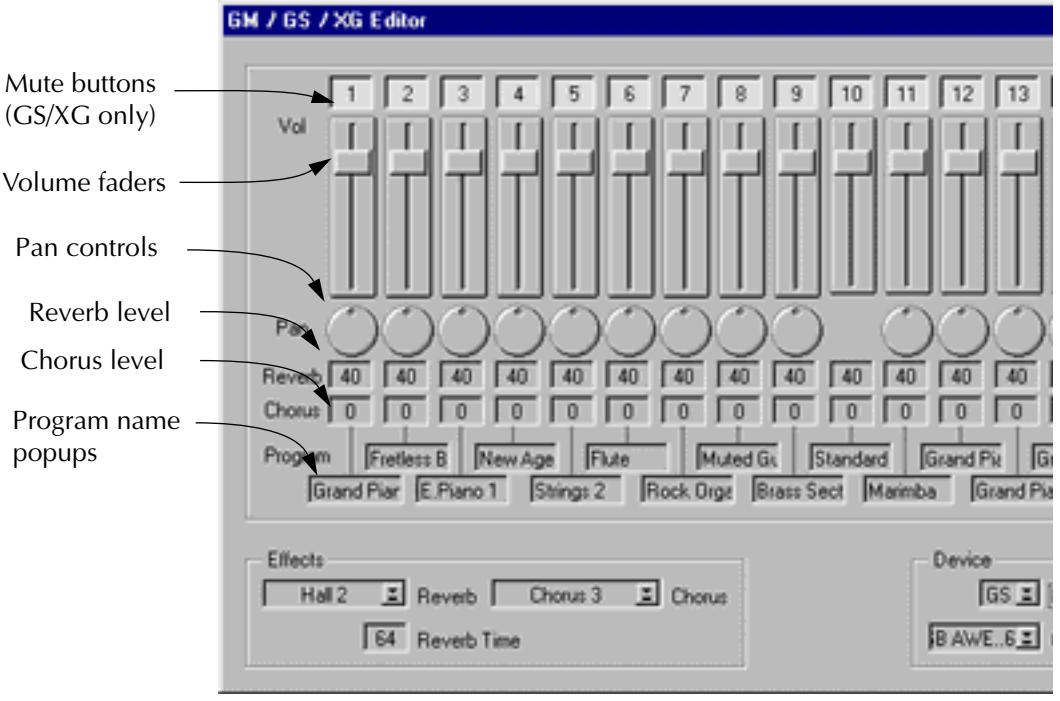
GM/GS/XG Edit

About this chapter

The GM/GS/XG Editor is thoroughly described in the Getting Started book. Therefore, this chapter contains only brief reference descriptions of the editor controls.

The Controls

The Mixer section

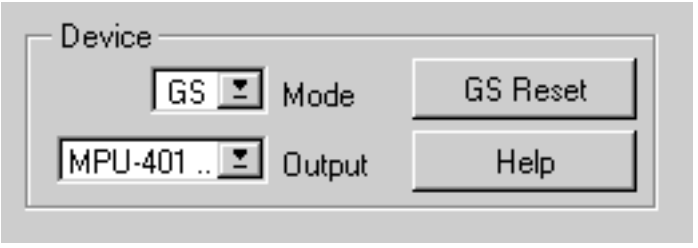


This is the main section of the window, where you perform the actual mixing. The following table lists the controls available for each channel:

Control:	Description:
Volume fader	Drag the fader to change the volume of the corresponding MIDI channel.
Pan	Defines the panning (position in the stereo image) for the corresponding MIDI channel. The Drum channel (channel 10) has no panning control.
Reverb level	Although this is not a part of the GM specifications, many GM instruments (and all GS/XG instruments) have a built-in reverb that can be controlled via the standard MIDI controller number for reverb (#91). If this is so, use this value field to set the amount of reverb for the channel.
Chorus level	Like the Channel Reverb controls, this parameter is not a part of the GM specification. However, some GM instruments (and all GS/XG units) have a built-in chorus (sometimes flanger or delay) that can be controlled via the standard MIDI controller number for chorus depth (#93). If this is so, use this value field to set the amount of chorus for the channel.

Control:	Description:
Program name	This item opens a hierarchical pop-up menu with the 128 GM sounds divided into instrument type groups on sub-menus. To select a sound, pull down the pop-up, move the pointer to one of the instrument groups and select the sound from the sub-menu that appears.
Mute switch (GS/XG only)	In GS/XG Mode (see below), the channel number fields above the faders can be used as Channel Mute buttons. You can mute/unmute each channel individually by clicking on the respective button.

The Device section



Control:	Description:
Mode	You can use the editor in GM *or* Roland GS *or* Yamaha XG mode. To switch between modes, click on the Mode pop-up and select the desired mode.
Output	Use this pop-up menu to select the Output to which your GM/GS/XG instrument is connected (otherwise the editor wouldn't know where to send the changes you make).
On/Off/Reset button	This button has different names and functionalities, depending on which Mode is selected: In GM mode, this button is used to switch your instrument in and out of General MIDI mode. Click on the button to send the command that is currently shown to your instrument. In GS/XG mode, this button is labelled "GS/XG Reset". Clicking it resets all controls in the window, as well as any connected GS/XG instrument, to their default values.

The Effects section (GS/XG only)

The third section is not shown at all in GM mode. It contains the following global settings for the reverb and chorus effects that are included in all GS/XG instruments:

Control:	Description:
Reverb pop-up	Lets you select one of eight reverb types. The available reverb types are different in GS and XG instruments. In XG mode, selecting "No Effect" allows you to easily turn off the reverb completely.
Reverb time	Lets you change the overall reverb time.
Chorus pop-up	Lets you select one of eight chorus- and related effect types. The available effect types are different in GS and XG instruments. In XG mode, selecting "No Effect" allows you to easily turn off the effect completely.

When are the settings in the GM/GS/XG Editor applied?

Unlike settings in the Inspector, which are sent out at the beginning of each Part, the settings in the GM/GS/XG Editor are sent as MIDI messages to your instruments on two occasions:

- **When a Song is opened.**
  If GM, GS or XG is activated in a Song, all the settings in the Editor are sent out when you open the Song.

- **When you make the actual settings.**
  This makes it possible to use the GM/GS/XG Editor as a regular "hands-on" mixer.

● Please note that the settings in the GM/GS/XG Editor are in no way connected to the settings in the Inspector. Making volume settings in both Editor and Inspector, for example, may lead to some confusion. You are probably better off using one or the other.

18

The Input/Output Bus System

Introduction

The bus system in Cubase VST allows you to take full advantage of audio cards with multiple inputs and outputs, by providing a complete routing system, very similar to that on a fully-fledged mixing console with a busing system. For this to be useful, you need an audio card with several inputs and/or outputs. The audio card also needs to be supported by VST, i.e. it must either be compatible with the ASIO Multimedia or DirectX drivers included with VST, or come with an ASIO Driver specifically written for the card.

What you can do with the Bus system

Here's what you can achieve with the busing system (all of this will be described in detail in this chapter):

- **Map physical audio inputs on your card to inputs in VST, and name each inputs.**
  This is convenient when you integrate your VST system with other recording equipment.

- **Record from any input on any audio channel.**
  This is done by selecting a VST Input for a channel, prior to recording.

- **Route output audio channels or Groups to one of the stereo Buses, in any combination.**
  The number of stereo Buses depends on the number of physical output pairs on your audio card. Any channel in the Monitor window (and any individual Group channel) can be routed to any Bus.

- **Map the Buses to physical Outputs on your audio card, and name the Buses.**
  This allows you to use VST as a true bus mixer, for example when using the program in conjunction with a digital tape deck such as a and ADAT, Tascam DA-88 or similar.

- **Route effect sends to any of the buses, so that they now can be used for external effects as well as the internal VST effects.**
  In fact, theoretically, all sends on all channels can be routed to different destinations, which means VST provides 128 individual effect sends, all switchable between pre- and post operation.

- **Do all of this at the same time, so that you for example use a Send to add an external effect and record the result back on any audio channel.**
  An example of this is described on page 205.

If you do not have an audio card with several ins and outs

Even if you are using Cubase VST with a standard Windows audio card, the new bus system affects you in a couple of areas:

- **Input Assign.**
  You can freely select an input for any audio channel, in the Monitor window or in the Inspector (see page 198). It is also possible to deactivate the audio inputs completely, thereby saving some processor power, for example when you're doing the final mixdown (see page 196).

- **Channel FX Sends.**
  Each effect send for each audio channel can be *independently* assigned to an effect or to one of the outputs (Master L/R). See page 202.

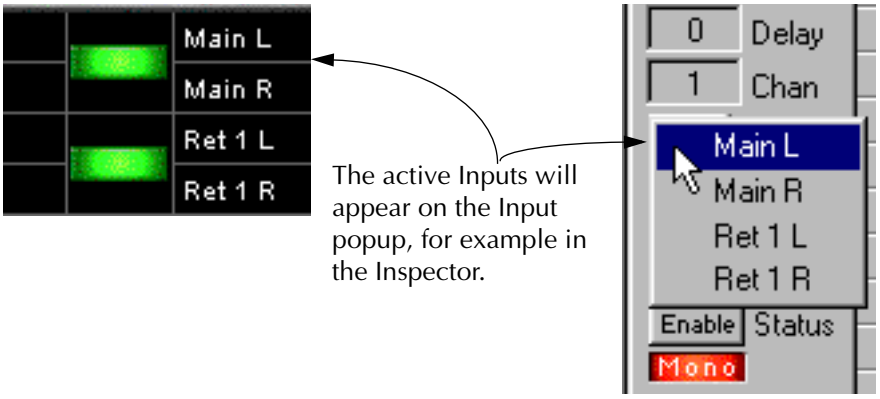
Activating Inputs

To be able to record and monitor any audio sources you need to activate the Inputs they are connected to:

1. **Pull down the Audio menu and select Inputs.**
   The Input window appears:

The left column contains the available "physical" Input ports. The fields in the right column show the names that will be used for each Input throughout the program. The indicators in the middle column show which Inputs are active (in this figure inputs Main L/R, Ret 1 L/R and S2 1/2 are active).

2. **To rename an Input, click on its name field in the Labels column, and type in a new name.**
   The name can contain up to seven characters, and will be displayed when you select Inputs for the audio channels in the Monitor window and the Inspector.



3. **Activate the Inputs you need, by clicking on their buttons in the middle column.**
   The buttons lights up, indicating that the Inputs are active. Note that all Inputs are activated in stereo pairs.

● Make sure not to activate more Inputs than necessary, to conserve processor power. In situations when you don't need any Inputs at all, such as audio mix-down, you should consider deactivating all Inputs, to make more processor power available for effects, EQs, etc.

---

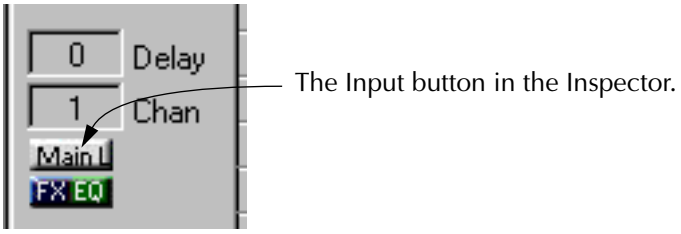
4. **Press [Return] on the computer keyboard to close the Inputs window.**
   The Input settings are saved with the Song. However, if you would select another ASIO Device and then open the Song, the Input settings saved in the Song will be ignored.

Recording from an Input

When you record audio in Cubase VST, you need to decide from which input you want to record. This can be done in the Inspector, in the following way:

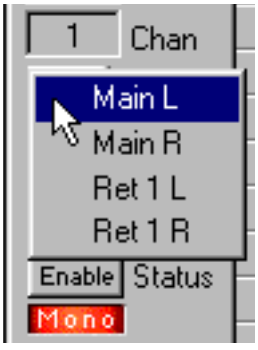
1. **Select an Audio Track to record on.**

2. **Open the Inspector for the Track.**



● This example assumes the Audio Track is set to a single audio channel. If channel "Any" is selected for the Track, you have to select Inputs for the audio channels in the Monitor window instead.

3. **Hold down the [Control] key on the computer keyboard and click on the Input button.**
   A pop-up menu appears, containing all active Inputs.

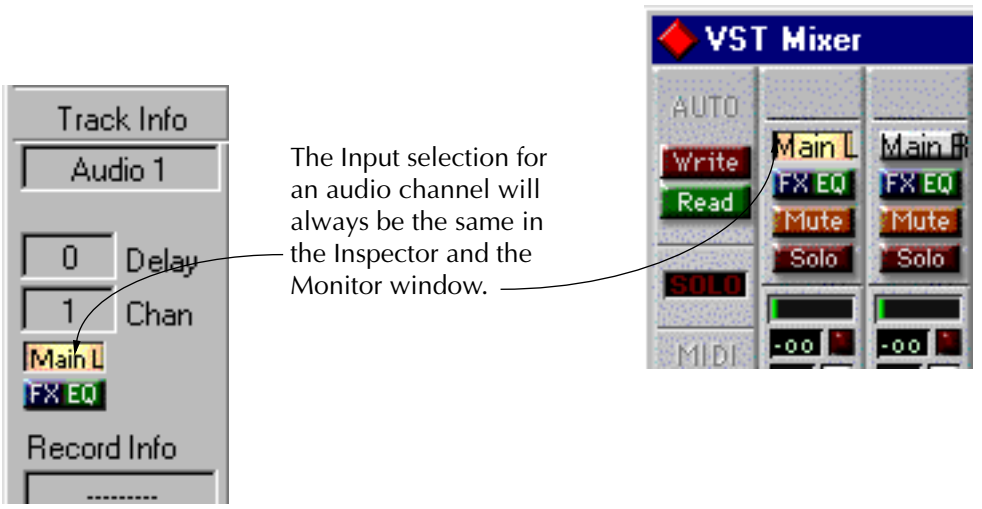


   If no Inputs are activated in the Inputs window, the button will be labelled "NO INP", and no pop-up menu will appear.

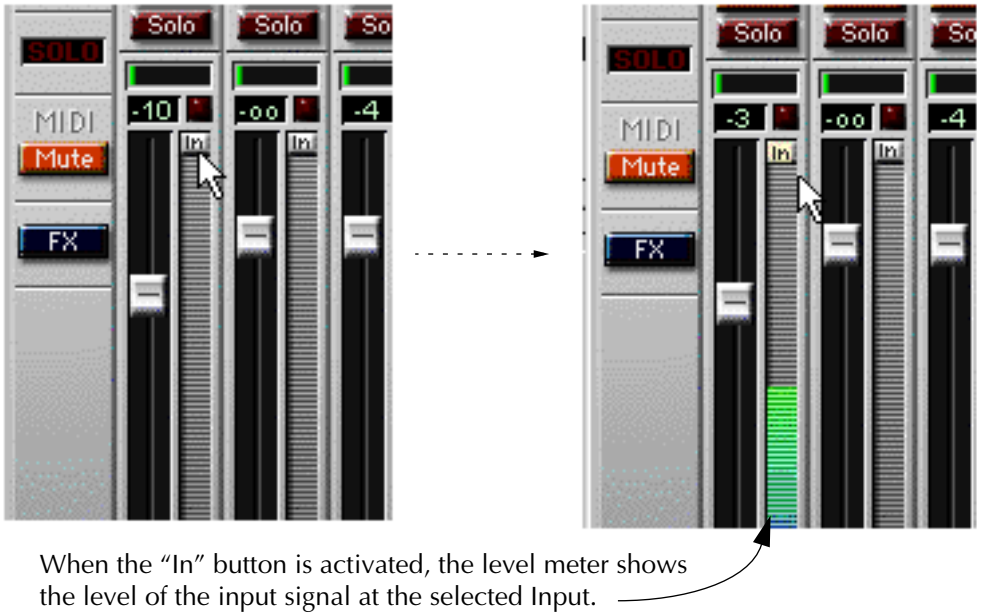
4. **Select an Input from the pop-up.**
   The Input button now displays the name of the selected Input.

5. **Click on the Input button to activate monitoring for the channel.**
   The button lights up and an "M" appears in the Mute column, to indicate that monitoring is activated. Now the sound from the selected Input is routed to the audio channel.

6. **Open the Monitor mixer window.**
   Note that the Input button/popup in the Inspector is duplicated for each audio channel in the Monitor window. Changing the setting or turning monitoring on/off in the Inspector will automatically affect the setting in the Monitor window, and vice versa.



7. **Click the "In" button at the top of the level meter for the selected recording channel.**
   This activates the Input meter function:



8. **Check the Input level and adjust the output level of your audio source (or use the Input Gain control in the ASIO Device Control Panel, if available - see page 364).**
   The mixer faders control the output level only, no matter whether the "In" button is activated or not.

9. **Continue recording as usual.**

Activating and routing Buses

As with Inputs, you need to activate the Buses you want to use, and assign each Bus to an output pair on your audio card. This is done in the Master window:

1. **Pull down the Audio Menu and select Master.**
   Aside from the regular Master panel, the window will contain a number of additional "subgroups", one for each Bus:

- The total number of Buses (including the Master Bus) is equal to the number of stereo output pairs on the audio card. The picture above shows a system with sixteen outputs (eight stereo pairs) and eight Buses, where Master is considered to be the first Bus.

2. **Activate the Buses you need, by clicking on their Active buttons.**
   The indicator in the button lights up to show that the Bus is active.

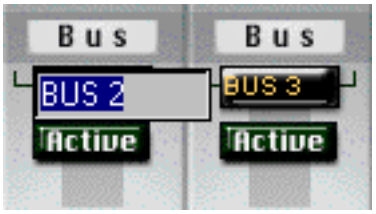
   To conserve processor power, you should avoid activating Buses that you don't need to use. The Master Bus, however, is always activated.

- The Bus settings are saved with the Song. However, if you would select another ASIO Device and then open the Song, the Bus settings saved in the Song will be ignored.

3. **Use the popup menus at the bottom of the window to route each active Bus to an output pair on your audio card.**

- Two Buses cannot be connected to the same output pair.

4. **To rename a Bus, click on its label (above the Active button) and type in a new name.**

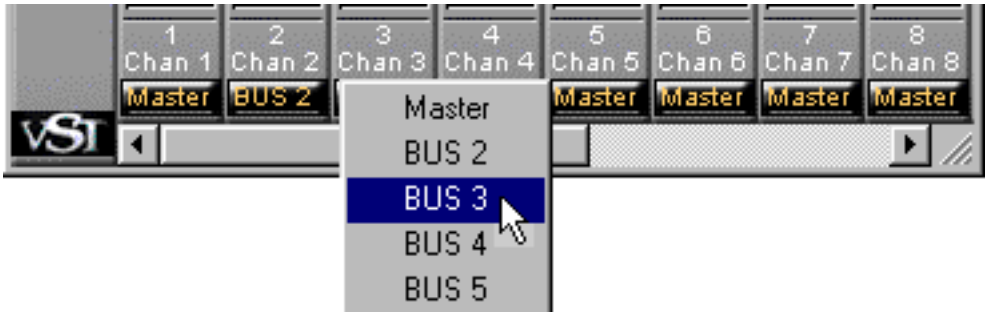


5. **Set the output levels for each active Bus, in the same way as with the MasterBus.**
   Dragging one of the faders for a Bus will automatically move the other fader as well. To move the left or right fader for a Bus independently, hold down [Alt] and drag.

Assigning the Audio Channels to Buses

To route the audio of a channel to one of the active Buses, proceed as follows:

1. **Open the Monitor window.**
   At the bottom of each channel you find a button labelled with the name of the Bus that is selected for the channel.



2. **Click the Bus button to pull down a popup menu, containing all active Buses.**
   The Master Bus will always be available.

3. **Select one of the Buses.**

Sends and Effects

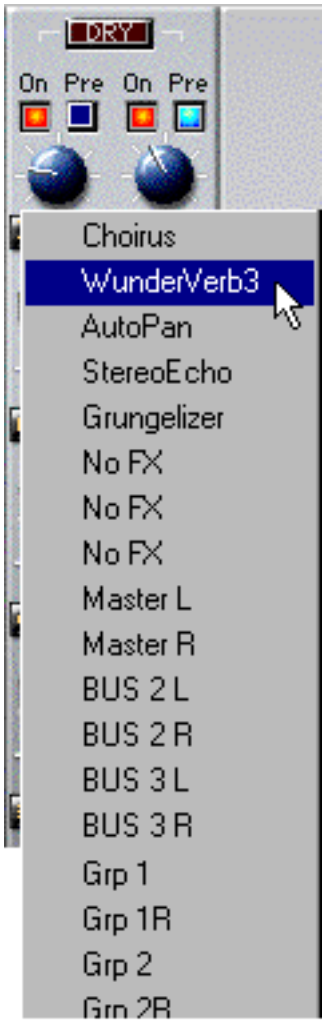
The four effect sends for each audio channel can now either be routed to any of the built-in VST effects, or directly to one of the Buses, for use with external effects, etc. Proceed as follows:

1. **Open the Monitor window.**

2. **Click the FX button for a channel to open its EQ and FX Send window.**

3. **Activate an effect send by clicking its On button.**
   Remember to check that the DRY button is not activated.

4. **Click on the button below the Send Level knob to pull down the Send Routing popup menu.**



This popup menu contains the eight VST effects, all activated Buses and each side (left/right) of the eight Groups.

5. **Select one of the effects, Groups or Buses on the popup menus to route the send there.**
Since the sends are in mono, you can select each side of an output Bus independently.

6. **Repeat steps 3 to 5 for the other sends as desired.**
Clicking the Pre button will allow you to send the signal of an audio channel to an effect or a bus, independently of the channel's fader and mute settings. Use this for insert type effects, etc.

- It is important to note that the Routing is independent for all Sends on all audio channels!
If for example you route Send 1 for channel 1 to the first effect processor in the Mixer Effect window (running "Choirus" in the example above), you are free to route Send 1 for the next channel to whatever effect processor or Bus you wish!

Routing the Effect Outputs to Buses

The stereo outputs of the Mixer Effects can now be routed independently to any of the output Buses:

1. **Open the Effects window.**

2. **Select an Effect for one of the units, and activate it.**

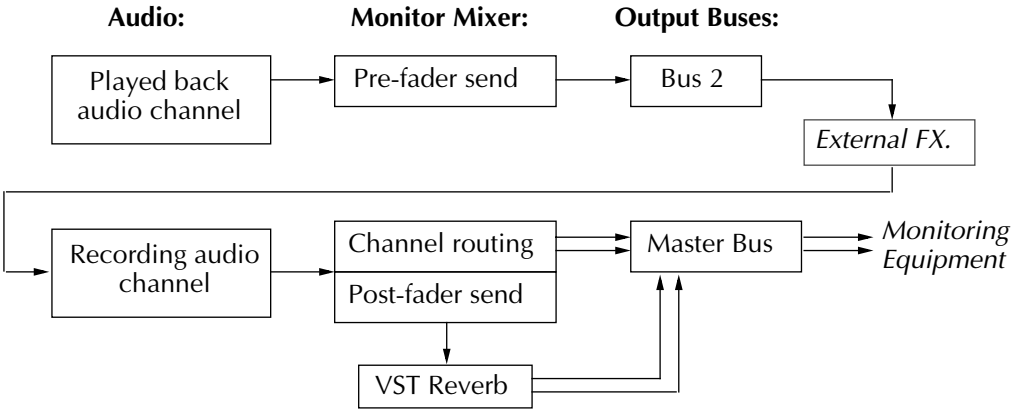
3. **Click on the button next to the File button in the effect unit to pull down a Bus popup menu.**

This popup menu is similar to the ones in the Monitor window, containing all the active Buses. The Master Bus will always be available.

4. **Select one of the Buses to route the output of the effect there.**

An example setup

In this example, we will set up an Audio Track for playback, route one of the effect sends to an individual output, connected to an external (mono) effect, and record the output of this effect on another Audio Track. During recording, this Track will be monitored, and some built-in VST reverb will be added to the monitored sound:



Setting up the audio channel for playback

1. **Make the physical connections between your audio hardware and the external effect device.**
   Connect an auxiliary output on your audio card to the input on the external effect. Then connect the output of the effect to an input on your audio card.

2. **Open the Master window and activate Bus 2, by clicking its Active button.**
   This is the Bus you will use to route audio to the external effect.

3. **Pull down the Output popup menu for Bus 2 and route it to the desired output on your audio card.**
   This should be the output pair containing the output you connected in Step 1.

4. **Set up the Audio Track for playback in the Arrange window.**
   This may involve muting other Tracks, setting the Cycle, etc.

5. **Open the Monitor window and click on the FX button for the played back audio channel.**
   The EQ and FX Send window opens.

6. **Click on the On and Pre buttons for the first effect send, so that the indicators in the buttons light up.**
   Make sure the DRY button isn't activate.

7. **Pull down the Send Routing popup and select Bus 2 (Left or Right, depending on which output on your audio card is connected to the external effect device).**

8. **Use the Send Level knob to set an appropriate signal level for the external effect.**
   You may want to play back the audio at this point, to check the connection and the input signal level on your effect device.

9. **Go back to the Monitor window and click on the Mute button for the played back audio channel.**
   Since "Pre" is activated for the effect send, this will not affect the signal to the external effect.

Setting up the audio channel for recording

1. **Pull down the Audio menu and select Inputs.**
   The Input window appears.

2. **Activate the Input to which you connected the external effect device.**
   Leave the other Inputs deactivated.

3. **Close the Input window and return to the Arrange window.**

4. **Prepare a Track for recording.**
   This Track should be set to another audio channel than the playback Track.

5. **Open the Monitor window, locate the audio channel selected for recording and click on its FX button.**
   The EQ and FX Send window for the channel appears.

6. **Activate one of the Effect sends by clicking its On button.**
   The Pre button should not be activated. Also make sure that the other Effect sends are deactivated, to avoid any accidental feedback loops.

7. **Pull down the Send Routing popup and select the first VST Effect slot.**

8. **Open the Effects window, select an effect for the first slot and activate it.**
   In this case, select "WunderVerb3".

9. **Pull down the Bus popup menu for the Effect and select Master.**

10. **Set the Send level (in the EQ and FX Send window) and the Effect Master level (in the Effects window) to appropriate values.**

11. **Return to the Monitor window, hold down [Control] and click on the Input button for the recording channel.**
    Make sure the correct Input is selected (if this is the only active Input, it will be selected automatically).

12. **Click on the Input button so that the indicator in the button lights up.**
    Now, the sound from the external effect will be routed to the recording audio channel.

13. **Try playing back the audio, and set levels for sends, monitoring, etc.**

14. **When ready, perform the recording.**
    The audio from the playback Track will be routed through the external effect and recorded on the recording Track, and you will monitor the result with some reverb added.

19

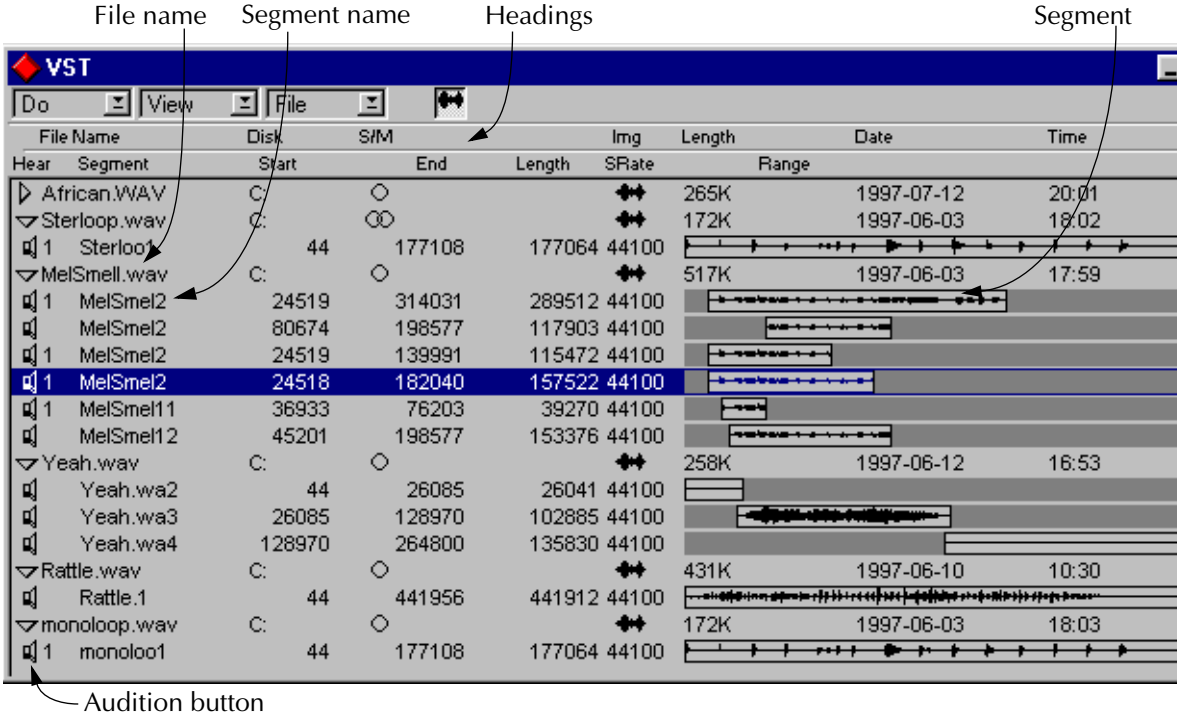
The Audio Pool

Introduction

Just as you can use the Windows 95 Explorer to manage your files and folders, you use the Pool to manage your audio segments and files.

The Pool is opened by selecting “Pool...” from the Audio menu or by pressing [Control]-[F].

Overview of the Window



The Pool lists all the audio files in the Song. Please note that this means it shows the files for all Arrange windows that belong to the Song.

Files

Each file is represented by a line, preceded by a triangle. For each file there are a number of settings and information, plus a waveform image on the right side.

The files in the Pool each represent an audio file on one of your hard disks that is (or have been) used in the Song.

Files are never used directly in the Song. Instead it is the “segments” that are played back from the Tracks.

Segments

For each file you have one or more segments. Segments are specifications for a section of a file. An introduction to the concept of segments can be found on page 14.

Segments are mainly created when you record audio and when you edit in the Audio editor.

Displaying Segments

For one File

To display/hide the segments belonging to one file, click on the triangle preceding the file.

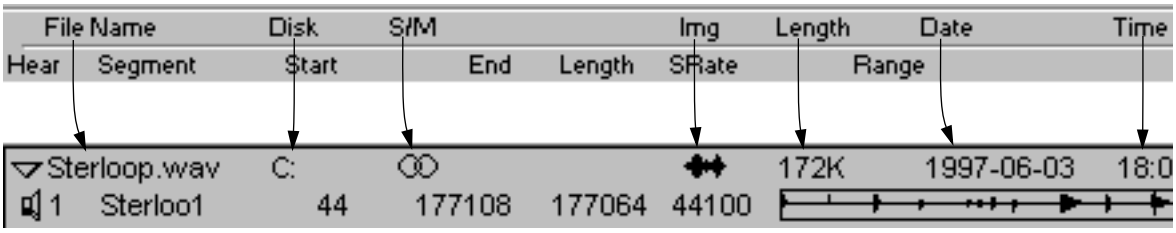
For all Files

- **To Show all segments for all files, select Expand from the pop-up View menu.**
- **To Hide all segments for all files, select Collapse from the same menu.**
- **To toggle between showing and hiding all segments for all files, hold down [Alt] and click on one of the triangles preceding the files.**

The Headings and Columns

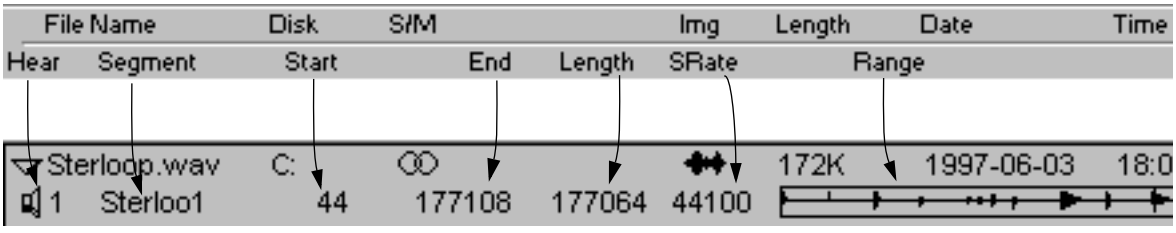
For each file/segment you have a number of information and setting fields. The names for these are displayed in two rows of headings at the top of the window. On the following pages you find brief descriptions of each entry in the headers. Many of these are used in various operations described later in this chapter.

File Headings



File Heading	Explanation
File Name	The name of the file, on disk.
Disk	The Disk the file resides on. If the file can't be found, three question marks are shown instead (see page 216). Clicking on the letter in this column lets you replace an audio file, as described on page 215.
S/M	If the audio file is stereo, two intersecting circles are shown under this heading.
Img	This shows you the status of the waveform image for the file, see below.
Length	This shows the size of the file in kilobytes.
Date and Time	This shows the date and time the file was created.

Segment Headings



Segment Heading	Explanation
Hear	To play the segment, click in this column (on the speaker symbol) and hold down the mouse button.
Segment (name)	The name of the segment.
Start	The segment's Start Inset in the file. Displayed in samples, as a meter position, or as time code, depending on the selected format (as described on page 211). This can be changed, see below.
End	The segment's End Inset in the file. Can be changed.
Length	The length of the segment. Cannot be changed.
SRate	The Sample Rate of the file.
Range	An overview of the segment in the file.

Customizing the View

Hiding Headings

If you don't need the Headings at the top of the window you can hide them using the "Hide/Show" item on the pop-up View menu.

Turning on and off Information

If you don't need all the information fields for the files and segments, you can deactivate these by selecting Show/Hide Info from the View pop-up. Among other things this allows you to get a more detailed overview of the waveforms.

Turning on and off Waveforms

If you don't need to see the waveforms for the segments, you can hide them by clicking on the waveform icon at the top of the window.

Zooming and setting Sizes of the Waveforms

If you change the width of the window, the waveforms are scaled accordingly. That is, the bigger you make the window the more detailed view of the waveform you will have.

By using the fader below the scroll bar you can set the vertical size of each line, to get a better overview of the waveforms.

Selecting Time Formats

You can set whether the Start, End and Length values should be displayed in samples, as meter positions, or as time code values, by using the View pop-up menu.

- **If you select samples, the values are shown as numbers of samples.**
  How many samples there are to a second, depends on the sample rate (48000 samples per second at 48kHz for example).

- **If you select time code format, the values are shown in the format "minutes:seconds:frames:subframes".**
  How many frames there are to a second depends on the Time code Frame rate setting in the Synchronization dialog (typically 30 or 25).

- **If you select meter position format, the start and end inset values indicate the start and end position of the *first instance* of the segment in the Song, as bars, beats and ticks.**
  If the segment is not used, the start inset will show 1.1.0 and the end inset will show the end position as it would be if the segment had really started on 1.1.0.
  The length value shows the length of the segment in bars, beats and ticks, starting with 0.0.0 - in other words the difference between the end inset value and the start inset value.

● Please remember that if you have meter position format selected, the End Inset and Length values are tempo dependent. That is, if you change the tempo, these values will change as well.

Setting File and Segment Order

File Order

On the View menu, you can determine in which order the files should be displayed:

Option	Description
By Name	Files are shown alphabetically.
By Date	Files are shown chronologically according to the time they were created, with the newest file on top.
By Size	Files are shown in size order, with the largest one on top.

Segment Order

By selecting “Order Segments” from the pop-up View menu, you re-arrange the segments so that they are shown in the order they appear in the file.

Finding Out how a Segment is used in the Song

One segment can be used in more than one place in a Song. There are a number of situations where you will want to find out where a segment is used, for example:

- So that you can tell that a segment isn’t used anywhere and possibly delete it.
- If you want to know if a segment is used in more than one place, so that you can decide how editing the segment affects the Song.

Number of Times the Segment is used

Next to the speaker icon for each segment, you will see a number telling how many times in the Song this segment is used. A segment without numbers is not used anywhere.

Finding Out Where the Segment is used

1. **Select one or more segment(s).**

2. **Select Find Parts from the Do pop-up menu.**
   Now the Parts that play the selected segment(s) get selected in the Arrange window.

3. **If desired, select Edit from the Edit menu, and the selected Parts are opened in the audio editor for further examination.**

File Operations

Renaming a File

To rename a file, proceed as follows:

1. **Double click on the existing name, or select the file and press [Alt]-[Ctrl]-[N].**

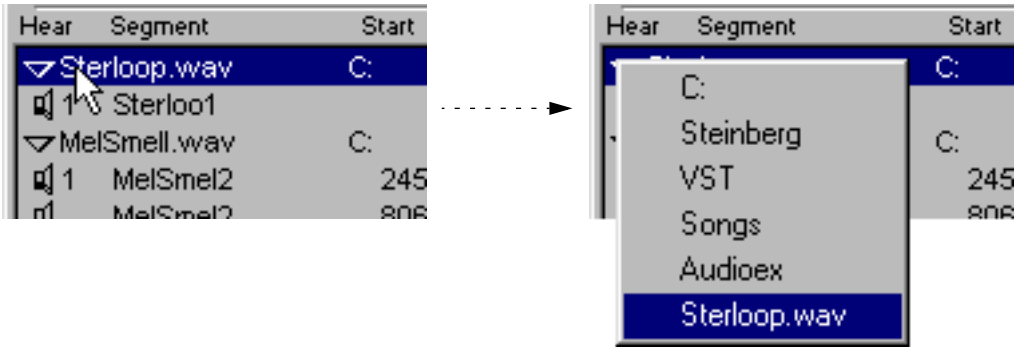
2. **Enter a new name or edit the existing one.**

3. **Click outside the box or press [Return].**

● Renaming a file this way is much preferred to renaming it in the Explorer. This way, Cubase "knows" about the change and will not lose track of the file the next time you open the Song. See page 216 for details about lost files.

Locating a File on the Hard Disk

To find out where on the hard disk a certain file is located, hold down [Alt] and click on the file. A pop-up showing you the file location appears.



Duplicating Files

To make a duplicate of an audio file, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the file.**

2. **Pull down the File pop-up menu and select "Duplicate File".**
   A file dialog opens where you can enter a name and location for the duplicate. To minimize the risk of Cubase VST "losing track" of your audio files, use this function instead of duplicating files in the Explorer.

Deleting Files

Removing from Pool

If you want to remove one or more files from the Pool without actually deleting them from the hard disk, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the file(s).**
   Selecting more than one is done just as with any other object in Cubase, by clicking in combination with the [Shift] key.

2. **Select "Delete" from the Edit menu or press [Backspace].**

- **If you try to delete a file that is used by one or more Parts, the program will ask you if you also want to delete those Parts.**
  Cancelling this operation means that neither the file nor the Parts are deleted.

Removing from the Pool and deleting from Hard Disk

If you want to remove the file from the Pool and also delete the file permanently from the hard disk, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the files.**

2. **Hold down [Control] and press [Backspace].**
   A dialog box asks you if you are sure you want to follow through. Remember that this operation can not be undone!

Deleting all Unused Files

This function finds all files in the Pool that are not used in the Song, and removes them from the hard disk.

1. **Pull down the File pop-up and select Delete Unused Files.**
   If there are unused files in the Pool, a dialog reminds you that the operation cannot be undone, and asks you if you want to go on.

2. **If you change your mind, click Cancel. Otherwise, click OK.**
   Please note that you cannot undo this operation.

Creating a Segment

You can create a "default" segment for the file, that is one that plays the entire file.

1. **Select the file.**

2. **Select Duplicate Segment from the Do pop-up menu.**
   The new segment can be edited to play any part of the file (see page 218).

Replacing a File in the Pool

There are situations when you may want to replace an audio file in the Pool with another, but keep all segments that are in use. As an example, consider the following situation:

You have used an external Wave Editor (see the chapter "Using an External Wave Editor") to perform some dynamic or spectral editing on an audio file. To be on the safe side, you save the edited audio file under another name than the original. When you return to Cubase VST, you will want to be able to replace the original file, so that all segments reference to the new, edited audio file instead, and preferably be able to switch back if you change your mind. Proceed as follows:

1. **Click on the letter in the Disk column for the file.**
   A dialog appears, asking if you want to "Re-find" the file. Click "Yes".

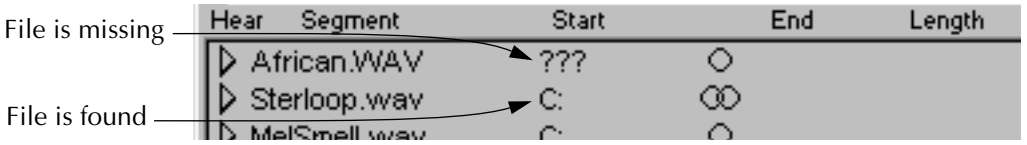
2. **In the file dialog that appears, select the audio file that should replace the existing file in the Pool.**
   In our example above, this would be the edited version of the audio file.

3. **Another dialog will ask you if you are sure. Click "Sure".**
   The audio file in the Pool is now replaced with the one you selected in the file dialog. The segments keep their names and, if possible, their start and end inset positions. If you later want to switch back to the original file, just repeat the operation.

- Please note that the replacing audio file must be of the same length as the original file, for the segment start and end insets to be relevant! If you perform any editing that involves changing the length of the file (such as time stretch, truncating, etc), this method does not work, since you will have to create new segments.

Handling “Missing Files”

When you open a Song, you may get a warning that one or more files are “missing”. If you click Ignore, the Song will open anyway, without the missing files. In the Pool you can check which files are considered missing. This is indicated by three question marks in the Disk column.



A file is considered missing under one of the following conditions:

- The file has been moved to another folder or renamed in the Explorer since the last time you changed the Song, and you ignored the Missing files dialog when you opened the Song.
- You have used the Explorer to move, rename or change properties such as date for the file since you started the program this time.

Locating a missing file

1. **Click on the question marks.**

2. **In the dialog that appears, decide if you want the program to try the find the file for you (Auto) or if you want to do it yourself (Manual).**

Auto

If you choose Auto, the program scans all your hard disks for a file with the proper name and creation date.

If Auto doesn’t work

Please note that Cubase is quite strict about identifying the files you use. Cubase retains information on the Name, Size and Creation Date of every file saved in a Song. If these values are changed by you, or a program you may be using, you will not be able to rely on Cubase's “auto-find” function. In this case you will have to use the “Manual” option and “over-ride” the subsequent warnings.

Manual

If you choose Manual, the program will display a file dialog allowing you to locate the file manually.

When you have found the file, click OK to replace the missing file in the Pool. If the name or date is not identical to the missing one, the program will warn you but let you proceed. The next time during this session that the program attempts to search for a missing file, it will first look at the position of the last found file.

Creating Wave Images and Keeping them up to date

With each audio file goes an image, a picture of the waveform for display in various places in Cubase. The wave images are very useful, especially in the Audio editor when you are editing your files. A wave image is stored in a separate file with the same name as the audio file, but with the extension “OVW”.

Wave images are created after you have completed recording, in a process that may take a few seconds. If you don’t want to wait for this to happen when you stop recording, this function can be turned off, by deactivating the “Use Waveforms” item on the Audio menu.

In addition, a wave image can get “out of sync” with the file it belongs too. The three states of the wave image are indicated like this:

Icon:	Description:
	The image is OK.
	The image might need updating (“out of sync”).
	The file has no image.

Updating the Wave Image

To update the wave image for one file, click on its icon.

Segment Operations

The Pool allows you to create new segments, slightly or drastically different from those you already have in your Song, and drag and drop these in the Audio editor, the Wave editor or the Arrange window.

Auditioning a Segment

From the Beginning

To audition a segment from its beginning, press and hold the mouse button with the pointer over the speaker icon to the left of the segment name.

From any Position

To start playback from any position in the segment, click with the mouse pointer in the waveform to the right. Playback will start from the position you click on.

Renaming a Segment

To rename a segment, proceed as follows:

1. **Double click on the existing name or select the segment and press [Alt]-[Ctrl]-[N].**
2. **Enter a new name or edit the existing one.**
3. **Click outside the box or press [Return].**

Duplicating Segments

To create a copy of a segment, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the segment by clicking on it.**
2. **Select Duplicate Segment from Do pop-up menu.**
   The new segment appears in the Pool.

Changing Start and End Insets

You can change the Start and End points of the segment. This allows you to change what part of the audio file the segment plays (this can also be done in the Audio editor, see page 244).

● Please note that this change will affect all places in the song where this segment is used.

You can adjust the Start and End Inset values by regular value editing. See page 211 for a description of the different time formats.

Deleting segments

Deleting one or several segments from the Pool

1. **Select the segment(s).**
   Selecting more than one segment is done just as with any other object in Cubase VST, by clicking in combination with the [Shift] key.

2. **Select Delete from the Edit menu or press [Delete] or [Backspace].**

- **If you try to delete a segment that is used by one or more Parts, the program will ask you if you also want to delete those Parts.**
  Cancelling this operation means that neither the segments nor the Parts are deleted.

  You can tell how many times a segment is used in a Song by checking the number next to the speaker icon.

Deleting all Segments not used in the Song (Purge)

To automatically delete all segments that are currently not used in the Song, select Purge Segments from the Do pop-up menu.

Deleting Unused Portions of Audio Files (Erase Unused)

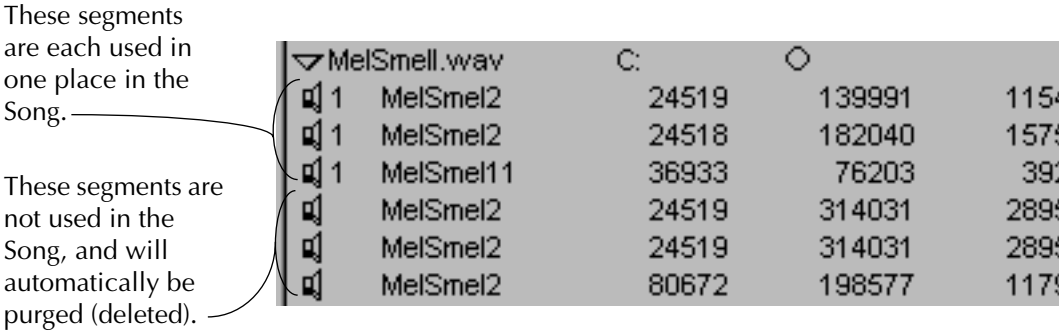
"Erase Unused" allows you to "trim" down your Audio files so that they only contain the sections actually referenced by that file's segment. This helps you maintain as much free space on the hard disk(s) as possible.

The idea behind this is that hard disk space is most often precious, and recorded silence (for example) takes up as much hard disk space as recorded "noise". When you adjust Start and End Points in segments to "hide" the sections of audio you don't want to hear, you are still using up valuable disk space for those unheard bits. To "fix" this, use Erase Unused.

Which Parts of the Files are considered Unused?

Unused portions of a file are the sections not played back by any segment in the "Pool".

This means that even if the segment isn't used anywhere in the Song (which you can tell by looking at the speaker icon beside the segment – unused segments have no number) the section of the file that the segment plays is considered to be in use.To avoid keeping a lot of unnecessary audio sections, the program therefore automatically performs a "Purge Segments" (see page 219) before the actual "Erase Unused" operation.


These segments are each used in one place in the Song.
These segments are not used in the Song, and will automatically be purged (deleted).
MelSmell.wav C:
1 MelSmel2 24519 139991
1 MelSmel2 24518 182040
1 MelSmel11 36933 76203
MelSmel2 24519 314031
MelSmel2 24519 314031
MelSmel2 80672 198577

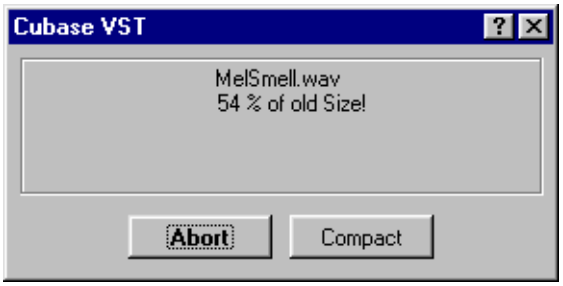
Applying Erase Unused

- Erase Unused changes the contents of one selected audio file. If you use the file in another Song, or if you want to be able to go back to the original recording, make sure you have a copy of the file before you begin!

1. Select either the file or one of it's segments.
This command works on "one sound file at a time". For this function to work, two criteria have to be fulfilled:

- The audio file must be used by at least one Event somewhere in the Song.
- There must be some section of the audio file that isn't used by any Segment (otherwise there's nothing to erase, right?).

2. **Select the "Erase Unused" command from the pop-up menu.**
   A dialog box will display how much of the original audio file will be kept, and ask you if you want to go on.



3. **Click Compact.**
   First the unused Segments are deleted. Then the unused sections of the file are deleted and the remaining parts "joined together" with only a short section of silence in between. The segments are adjusted accordingly.

Erasing all Unused Audio in a Song

To permanently erase all unused Audio in a Song, simply select all files in the Pool and select Erase Unused.

Importing Audio Files into the Pool

From the Pool you can import files created by other programs, or files you have created in another Cubase VST Song.

File Formats

Files in the following formats can be imported:

- Uncompressed 16 bit Wave (WAV) or Audio IFF (AIFF).
- Mono or Stereo.
- The Sample Rate currently used in your Song.

● If you import files with another sample rate than the one used in the Song, they may most probably play back at the wrong speed and pitch, depending on your audio hardware.

Proceed as follows:

1. **Pull down the File pop-up menu and select Import Audio File.**
   A file dialog appears.

2. **Select a file format (WAV, AIF or both) from the File Type pop-up.**
   Files of the selected type(s) are listed in the file dialog box.

3. **Use the file dialog box to locate the file and select it.**

- **You can audition the audio file with the Play button.**
  When you click the Play button, its label changes to “Stop” and the selected audio file is played back. Playback continues until you click on Stop, or select another file.

4. **You can select several files by using the [Shift] or [Control] keys, in standard Windows fashion.**

5. **Click “Open”.**
   Now, the File(s) will appear at the bottom of the Pool window, each complete with a segment which can be dragged into the Arrangement, as described above.

Dragging Segments into Other Windows

Introduction

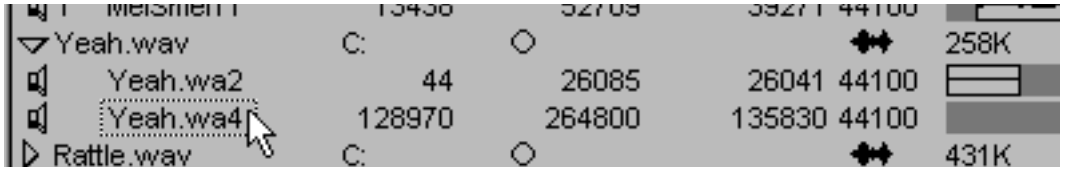
To move segments into other windows, Cubase uses drag and drop techniques. You can do the following:

- Drag a segment into the Arrange window for use on any audio Track.
- Drag a segment into the Audio editor for detailed positioning on a Track.
- Drag a segment into the Wave Editor for further processing.

General Procedure

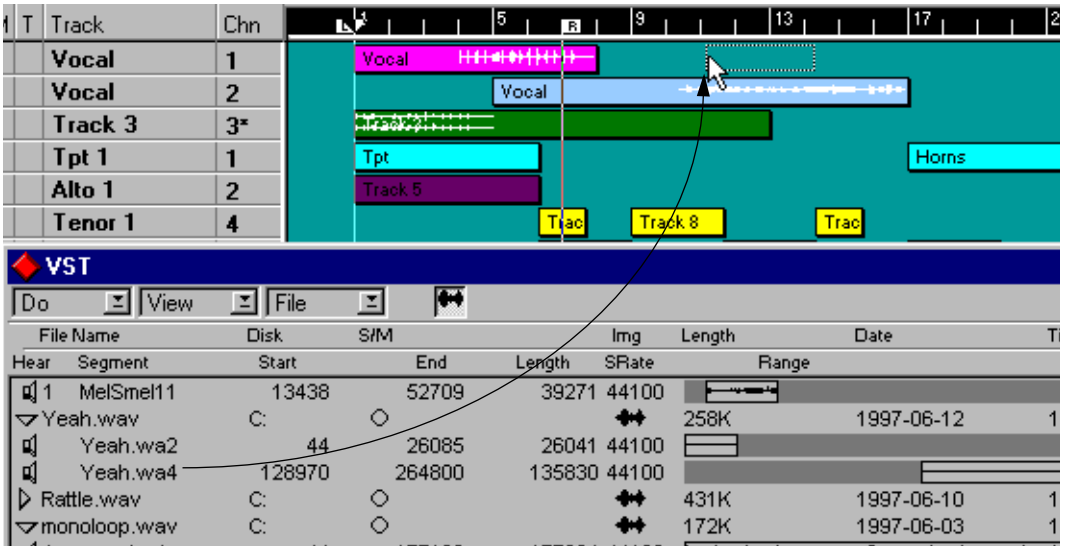
1. **Arrange the windows so that as much as possible of the window you want to drag the segment into (Arrangement, Wave Editor or Audio editor) is visible, when you have the Pool window active.**

2. **Position the mouse button over the name of the segment and press the mouse button.**

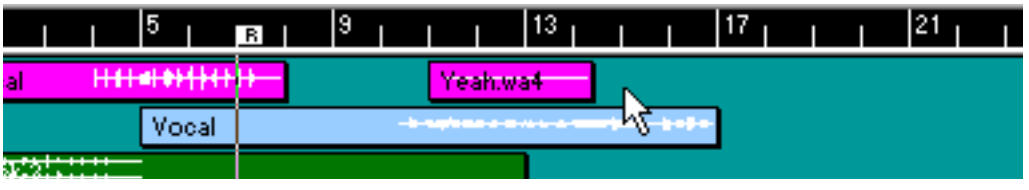


A dotted rectangle appears around the name of the segment.

3. **Drag the segment out of the Pool window and release it somewhere on top of the other window.**



In this example the segment is dragged to the Arrange window. A new Part is then created, containing an Event which plays the segment you dragged.



Dragging into the Arrange Window

When you drag into the Arrange window, you must release the segment on an Audio Track. When you do this, you get the following:

- A new Part, beginning at the position you pointed at when you released the mouse button. The Snap value applies as with all editing in the Arrange window.
- Inside this Part is one Audio Event which plays the segment.
  For more information on Audio Events and their relation to segments, see page 14.

Dragging into the Audio editor

When you drag into the Audio editor there are a few things you should be aware of:

- The mouse position in the Audio editor shows you where you are about to "drop" the segment. The Snap value applies as always.
- If the Track is set to channel "Any", or if you are editing several Parts, it matters very much which "lane" you put the segment on, since each lane uses its own audio channel, as described on page 231.
- When you "drop" the segment in the Audio editor, an Audio Event that plays the segment is created and appears in the window.
  For more information on lanes, audio events and other Audio editor concepts, see page 230.

Dragging into the Wave Editor

Dragging a segment into the Wave editor will show it as a waveform, see page 285 for more info.

Preparing File Archives and “Masters”

Prepare Archive

This function on the Pool File pop-up menu takes all the audio files used in the Song (or, if you wish, all the audio files in the Pool, regardless of whether they are used or not) and puts them in a new folder that you specify. This folder can then easily be backed up to another disk or other media, using the Finder's copy commands or any backup utility program.

1. **Select Prepare Archive from the Pool’s File pop-up menu.**
   A file dialog appears where you can navigate to the folder where you want to store the files.

2. **In the new dialog that appears, specify if you want to include *All* the files in the Pool, or only those that are *Referenced* (actually used in the Song).**
   All the sound files are now moved to the selected folder. If the files are on another disk, copies are automatically created and put into the same folder.

● We recommend you to also save your Song document into this folder or in close vicinity to it. If you make this a habit you can rest assured that you always have all the files for one Song collected in one place. This makes backing up and restoring much simpler.

Prepare Master

This option takes all the audio files used in the Song, extracts only the used bits of each audio file and stores this into new files. The result is a new set of files that play back the Song just as before, but now only contains the portions of audio which actually appears in the song. The Song is also updated to play the new “trimmed” files.

The Prepare Master operation is entirely non-destructive, in that no audio files will be erased from your hard disk, new files are created for all the material. Please note the following:

- **This procedure can not be Undone.**
- **Since new files are created, it requires that you have sufficient space on your destination hard disk.**
  You will be warned should there be insufficient free space to complete the operation.

In a sense, the function is a composite of other Cubase VST operations, those being “Purge Segments”, “Erase Unused”, and “Prepare Archive”.

Using Prepare Master

Proceed as follows:

1. **Make sure your Song is saved.**
   After the operation, the Song is altered, so this is an important step if you also want to save the Song as it is now.

2. **Select "Prepare Master" from the Pool's pop-up File menu.**
   A dialog box appears, telling you that this operation is not undoable.

3. **A new dialog box appears informing you that you need to create a new folder.**
   Use the file selector that appears after this, to do so.

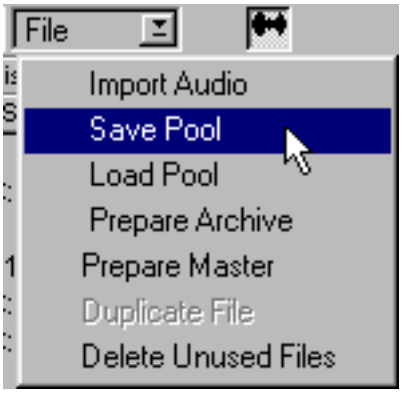
4. **Open the folder you have just created and click Select.**

   The software now examines your use of the audio material in the Pool, discards anything which is not used, and then proceeds to create new audio files which corresponds to the sections of the existing material. All the new files which are created are named automatically. The software also creates new segments which play these new files, and swaps these in automatically.

5. **Save the Song in its new state into the same folder as the new files or in close vicinity to it.**
   This is necessary, since the Song you have after the operation uses completely new files and segments than before.

Saving and Loading the Pool

The Pool is automatically saved with the Song. However, by using the Load and Save Pool commands on the pop-up File menu, you can freely save Pools and load them into Songs.



Saving

1. **Select Save Pool from the File Pop-up menu.**

2. **In the dialog box that appears, specify if you want to save all files and segments, or just the selected ones.**

3. **In the standard dialog box that appears, specify a name and a location for the file.**

● The audio files themselves are not saved in the Pool file, only a reference to them. You should probably not move any audio file(s) until next time you want to use the Pool. You should definitely not delete them!

Loading

A Pool file is opened (loaded) with the Load Pool command on the File pop-up menu. When you load a Pool file, the files in it are “added” to the current Pool.

20

The Audio Editor

Introduction

The Audio editor is your main environment for editing, trimming and assembling audio recordings into finished Tracks.

Many of the techniques described below are common to the Arrange window and the MIDI editors (mainly Key Edit). Examples of such operations are moving, duplicating, using Tools etc. Therefore this chapter assumes that you are reasonably familiar with such basic operations and does not always describe all the details involved.

Opening the Audio editor

The Audio editor is opened just like any other MIDI editor. You can edit Parts from several Tracks at the same time, if desired.

You can only have one Audio editor window open at a time.

About Events, Lanes and Segments

● Please take the time to read this section and familiarize yourself with the terminology and concepts of the Audio editor. This will help you work as quickly and effectively as possible. Bear with us, we'll try to be as brief as possible in this theoretical section:

Audio Events and Segments

Audio Events appear as boxes, with waveforms in them. You can have a virtually unlimited number of Events in the Audio editor at one time; they do not consume more memory than MIDI Events.

Audio Events can be arranged in any way, with gaps between them, overlapping each other, etc.

An Event plays a Segment (for an introduction to Segments, see page 14). The Audio Event specifies where the Segment should start. The Segment in turn specifies what part of the audio file should be played, and therefore effectively governs the length of the Audio Event.

- **If you want two Events to play the same segment, you can use ghost copies.**
  A ghost copied Event will play the same segment as the original Event. See the chapter "Making the Most of the Event/Segment Relationship".

Lanes

When you first open the Audio editor you will note that it is divided horizontally into something we call “Lanes”.

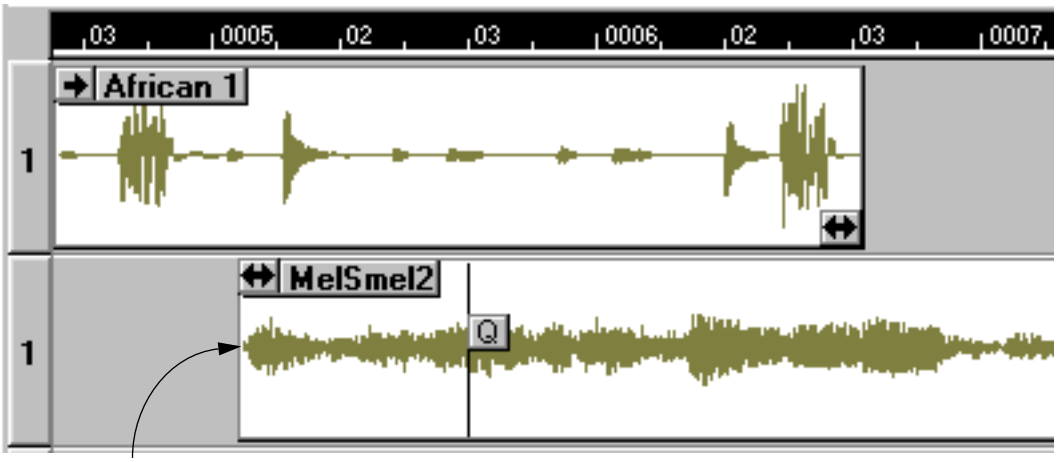
Lanes bear some resemblance to Tracks in the Arrange window. On each Lane you can have as many Audio Events as you like. You might think of your Audio Events as “hangers” for the recordings you have made. In this analogy, the Lanes would be the “rails” on which the hangers are positioned.

When Editing A Single Channel Track

If the Track is set to play back on one specific audio channel, in the Arrange window (as opposed to being set to channel “Any”), the Lanes all have equal value.

You can move the Events between the Lanes as you like, and add new Events on any Lane. Playback is not affected by which lane an Event is on. The only reason for you to use more than one Lane when editing a single channel Track is if you find that it gives you a better overview of what is going on.

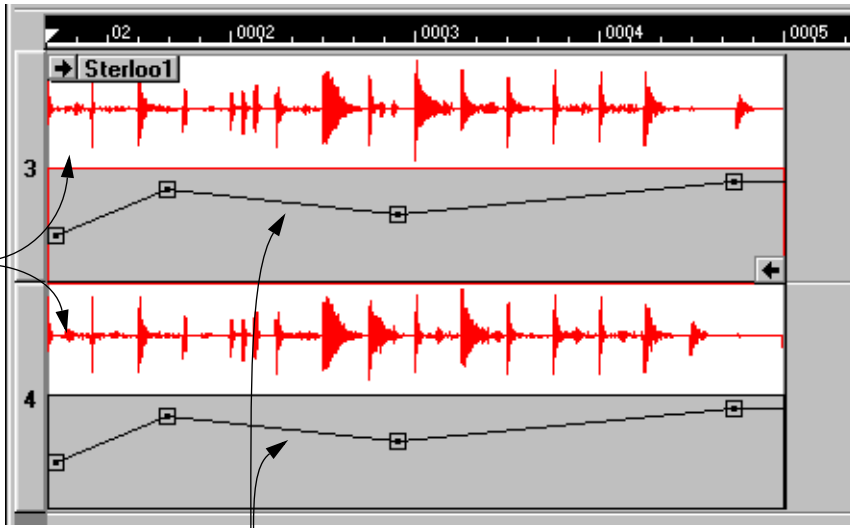
Remember that in a single channel Track, all Events “compete” for one single (monophonic) audio channel.That is, if they overlap timewise, they will cut each other off during playback, even if they are on different Lanes.



When the lower Event starts, the sound of the upper Event will be cut off.

When Editing a Stereo Track

- **Stereo recordings occupy two lanes. These two lanes use one audio channel each. Otherwise editing stereo Tracks is not much different from editing mono Tracks.**
- **Volume and Pan is common to both audio channels. That is, any change you make will affect both channels equally.**

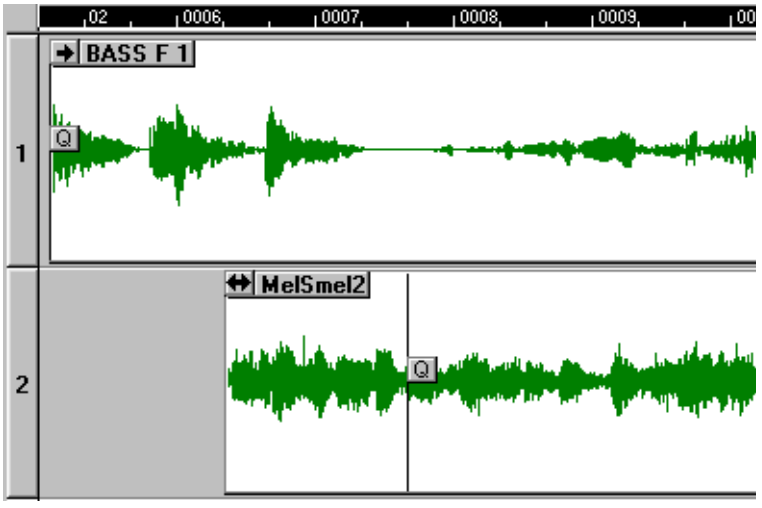


The left and right sides in a Stereo event.

Changing one of the Event Volume curves will automatically affect the other.

When Editing a Multi Channel Track

If you are editing a Track set to channel “Any”, each Lane will represent one of the available audio channels. Which audio channel each Lane “uses” is indicated by a number on the left side of the window.



Events on this lane play back on channel 1.

Events on this lane play back on channel 2.

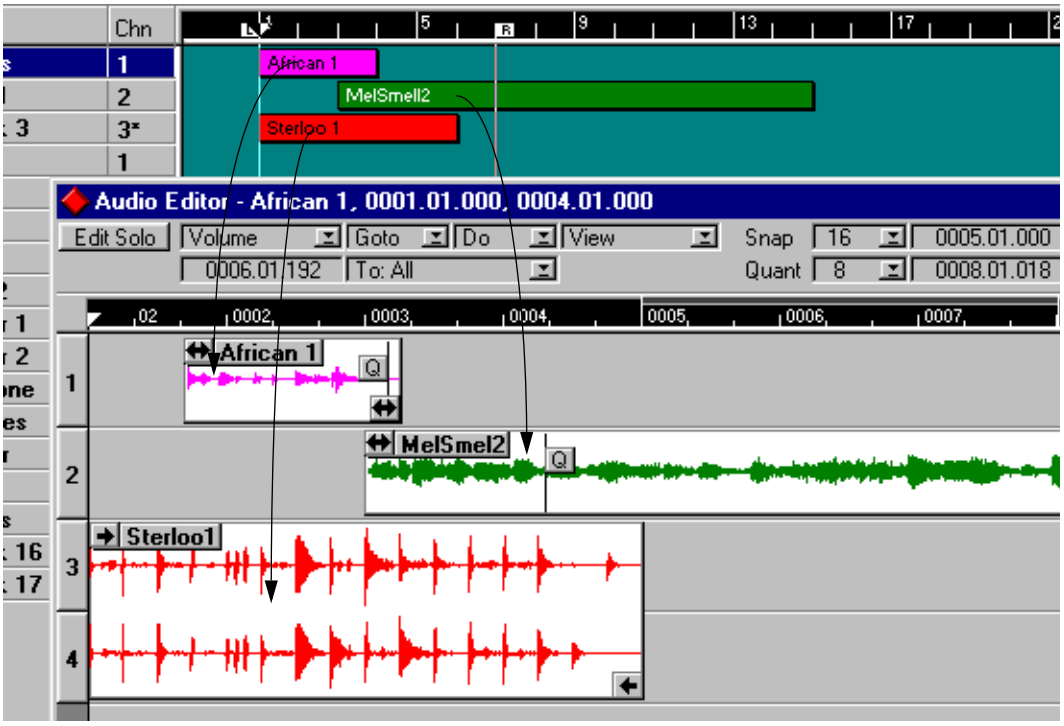
If you set your view so that you see many Lanes (see Customizing the view, below), you will note that the channel numbers start repeating as you move down the window. For example, in a four channel system, the first four Lanes are numbered 1 to 4, then next four Lanes are again numbered 1 to 4 and so on.

As with a single channel Track, all Lanes that use the same channel have “equal value”. It does not matter which of them you put your Audio Events on.

By moving an Event between Lanes with different channel numbers, you change which audio channel the Event is played back on.

When Editing Several Tracks

If you open several Parts on different Tracks at the same time in the Audio editor you will also get Lanes with multiple audio channels. How many different channels and exactly which ones, depends on what audio channels the Tracks are set to.



Editing Parts on three Tracks with different audio channels.

As you will learn later on in this chapter, the Audio editor Lanes can be used as a means of moving Events between audio channels and even between Tracks!

Which Audio Events will I Hear?

If any two Events in your Arrangement try to play back on the same audio channel at the same time, only one of them will be heard. This is shown in the pictures below:

The ″1st Part″ Event is cut off by the ″2nd Part″ Event.

The ″MainBeat″ Event is cut off by the ″Fill-in″ Event. After the end of this shorter Event, the ″MainBeat″ Event will be heard again.

Finding Out How Events compete for Audio Channels

In case there is one recording that doesn't play back as intended, you may want to check whether several Events "compete" for an audio channel. Proceed as follows:

1. **Select all the Parts you think might compete for audio channels.**
   This may very well mean selecting Parts on several Tracks.

2. **Open the Audio editor, displaying the selected Parts.**

3. **Select "By Output" from the View pop-up menu in the Audio editor.**

   Now, all Events that play back on the same audio channel are put on the same Lane, regardless if they are on different Tracks or on the same Track.

4. **Check for overlapping Events along the Lanes.**
   If there are any, some audio will be cut off at those points.

- Often it is desired to have overlapping Events, for example when you have performed a punch in on a Track, for example to correct a mistake in a vocal part or similar (the punch in recording overlaps and therefore hides the original, faulty recording). But then again you might accidentally get overlapping Parts, and this feature helps you find those points.

About Q-points

All Audio Events have a Q-point which aids you in positioning them in a sensible way and which makes it possible to use Quantizing on the positions of Audio Events.

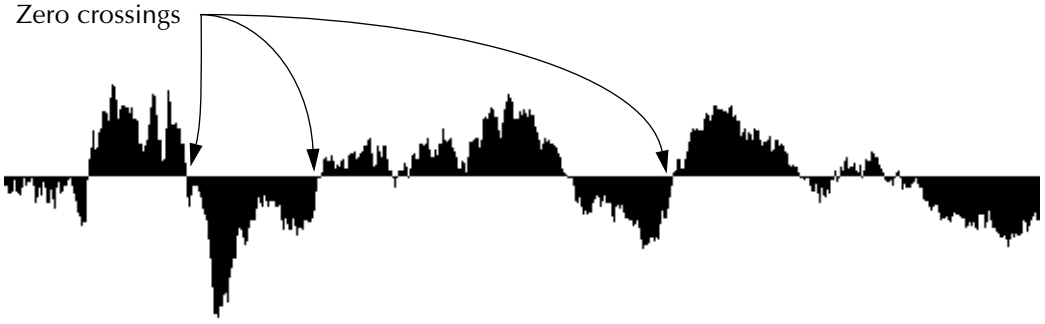
For example, if you record with the Prerecord option activated in the Metronome dialog, you will note that your Audio Events actually begin before the point where you activated recording. For example the Q-point might be exactly on a downbeat but the Event extends a little bit to its left.

Q-points are very valuable to audio editing. On page 247 in this chapter you will learn all about how they facilitate your work in the Audio editor.

About Zero Crossings

If you are familiar with audio editing from other digital systems you will know that splicing two audio files together might create a “click” just at the split point. This is because the two signals happen to have a different amplitude (level) at this point which creates a transient (a sudden and dramatic change in signal level).

One way to avoid this is to always make all edits at “zero crossings”.



An analog waveform is a voltage rising and falling around a center axis. This center axis is considered “zero” voltage. As indicated in the picture, a zero crossing is when the signal passes through this center axis.

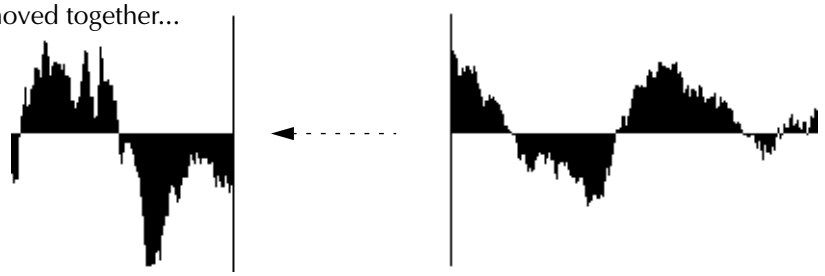
To automatically make all edits happen at the closest zero crossing, activate Snap To Zero on the Audio menu. When Snap To Zero is activated, the following operations always occur at the closest zero crossing:

- Changing Start and End Insets.
- Splitting Event in the Audio editor.
- Splitting Parts in the Arrangement (the Events in the Parts are split at zero crossings).
- Using Snip Loop (in the Audio editor).

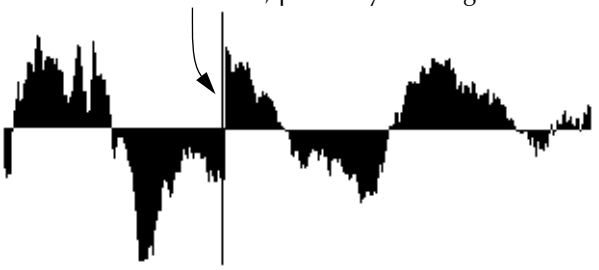
● It may happen that it will take a while to find the closest zero crossing. If this is the case the program will ask you if you want to continue the search or cancel it.

Zero Crossing Example

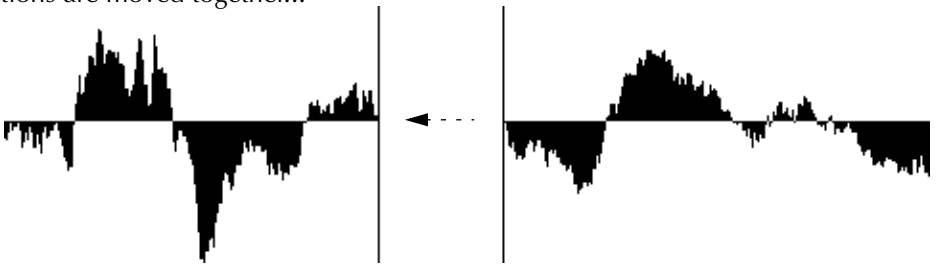
Here, an Event has been split in two places, with Snap to Zero off. When the two sections are moved together...



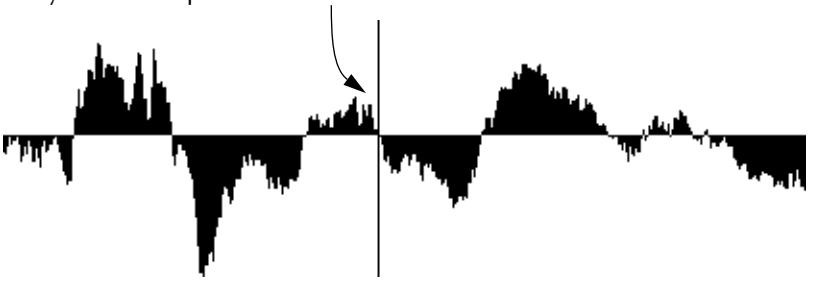
...the result will be a transient, probably causing a “click” or other undesired sound.



Here, an Event has been split in two places, with Snap to Zero activated. When the two sections are moved together...



...a fairly seamless splice is created.

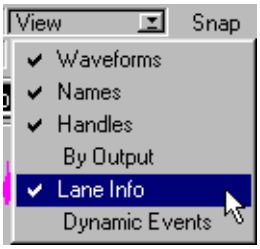


Customizing the View

There are a number of features you can use to tailor the Audio editor view to your liking:

The View Menu

The View pop-up menu allows you to select what will be displayed in the Events and on the Lanes:



Waveforms

This turns the display of waveforms on and off in the editor. Deactivating this speeds up screen redraws.

Names

This turns the display of Segment names in the Events on and off.

Handles

This allows you to decide if you want to see the Start, End and Q-point handles in the Events. See below.

By Output

By selecting this item you sort your Events so that all Events that play back on the same audio channel are put on the same Lane. See page 230 for details.

Lane Info

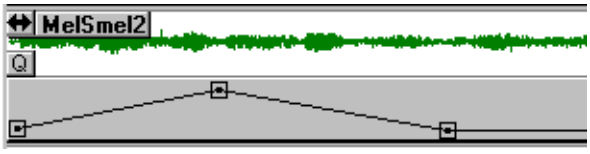
This shows/hides the display to the left of each Lane that tells what audio channel the Events on the Lane play back on.

Dynamic Events

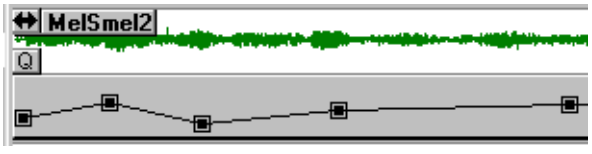
If this item is activated, the lower half of each Event displays one of these three alternatives:

- The Volume curve for the Event.
- The Pan curve for the Event (see page 274 for descriptions on how to edit Volume and Pan).
- The M-Points (Match Points) for the Event (see page 249).

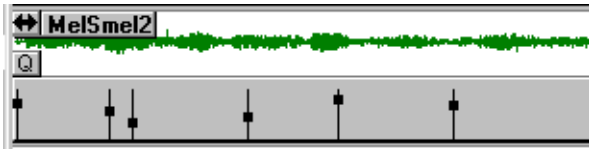
A Volume curve.



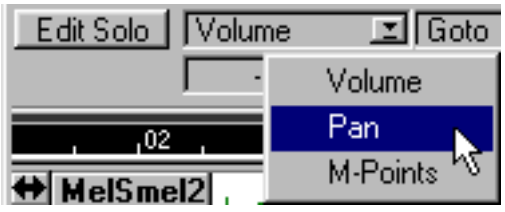
A Pan curve.



Match Points.



You determine which of these three Event types that is shown, by using the pop-up to the right of the Edit Solo button.



Magnification

The sliders on the scroll bar can be used to set the amount of detail, both horizontally and vertically.

- Zooming in all the way horizontally allows you to see the waveform in ultra-high resolution: one sample per pixel (screen “dot”).
- Zooming in vertically makes the Lanes “higher”. This is convenient for example for detailed editing of Volume.

Time/Meter Scale and Ruler and Position Formats

Time/Meter Scale

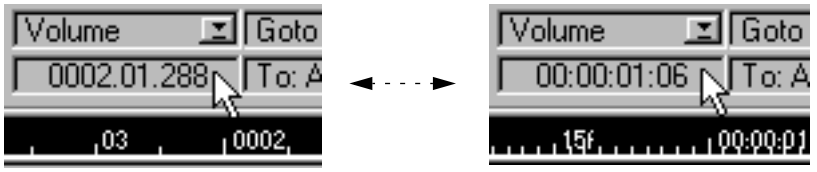
By clicking the Meter Scale button you can decide if the display and the ruler should show time or meter linearly:

- In a time linear display, each “second” on the screen occupies equal amount of space, horizontally. This is convenient if you are working with time related material, such as for example narration or sound effects to be matched to video.

- In a meter linear display, each bar on the screen occupies equal amount of space, horizontally. This the mode to use if you are working with musically related material.

Ruler and Position Formats

By clicking on the mouse box you can determine whether the rulers and the mouse position box should be displayed in time code (SMPTE) format or as bars and beats, as in the Arrange window and some of the MIDI editors (see the Basic Methods chapter in the Getting Started book).



- **Normally, you would match the Time Meter Scale and Ruler formats so that they are both set to Time or Meter positions.**
- **If you set the display to Time Scale and the Ruler to Meter positions, the ruler will not be linear.**
  That is, if you have tempo changes, there will not be equal spacing between the measures. This is natural, since if the measures are played at different tempo, they occupy different amounts of “real time” (minutes, seconds etc.)

- **If you set the display to Meter Scale and the ruler to Time positions, the same phenomenon occurs, that is if you have tempo changes, the ruler will not be “linear”.**

Using Color in the Audio Editor

The Events in the Audio editor can be displayed in color to help you distinguish between audio channels, etc. This is done by using the color palette pop-up menu.

There are three options on this menu:

No Color

Select this option if you don’t want any color for the Events.

Colorize by Channels

If you select Colorize by Channels, Events on different audio channels will get different colors. This is useful if for example you are editing a Track with channel “Any”, and viewing several Events by Output.

- **When Colorize by Channels is selected, the Color pop-up menu is automatically expanded to include an item called “Channel Colors...”.** Select this to edit which color goes with which audio channel.

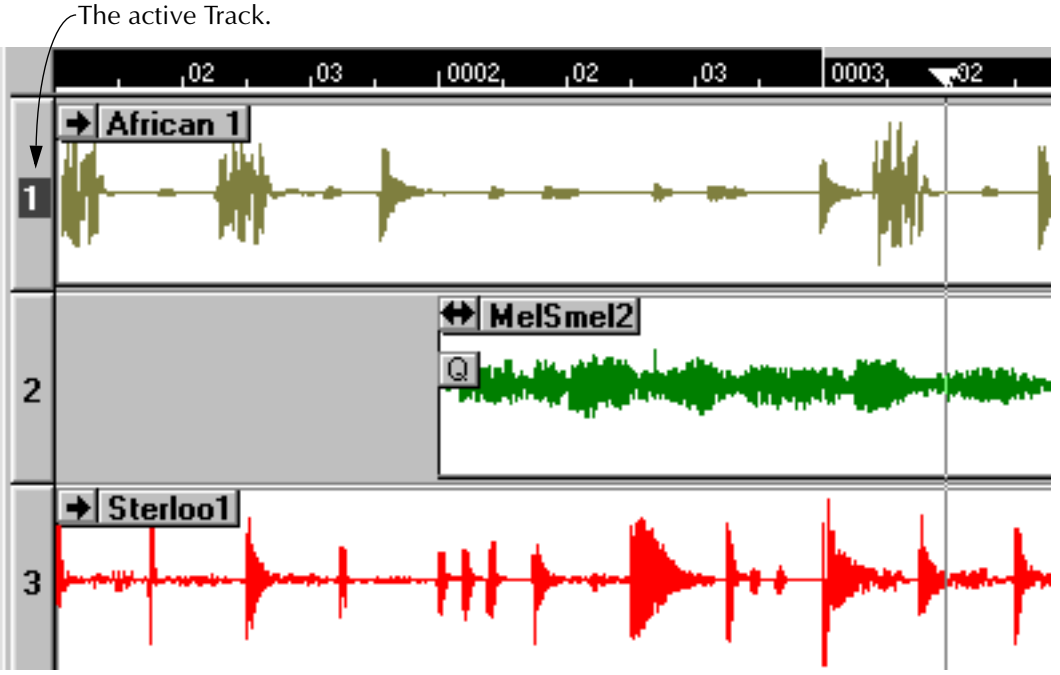
Colorize by Parts

If you select Colorize by Part, the Events in the editor will get the color that you have selected for their respective Parts in the Arrange Window. This allows you to distinguish Events from different Parts on the same audio channel, even if View by Output is selected on the View pop-up menu.

Recording in the Audio editor

Recording from within the Audio editor is no different from recording in the Arrange window. If you are editing several Tracks at the same time, you will be recording into the “active Track”.

- **The active Track is indicated by the inverted number in the Lane Info field.** To activate another Track, click in the Lane Info field for that Track.



Importing and Dragging Audio into the Editor

Dragging Audio From the Pool

As described on page 223 you can drag Segments from the Pool window into the Audio editor. This creates an Audio Event in the Part that plays back the dragged Segment. Here are some points to keep in mind:

- The mouse position in the Audio editor shows you where you are about to “drop” the Segment. The Snap value applies as always, using the Q-Point in the Event as position reference.
- If the Track is set to channel “Any”, it matters very much which “Lane” you put the Segment on, since it determines which audio channel the Event will play back on.
- If the Segment is already used (as indicated by the number beside the speaker symbol in the Pool), the created Audio Event will be a Ghost Event (see the chapter Making the Most out of the Event/Segment/File Relation).

Importing Audio Files

You can import files created by other programs. You can also import files you have created in another Cubase VST Song.

File Formats

Files in the following formats can be imported:

- Uncompressed 16 bit Wave (WAV) or Audio IFF (AIFF).
- The Sample Rate currently used in your Song (if you import files with another sample rate, they will play back at the wrong speed and pitch).
- Mono or Stereo.

Importing the File

1. **Set the Snap value as desired.**
   As always, the Snap value restricts what positions you can put the file on.

2. **Select the Pencil from the Toolbox.**

3. **If you are editing a multi channel Track, select the lane on which you want to put the Event, by clicking on its Lane Info field to the left.**
   This determines which channel the Event will play back on.

4. **Find the position where you want the start of the Event.**

5. **Click at this position.**

   You can click somewhere on an existing Event, which means the two Events will overlap.

   The only place where you should avoid to click is in another Event's Volume, Pan or M-Points display (see page 274), since this will change the values rather than import an Event.

6. **In the file dialog that appears, select a file format (WAV, AIF or both) from the File Type pop-up.**
   Files of the selected type(s) are listed in the file dialog box.

7. **Use the file dialog box to locate the file and select it.**

- **You can audition the audio file with the Play button.**
  When you click the Play button, its label changes to "Stop" and the selected audio file is played back. Playback continues until you click on Stop, or select another file.

8. **Click "Open".**
   A new Event is inserted in the Audio Part. If you check the Pool, you will find that the imported audio file has been added, together with a segment that plays the full file.

Auditioning and Scrubbing

There are a number of techniques for monitoring Events, to aid you in finding positions for editing operations:

Auditioning

This allows you to play back an Event from any position, at its “normal speed”:

1. **Deactivate the Scrub icon on the Status Bar.**

Auditioning mode.

2. **Select the Magnifying Glass from the Toolbox.**

3. **Click on an Event.**
   The Event is played back from that point as long as you hold the mouse button down.

Scrubbing

This allows you to play the Event back at practically any speed, forwards or backwards. This is convenient when trying to find a certain point to perform some editing at, such as splitting, changing Insets etc. The Scrubbed audio is not affected by Dynamic Events or any Monitor settings, only by the Master volume faders.

1. **Activate the Scrub icon on the Status Bar.**

Scrub mode.

2. **Select the Magnifying Glass from the Toolbox.**

3. **Press the mouse over an Event and drag sideways.**
   The faster you move the pointer, the higher the playback speed. If you drag to the left, audio will be played backwards.

Monitoring Settings

If the Speaker icon is activated, certain operations will give you audible feedback, namely:

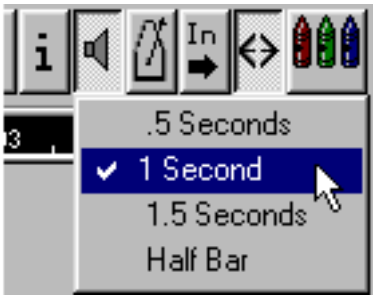
- Changing Start and End Insets.
- Setting Q-points.

If you perform one of the above actions with the Speaker icon activated, a short section of the segment will be played back, allowing you to monitor your edits. If you move the Start Inset, you will hear a short section from the Start Inset and onwards. If you move the End Inset you will hear a short section up until the End Inset.

To set the desired length of the played section, proceed like this:

1. **Hold down [Control] on the computer keyboard.**

2. **Click on the Speaker icon.**
   A small pop-up menu appears.



3. **Select one of the options on the menu.**

Editing on the Info Line

Like other editors, Audio Edit has an Info Line.

1. **Make sure the "I" button on the Status Bar is activated.**

2. **Select one, and only one, Event.**

3. **Adjust the values as described in the table below:**

Heading:	Description:
Start	Start Position. Adjusting this moves the Event.
End	End Inset. Adjusting this shortens or lengthens the Event.
QPoint	Q-point. Adjusting this moves the Q-point. See page 247.
Segment	Segment name. If you change this, this is reflected in all Events that play the Event, and in the Pool.
File	File name. This can be changed on the Info Line.

Changing Start and End Insets

Each Event has a Start and End Inset which represent the Segment start point in the audio file, and its length. Handles for adjusting these are visible in the upper and the lower corners (respectively) of the Events if Handles is ticked on the pop-up View menu.

Checking if the File Plays from the beginning

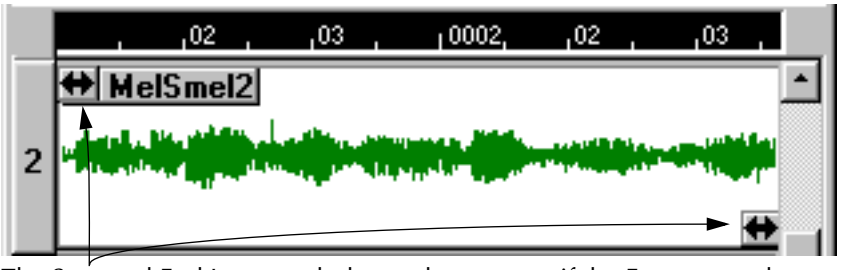
The shape of the handle indicates what the Event actually plays:

Symbol:	Description:
	If this symbol appears at the beginning of the Event, it means that the Event plays the audio file from the beginning.
	If this symbol appears at the beginning of the Event, it means that the Event plays the file from some point later than the absolute beginning of the file. The Start Inset has already been adjusted.
	If this symbol appears at the end of the Event, it means that the Event plays the audio file to its end.
	If this symbol appears at the end of the Event, it means that the Event does not play the file to its absolute end. The End Inset has already been adjusted.

- The handles do not actually have to be shown for you to move the Insets. It is sufficient to click and drag in the upper left and lower right corner, respectively.

If the Event doesn't fit in the Window

Even if the Event doesn't begin or end inside the window, the Start and End Inset symbols will be visible at the edges of the window. If you have long Events, this allows you to see the "status" of the Insets (as described above) without scrolling the view.



The Start and End Inset symbols are shown even if the Event extends across the window boundaries.

About the Inset settings

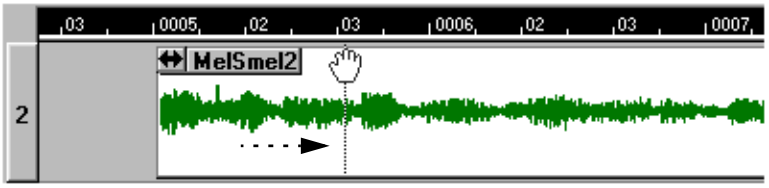
- **The Inset value is in ticks. There are 384 ticks for each beat (quarter note) which means that when you change the Insets this is the resolution you are using for the position value. However, if you need sample accurate editing of Segment Insets, you can perform this in the Pool, see page 218.**
- **The Insets do not "snap" to the closest snap value.**

Changing the Start Inset

The Start Inset is adjusted by dragging in the "upper left corner" of the waveform part of the Segment. Usually, you will point at the handle, click and drag, but the handle does not actually have to be shown (hide/show it with the View pop-up menu, if you like).

Position the pointer in the upper left corner of the waveform...

...and drag the Inset left or right.



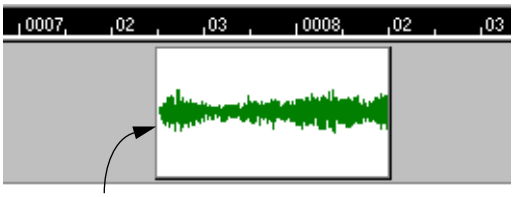
The Start Inset can also be changed numerically from the Info Line.

What happens when you Change the Start Inset?

Changing the Start Inset adjusts from which point in the file the Segment plays; it "hides" more or less of the beginning of the file. It does not move the audio in the Song. Note the difference between changing the Start Inset and moving the Event:

Before moving the Event.

Before moving the Start Inset.



After moving the Start Inset.

Changing the End Inset

This is done just as changing the Start Inset, only you click or drag in the “lower right corner” of the waveform. Changing the End Inset adjusts the Length of the Event; that is, it hides more or less of the end of the file.

The End Inset can also be set numerically on the Info Line.

Changing the Insets with a single click

If you click somewhere along the very top edge of the segment (though not on the segment name) the Start Inset will immediately be set to that position. Likewise, clicking at the bottom edge of the segment moves the End Inset.

About Snap to Zero

If the option “Snap To Zero” in the Audio menu is enabled, all offset adjustment will be followed by an automatic “search for a zero crossing”. This option will always make the resulting Segment very slightly smaller than it was when you released the mouse button. If there is absolute silence, and therefore no zero crossings in the sample for some time, Cubase will ask whether it should continue the search. For more info on Zero Crossings, see page 234.

- Group Events do not Snap to Zero.

The length of the section played back can be set using the Speaker pop-up as described on page 242.

Working with Q-Points

Introduction

Why Q-points?

Each Event has a Q-point that is used for snapping the Event to musical positions.

The concept behind this is that with audio, as opposed to MIDI, the beginning of the Event might not occur at a musical position at all, there might for example be a significant amount of silence at the beginning of the recording.

This means that snapping the beginning of the Event to a musical position normally doesn't make much sense. Hence Q-points. These allow you to specify a position in the Segment which is to be taken as its first "musically significant position", the first down-beat for instance.

When are Q-Points used?

The program uses Q-Points in the following operations:

- When moving Audio Events (the Q-Point snaps to the closest Snap value).
- When Quantizing (see page 256).
- When you drag a Segment from the Pool, into the Audio editor or the Arrangement (the Q-Point is used to snap the position of the Event to the closest snap value).

Displaying and Hiding Q-Points

The "Q" handle in an Event is only visible if "Handles" are ticked on the pop-up View menu.

Adjusting Q-points

Manually

- Snapping does normally not apply to "Q" handles, they can be put at arbitrary positions within the Segment (however it must be within the first 65000 samples).
- If you specifically want the Q-Point position to snap to the closest Snap value, hold down [Alt] while dragging it.
- You can edit the Q-Point position on the Info line. The value is in ticks counting from the Start Inset.

If you turn on the Speaker icon, a short section of the Segment, from the Q-point and onwards will play whenever you move the Q-point. This auditioning takes place at full volume. You can set the length of the section to be played back, as described on page 242.

Automatically

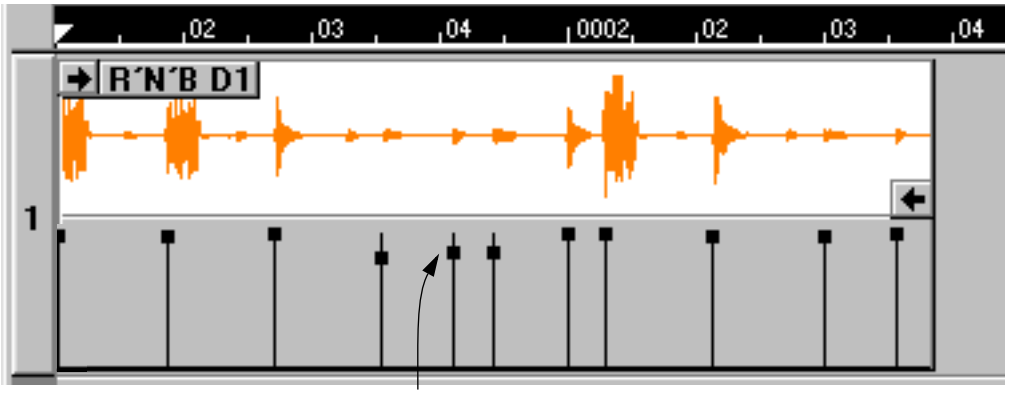
For newly created Events the Q-point is set automatically as follows:

When you do this:	The Q-point is set at:
Record with Prerecord turned on (see the Basic MIDI Recording chapter in the Getting Started book).	Exactly the point you specified for the recording to start at. However, the actual recording starts slightly early to preserve the attack (in case the performer started slightly early). See the Online Help for details about Prerecord.
Record with Prerecord off.	The nearest sensible bar or beat position.
Punch in manually.	The closest beat.
Drag Audio into the Editor.	The nearest sensible bar or beat position.
Split an Event with the Scissors	The Segment that contains the *existing* Q-point after the split is not affected. The other Segment gets a Q-point at the nearest sensible bar or beat position.
Drag Start and End Insets beyond the existing Q-point	The nearest sensible bar or beat position.

Adding and Editing Match Points

What are Match Points?

Match points, or M-Points, are “markers” within an Audio Event, used to indicate significant positions in your Audio file. Furthermore, they contain information about the “velocity” of the audio at the positions they indicate. Match Points are used for comparing and combining the timing of recorded audio with the timing of recorded MIDI material in various ways. Therefore, the goal is most often to get M-Points on all “beats” in the recorded audio. The picture below shows a drum pattern, with M-Points displayed. Note that the horizontal positions of the Match Points coincide with the peaks in the audio - the “beats”.



The velocity values of the Match Points (indicated by the vertical position of the black squares) correspond to the level of each audio peak.

Match points have the following uses:

- Matching tempo to audio.
- Matching audio to tempo.
- Making groove templates by extracting timing and velocity from recorded audio.
- Match quantizing MIDI Parts to Audio Parts, Audio Parts to MIDI Parts or even Audio Parts to other Audio Parts (after using “Snip at M-points”).

● For more information on the usage of M-Points, see the chapter Matching Audio and Tempo in this Audio addendum to the manual.

Displaying the M-Points

1. **Pull down the View pop-up menu.**

2. **If the Dynamic Events item is not ticked, select it.**
   This will make the lower halves of the Events show dynamic data (M-Points, Volume or Pan).

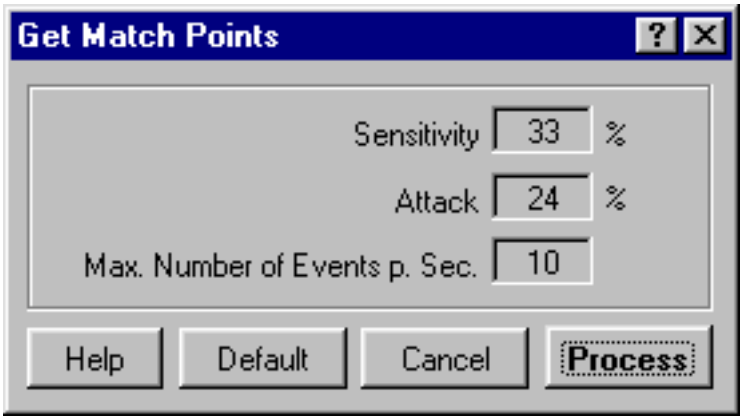
3. **Pull down the pop-up menu to the right of the Ed Solo button menu and select M-Points.**

Adding M-Points Automatically

Cubase VST can automatically analyse the Audio Event for you, find the “important” positions and create M-Points:

1. **Select the Event.**

2. **Pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Get M-Points.**
   A dialog box appears, where you can make various settings for how the Match Points should be calculated (described on page 433).



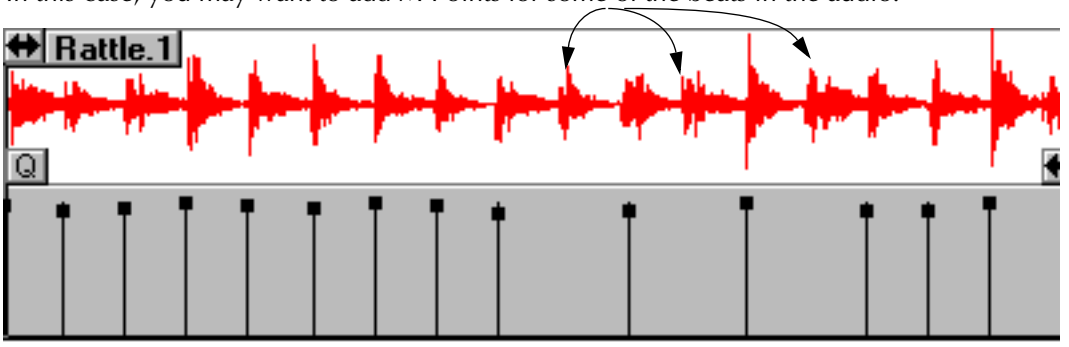
   For now, click on the Default button. This will make the program use default settings, which quite often work well.

3. **Click Process.**
   Match Points are calculated and added to the Audio Event.

Adding M-Points manually

You may also add M-Points manually, if for example you find that the automatic M-Point detection doesn’t find all the “important” beats in the audio.

In this case, you may want to add M-Points for some of the beats in the audio.



1. **Set Snap to a value of your liking.**
   This affects on which positions you can place M-Points, just like when adding Events in a MIDI editor. On many occasions it may be best to turn Snap off, to be able to freely move created M-Points.

2. **Select the Pencil tool.**

3. **Hold down [Alt] on the computer keyboard and click where you want the M-Point(s).**

Editing M-Points

Sometimes you may want to move Match Points to make them better coincide with the beats in the audio. It may for example happen that the automatic Match Point detection positions an M-Point too early, due to “double” drum hits, diffuse sounds etc. If that is the case, you can easily move the Match Points:

- **If you want to move an existing Match Point or change the vertical position of the black square (i.e. the velocity value), click on it with the Pencil and drag it up/down or sideways.**
  The Snap value applies for which positions you can move the value to. Since the audio material is probably not perfectly correlated to the playback tempo, it is often best to turn Snap off when moving M-Points.

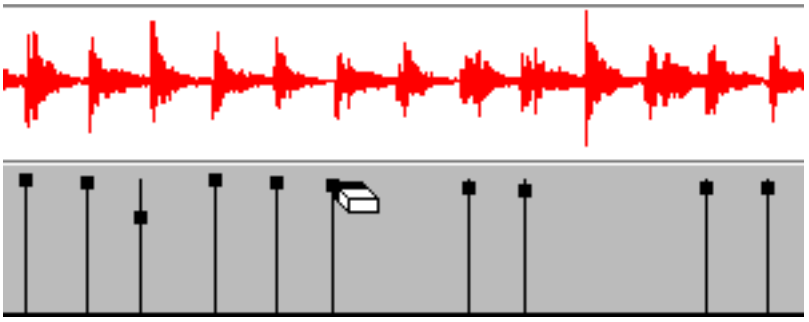
- **If you want to make sure the Match Point isn’t moved left/right, hold down [Shift].**
  This also makes the value change in smaller steps.

Deleting M-Points

If you find that the Match Point detection finds too many M-Points in the audio, you may want to delete some of them:

1. **Select the Eraser tool.**

2. **Click on the black square of the Match Point you want to delete.**



Moving Audio Events

By Dragging

Audio Events are moved just like other objects in Cubase:

1. **Select the Arrow Tool.**

2. **Select all Events you want to move.**

3. **Press and hold the mouse with the arrow pointer over one of the selected Events (not in the handles) and move the mouse.**
   The mouse box shows you where the Q-point of the first selected and dragged Event will wind up when you release the button.

4. **If you want to restrict movement to horizontal or vertical only, hold down [Shift] while dragging.**

5. **Release the mouse button, and the selected Events are moved to the new position.**

   The Snap function applies, positioning the Event so that its Q-point gets aligned with the closest Snap value.

Between Lanes

- **If you are editing a single-channel or stereo Track, moving the Event to another Lane has no effect on playback. Still, you might want to organize your view of the Events, by moving Events between Lanes.**
- **If you are editing one Track set to channel "Any" you can use this feature to set which channel an Event plays back on.**
  Check the channel indicator on the left side of the window to find out which channel each Lane plays back on.

- **If you are editing a number of single channel or stereo Tracks simultaneously, moving Events between Lanes means you are moving the Events between Tracks.**
  You can identify the Tracks by which channel they each are set to, as described in the previous paragraph.

- **If you hold down [Shift] while dragging, moving is restricted to vertically or horizontally only (depending on in which direction you dragged first).**
  This allows you to move the sound to another Lane without affecting Start position. See above for an introduction to this.

Moving By “Kicking”

You can “Kick” an Event one Snap value at a time, forward or backwards in time.

1. **Select the hand from the Toolbox.**

2. **Set the Snap value to the distance you want to move the Event, with each “kick”.**

3. **Position the pointer over the Event you want to move.**

4. **To move the Event forward, click on its first half. To move the Event backwards, click on the second half.**

Duplicating and Repeating Events

Duplicating

There are two slightly different ways of creating new Events:

- Creating a “real copy” also creates a new Segment, which means the two Events are totally independent. That is, if you for example change the Start Inset of one of them (in the Editor or in the Pool), the other is not affected.
- A “ghost copy” uses the same Segment as the Event it was created from. More details follow below and in separate chapters:

Creating Real Copies (New Segments)

1. **Select the Event(s) you want to duplicate.**

2. **Hold down [Alt] and drag to the new position.**
Everything else is as when moving, see above.

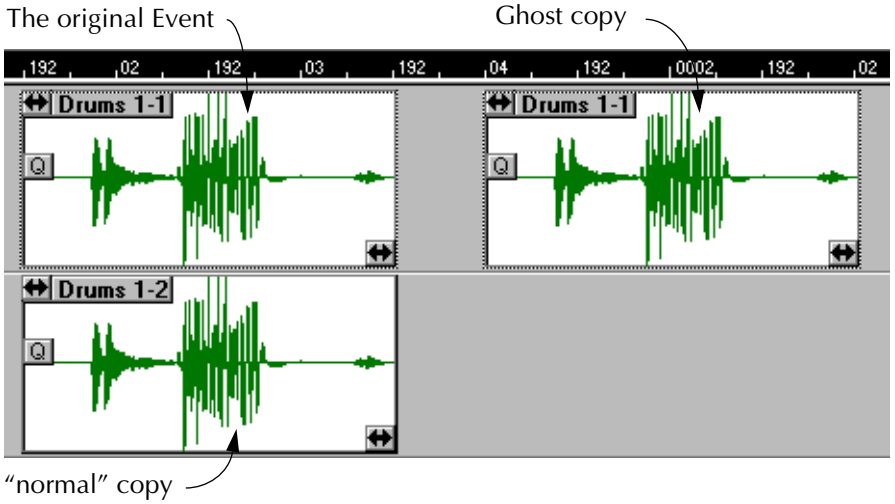
3. **Preferably rename the new Segment, to avoid confusion in the Pool (see page 243).**

Creating Ghost Copies (No new Segments)

1. **Select the Event(s) you want to duplicate.**

2. **Hold down [Control] and drag to the new position.**
   Everything else is as when moving, see above.

   The fact that the new Event is a “ghost” copy, is indicated by a dotted outline. Please note that the original Event also gets a dotted outline, once a ghost copy is made.



About Editing Ghost Events

- **All ghost copies that are playing the same Segment have dotted outlines.** The program doesn't differentiate between the “original” and the ghost, they are all considered ghost copies of each other.

- **If you make any changes to the Segment in the Pool, this will equally affect all Ghost Events that play this Segment.**

- **However, if you make changes to the Start and End Insets of one of the ghost Events in the editor, this Event will be turned into a real Event, and a new Segment will be created for it.**

- **If you specifically want to make Start and End Inset Changes that will affect all the Ghosts that play the same Segment, hold down the [Control] key while editing any of those Events.**

● Read more about working with Ghost copies in the chapter “Making the Most of the Event/Segment Relationship”.

Repeating Events

To repeat Audio Events, use the Repeat command on the pop-up Do menu. This works just as the Repeat command in any of the MIDI Editors, see the chapter “The MIDI Editors - General Information” in the main Cubase manual.

Repeating Any Section of Audio

By combining a few commands in the Audio editor, you can repeat any section of audio:

1. **Set up the Loop so that it plays the section to be repeated.**

2. **Use Snip Loop (on the pop-up Do menu) so that the Events that fall inside the Loop are split at the Loop Start and End points.**

3. **Select the Events to be repeated (those inside the Loop).**

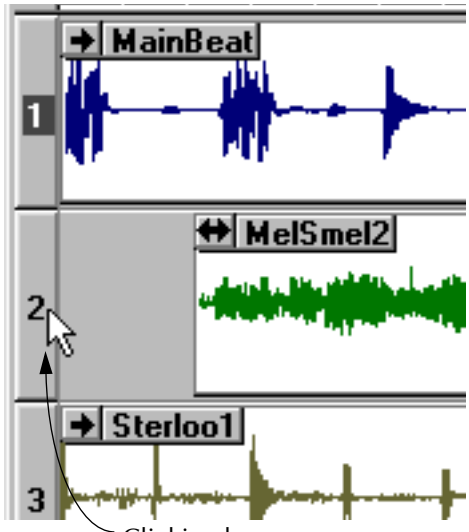
4. **If you want to delete the snippets of audio outside the loop, select Keep from the pop-up Do menu.**
   Only the selected Events are kept.

5. **Select Repeat from the Do pop-up menu to repeat the selected Events.**
   You may repeat Events to fill the Cycle, to the end of the Part etc., depending on what the situation requires.

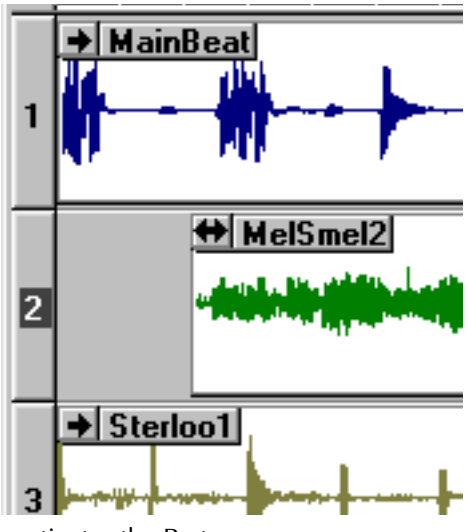
Using Cut, Copy and Paste

Cut, Copy and Paste can be used to move and duplicate Events just as in any MIDI Editor. However, since Pasting in a Cubase Editor always adds Events to the active Part, there is one additional thing to keep in mind if you are editing several Parts at the same time:

- **To determine which Part to Paste into, click in the Lane Info field for the Part.**



Clicking here...



...activates the Part.

The currently Active Part is indicated in the Editor's window title and by a black rectangle in the Lane Info fields.

Quantizing Audio Events

Quantizing Audio Parts allows you to adjust the positions of your events, just like you adjust the positions of MIDI notes.

Event Position Quantizing vs “True” Audio Quantize

There are two type of audio quantize.

- The first type moves the events to desired positions, without affecting the actual audio file. This is described below.
- The second type processes and changes the audio recording permanently. .

Even Position quantizing

There is one big difference between quantizing Audio Event positions, compare to MIDI events: It is not the “start point” of each Event that is used to decide what the new position should be, but the “Q-point”. Note that quantizing moves the whole event; it does not affect the timing of the recording within the file (for ways of quantizing the actual material in a recording file, see page 259 and the chapter “Matching Audio and Tempo”). Quantizing the start of a long Audio Event might therefore be pretty pointless. To make quantization affect positions within the recording, split it into several shorter Events before you perform the quantization. There are two principal ways to do this:

- **Use the Scissors tool to manually split the Audio Event in suitable places.** This may work fine if the Audio Event contains several phrases or sounds, and you only want to quantize the beginning of these individual phrases/sounds.

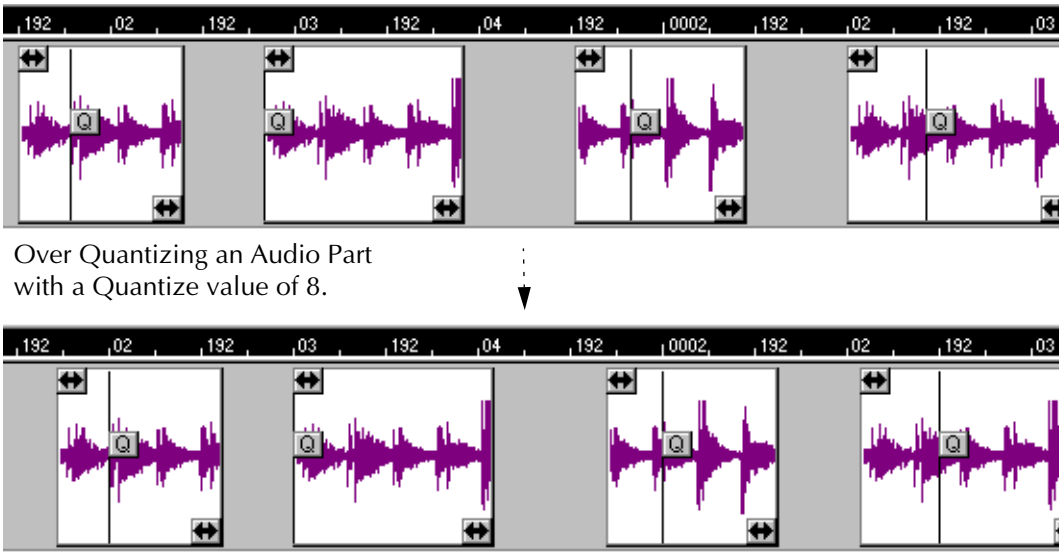
- **Create Match Points (see page 249) and select Snip at M-Points from the Do pop-up menu.**
  This will split the Event at each Match Point. Use this method if you have audio material with short, well separated sounds, like a clean drum loop. You may for example want to tighten up an inexactly played hi-hat pattern by quantizing the beats to 16th notes.

- If you try the above methods with a less than satisfying result, check out page 259 and the chapter “Matching Audio and Tempo”) for information about permanent quantization of the actual audio file.

There are three quantization methods that can be applied to audio:

Over Quantize (without processing)

This moves the Events in the selected Parts, so that their Q-points line up with the selected Quantize value. See page 233.



Over Quantizing an Audio Part with a Quantize value of 8.

Groove Quantize

This moves the Events so that the Q-points line up with the “timing map” in the selected Groove. For basic information about Groove Quantize, see the Getting Started book.

Match Quantize

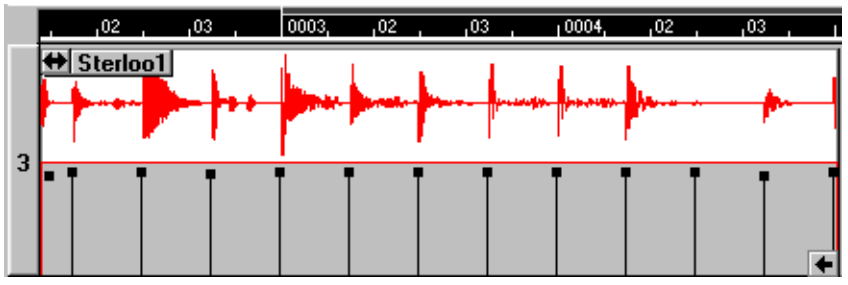
This allows you to:

- Apply the timing of a MIDI Part to an audio Part.
- Apply the timing of an audio Part to a MIDI Part.
- Apply the timing of an audio Part to another audio Part.

For basic information on Match Quantize of MIDI Parts, see the Getting Started book. Working with Audio Parts is different in that it is all based on Match Points. Proceed as follows:

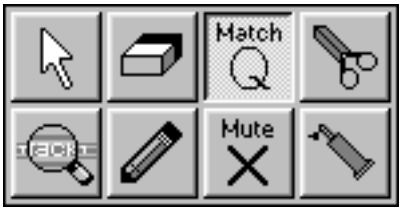
Using an Audio Part to Quantize a MIDI Part

1. **Create Match Points for the Events in the Audio Part, as described on page 249.**

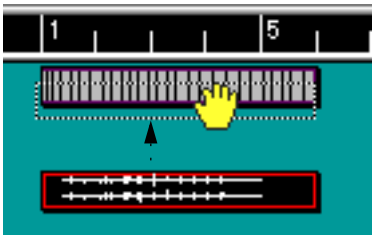


Match Points in the Audio Editor.

2. **In the Arrange Window, select the Match Quantize tool.**



3. **Drag the Audio Part and release it on top of the MIDI Part.**



A dialog appears, asking if you want to include the accents (Match Points velocity values). The options are the same as when you Match Quantize with MIDI Parts (see the main Cubase manual).

4. **Select one of the options in the dialog box.**
The Events in the MIDI Part are quantized to the positions of the Match Points in the Audio Events.

Using a MIDI Part to Quantize an Audio Part

1. **Create Match Points for the Events in the Audio Part, as described on page 249.**

2. **For each Event in the Part, pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Snip at M-Points.**
The Audio Events are split at the positions of the M-Points. This is important, since the Quantize function cannot change the actual audio, only move the start points of individual Audio Events!

3. **In the Arrange Window, select the Match Quantize tool.**

4. **Drag the MIDI Part and release it on top of the Audio Part.**
A dialog box appears with the text “Dynamic Time Compression?”. If you click “Yes” the Audio file will be quantized permanently as described on page 442, using the MIDI Part as rhythmical reference.

5. **If you do not want to permently process the file, click “No”.**
The start points of the Events in the Audio Part will be quantized to the positions of the Events in the MIDI Part. Please note that if the gaps between the Events are too big, the process may not give the desired musical result.

Using an Audio Part to Quantize another Audio Part

This is a combination of the two above procedures:

1. **Create Match Points for the Events in *both* Audio Parts, as described on page 249.**

2. **For each Event in *the Part you want to Quantize*, pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Snip at M-Points.**
   The Audio Events are split at the positions of the M-Points.

3. **In the Arrange Window, select the Match Quantize tool.**

4. **Drag the "source" Audio Part and release it on top of the "destination" Audio Part.**
   As in the previous example, a dialog box appears, asking if you want to quantize permanently. If you click "Yes" the Audio file will be quantized permanently as described on page 442.

5. **If you do not want to permanently process the file, click "No".**
   The start points of the Events in the "destination" Audio Part will be quantized to the positions of the M-Points in the Audio Events in the other Part.

Undo Quantize

The Undo Quantize item on the Functions menu does not apply to Audio. However, you can Undo the last Quantize operation, as with any other operation, by using Undo on the Edit menu.

"True" Quantizing (by Time Stretching)

As described in the chapter "Matching Audio and Tempo" there are very advanced ways of processing an audio file, to make it fit with other material. However, you may also permantly quantize an audio file without leaving the Audio editor.

- Since this process permanently alters your audio files, you may want to make a copy of the file before proceeding! See the Audio Pool chapter for instructions on how to duplicate files.

---

1. **Select the Event to be quantized, and insert Match Points using the Get M-Points function on the Do pop-up menu.**
   This creates Match Points on the musically "important" positions in the Audio Event, as described on page 492 in this chapter. You may also add Match Points manually using the Pencil tool.

2. **Set the Quantize value as usual.**

- If there are great differences between the spacing of the M-Points and the Quantize value, this gives rise to very large Time Stretch factors. Since this may cause undesired results, try to use a Quantize value that matches the spacing of the M-Points fairly well.

---

3. **With the Event selected, pull down the Do pop-up menu and select "Quantize at M-Points".**
   This instructs the program to move each M-Point in the Audio Event to the closest Quantize position, and timestretch the material in between.

   The program works through the audio file, and each section of the file is time processed to fit between the corresponding Match Points. Depending on the length of the audio file, the processing may take a while, during which a progress box is shown.

4. **When this is done, your Audio Event will play a new segment, quantized according to the set value.**

More advanced Quantizing methods

For even more advanced Quantizing options, see the chapter Matching Audio and Tempo.

Deleting Events

Audio Events are deleted just as Parts in the Arrange window or Events in a MIDI Editor.

- Deleting an Event does not delete its Segment from the Audio Pool.

Using the Eraser to Delete Events

Clicking on an Event with the Eraser tool will delete it.

Using Keep to Delete Events

To delete all Events but the ones selected, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the Events you want to keep.**
   As in the MIDI editors, the To pop-up menu determines which Events will be affected. If you want to be sure only those Events will be kept, that you have selected, the To pop-up menu should show "All".

2. **Select "Keep" from the pop-up Do menu.**
   All Events are deleted, except those indicated by the To pop-up menu and your selection.

Using the Menu or Keyboard to Delete Events

1. **Select the Events.**

2. **Press [Delete] or [Backspace] or select Delete Events on the Edit menu.**

Permanently deleting an Audio File

To delete an Event and its audio file from disk, hold down [Control] and press [Backspace].

- This operation will permanently delete the referenced audio file from your hard disk, and can not be undone.

Working with Grouped Events

If two Events are grouped, a number of operations that you carry out on one of them are applied equally to all. Examples of such operations are moving, duplicating, adjusting Insets etc.

Grouping Events

1. **Select the Events that should make up the Group.**

2. **Select "Group" from the Audio editor's Do pop-up menu.**

Ungrouping

1. **Select the grouped Event.**

2. **Select "Ungroup" from the Audio editor Do pop-up menu.**

● To ensure the timing relationship is kept unaffected by editing, try to keep recordings that were made together grouped. If you have to Ungroup, make absolutely sure you don't edit one of the channels separately or you'll disturb the timing/phase relationship.

Operations on Grouped Events

Some operations are done a little bit differently on Grouped Events than on regular ones. Below follows a list.

About Snap to Zero

Snap to Zero (see page 234) is not applied to Groups.

Selecting, Moving, Cutting and Pasting, etc.

- **When you click on one Grouped Event, all Events in the Group get selected.**
- **To select one of the Events in a Group, use the cursor keys instead of the mouse.**
  The only reason to do this is to be able to edit on the Info Line, see below.

- **The following operations affect the entire group, as if it was one Event:**
- Moving (using the arrow pointer or the kicker)
- Duplicating
- Quantizing
- Cut, Copy and Paste
- Deleting
- Muting with the Mute Tool.

- **If you move, duplicate or Quantize, the Q-point of the top (or first) Event is used for determining where the Event should wind up.**

Changing Q-Points and Start and End Insets

- **If the grouped Events start at the same position, the Start Inset and Q-Points will be set identically for all Events in the Group, when you adjust it for one of them.**
- **Likewise, if the Events end at the same position, the End Inset is adjusted simultaneously for all.**
- **If the Events don't start at the same position, Start Inset, End Inset and Q-point are set individually for each Event in the Group.**

Splitting

If you split a Group with the Scissors tool or the Snip Loop item on the Do pop-up menu, the Group will be split into new Groups.

Editing on the Info Line

- **To use the Info Line, only one Event must be selected.**
  This means you have to select the Event with the cursor keys, since clicking selects the entire Group.

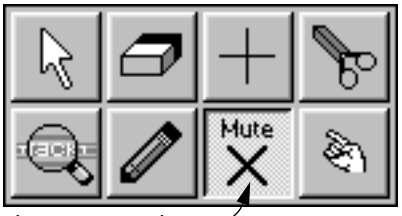
Using Export Segments

- **Export Segments only work on one Event at a time.**
  To use this function on multi-channel material, first ungroup, then apply the Function and finally Group again.

Groups and Channel Settings

To make Grouped Events in a multi channel recording play back on separate channels, you must have the Track set to channel "Any". If not, only one of the Events will play. See page 12.

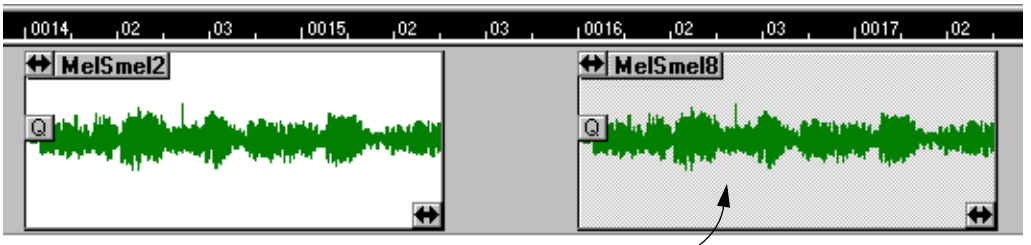
Muting Events



The Mute Tool

Using the Mute Tool

Using the Mute tool in the Toolbox you can mute an Event. This silences it until you unmute it again.



A Muted Event

Erase Muted

This function, found on the Do pop-up menu permanently deletes all the Events that are currently muted. This is a quick way of “cleaning up” a Part after editing.

- Deleting Muted Events does not delete Segments. Neither does it erase any files from your hard disk.

Splitting Events

Using the Scissors Tool

To split one Event up into more, proceed as follows:

1. **Decide if you want the split to happen on a zero crossing or not by checking or unchecking "Snap to Zero" on the Audio menu.**
   See page 234 for details.

2. **Set the Snap value as desired.**
   As always, this determines the "smallest" note value where you can apply the split.

3. **Select the Scissors from the Toolbox.**

4. **Click on the Event.**
   The Event is split into two.

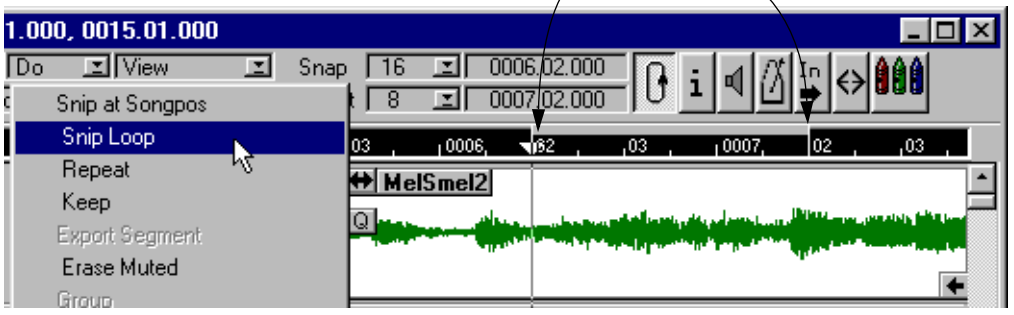
Deleting while splitting

To automatically delete the left or right resulting Event, hold down [Alt] or [Control] respectively when you split the original Segment.

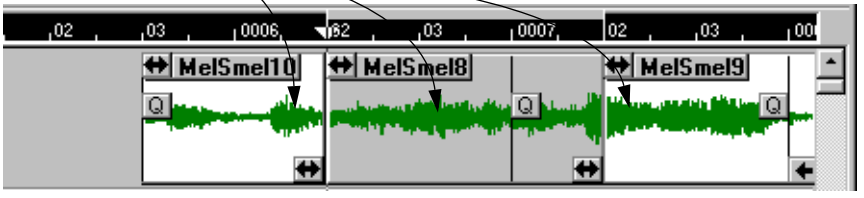
Using Snip Loop

This command, on the Do pop-up menu, splits all Events at the positions of the Left and Right Loop position. If you want to split several Events in one place only, set the Loop End point to the same position as the Loop Start.

The Loop positions indicate where the Event(s) will be split.



The Event(s) will be split into three (or two if the Left and Right Loop positions are the same).



Creating Crossfades, Fade Ins and Fade Outs

The Crossfade function allows you to create a smooth fade between two sections of audio. It also allows you to add a fade-in or out to only one Event. It does so by creating one or more new files which contain a new portion of audio – the actual (cross)fade.

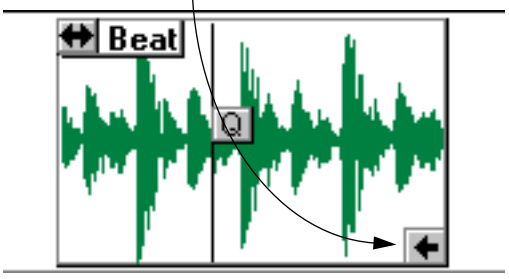
Events which play these crossfade files are then inserted into the Audio editor at the correct position. The Segment settings of the Events are changed, but the original *files* are not affected by the operation.

Which Events can be faded?

The fades are created by “unveiling” sections in the audio file which are currently not played. This means that:

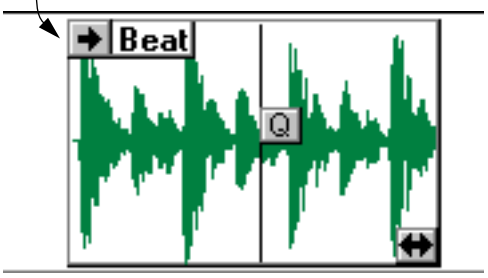
- **It is not possible to create a fade *from* the end of one file, because there is no audio to fade after the end of the file.**

The file ends here. You cannot fade out after this point.



- **It is not possible to create a fade *to* the beginning of a file, because there is no audio before the beginning of the file.**

The file starts here. You cannot fade in before this point.



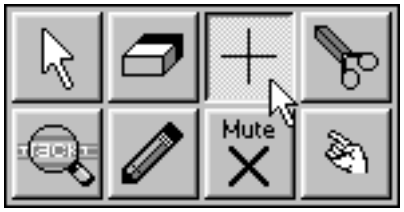
To check if there is any audio to fade to/from at the beginning/end of a file, check the Inset handles, as described in the main documentation.

Creating a Crossfade

The two Events you crossfade between must play on the same audio channel(s). They should probably either be positioned edge to edge or overlap.

- It is possible to crossfade between Events with a gap between them, but it might not create the desired result. If the program can't make anything sensible out of the selection of Events you have made, it will tell you so.

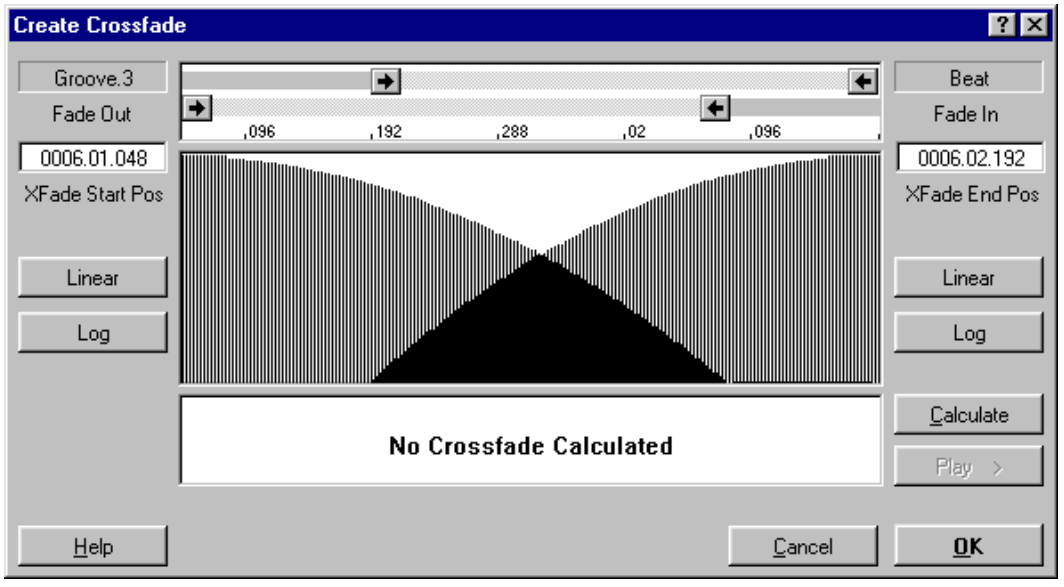
1. **Select the Crossfade tool from the toolbox.**



2. **Position the pointer in the Event you want to fade *from*, at approximately the position where you want the crossfade to start.**

3. **Click and keep the mouse button pressed while you drag to the right.**
   A dotted outline appears, indicating the crossfade area.

4. **Release the mouse button in the Event you want to fade *to*, at approximately the position where you want the crossfade to end.**
   The following dialog box appears.



The Crossfade dialog. The display shows how the two Events will be "mixed". The two pairs of arrows above the display indicate the start and end points for the fade "zones" in the two Events.

5. **Drag the lower set of arrows to set the start and end points for the fade of the first Event.**
   If you want the fade to start earlier than you indicated when dragging with the Crossfade tool, you can numerically change the value in the XFade Start Pos value box. You cannot go past the start/end points of the entire Event.

6. **Drag the upper set of arrows to set the start and end points for the fade of the second file.**
   If you want the fade to end later than you indicated when dragging with the Crossfade tool, you can numerically change the value in the XFade End Pos value box. You will not be able to go past the start/end points of the entire Event.

7. **Use the mouse to draw the shape of the fade in and fade out curves.**
   Drawing in the overlapping area only affects the start segment (the fade out). If you want to change the overlapping part of the fade curve for the end segment (the fade in), start dragging to the right of the overlap and keep dragging to the left.

8. **As an alternative to drawing, you can use the buttons on each side of the curve display to select "preset" linear or logarithmic curve types for the fade in/fade out curves.**
   The logarithmic curves will create the most natural fade.

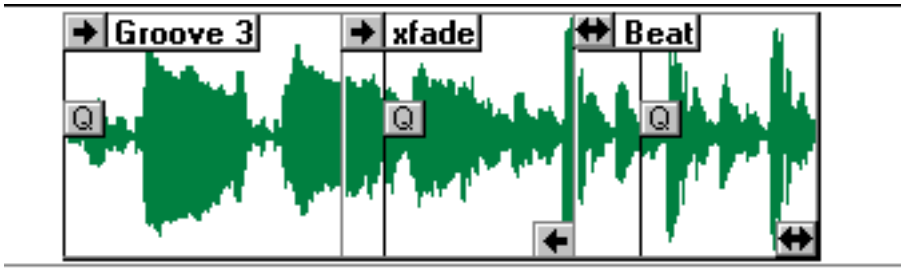
9. **Click Calculate.**
   A preview of the crossfade gets created, which you can see in the box below the curve display.

● Is is quite possible to introduce clipping (levels higher than the system can handle) with inappropriate fade curves. If this happens, the program will tell you the number of Clips detected. Adjust the curves and Calculate again!

---

10. **Check the fade using the Play button.**

11. **When you have a fade you are happy with, click the OK button.**
    A new Event appears on top of the two you were fading between. This Event plays a new file which contains the actual crossfade.



The created crossfade file(s) are placed in a folder on your recording hard disk, named "Songname_Xfades" (where "Songname" is the name of the current Song).

12. **To ensure the three Events retain their timing relationship even after editing, they are automatically Grouped.**

Creating Fade Ins and Outs

A method very similar to the one above can be used to create a fade-in or out from only one file:

1. **Select the Crossfade tool.**

2. **Position the pointer in the Event you want to fade, at approximately the position where you want the fade-in/out to start.**
   You cannot start or end a fade outside of the start/end-points of the actual Event.

3. **Click and keep the mouse button pressed while you drag to the right.**
   A dotted line appears, indicating the fade area.

4. **Release the mouse button at approximately the position where you want the fade-in/out to end.**

5. **Set the length and shape of the fade-in/out in the Crossfade dialog box that appears.**
   See the Creating Crossfade description on the previous pages.

6. **Click the OK button.**
   A new Event appears on top of (and grouped with) the one you had. This Event plays a new file which contains the actual fade.

Crossfading by Overlapping Segments

● This operation can be performed on multiple, Grouped Segments, such as split stereo files, provided they share the same start/end points.

It is also possible to automatically create a crossfade by overlapping two segments. Proceed as follows:

1. **Select the Crossfade tool.**

2. **Press [Control] and drag one of the Segments so that they overlap.**

3. **Release the mouse button.**
   The Crossfade dialog appears, with the Crossfade range determined by the amount of overlap between the segments.

Using Cycled Recording for assembling a “perfect” take

When you record several laps in a Cycle, only one Audio file is created. However, this is split up into a number of Segments (one for each lap) which are “stacked” in the Audio Editor. Since the Segments are all on the same Track, this normally means that only one of them will play back (the top one). However, you can use this feature to assemble a “perfect” take from all the different Segments.

Let’s say you have a chorus and you want to record a few different takes of vocals for it, to later assemble snippets from each take into one “perfect” recording.

Proceed as follows:

1. **Set up the Left and Right Locator to encompass the section you want to record.**

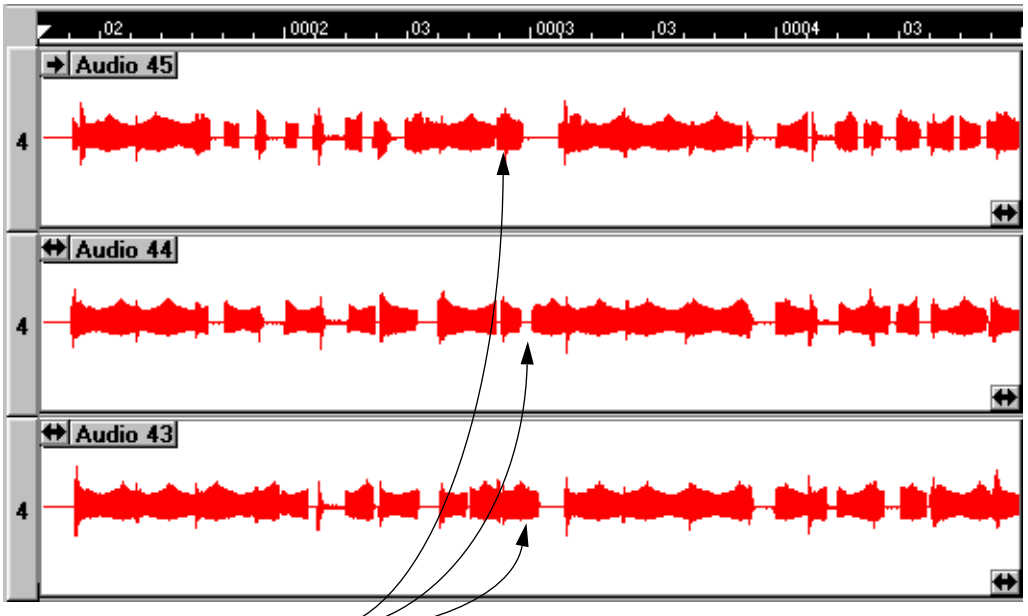
2. **Activate Cycle on the Transport Bar.**

3. **Activate Recording from “Stop Mode”.**

4. **Record for as many laps as you desire.**

5. **Stop recording.**

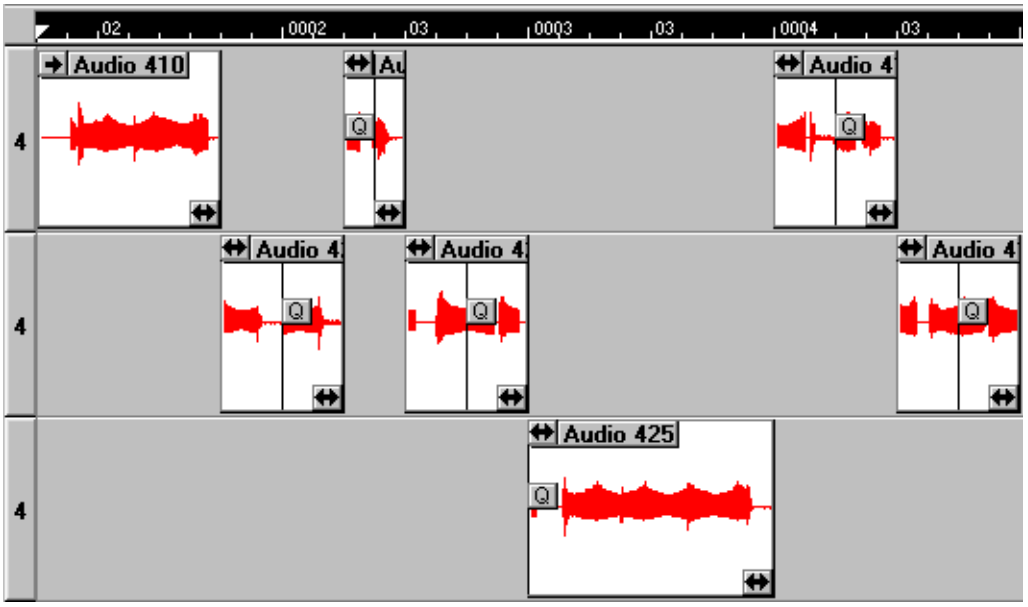
6. **Open the Track in the Audio Editor.**



3 takes (cycle laps).

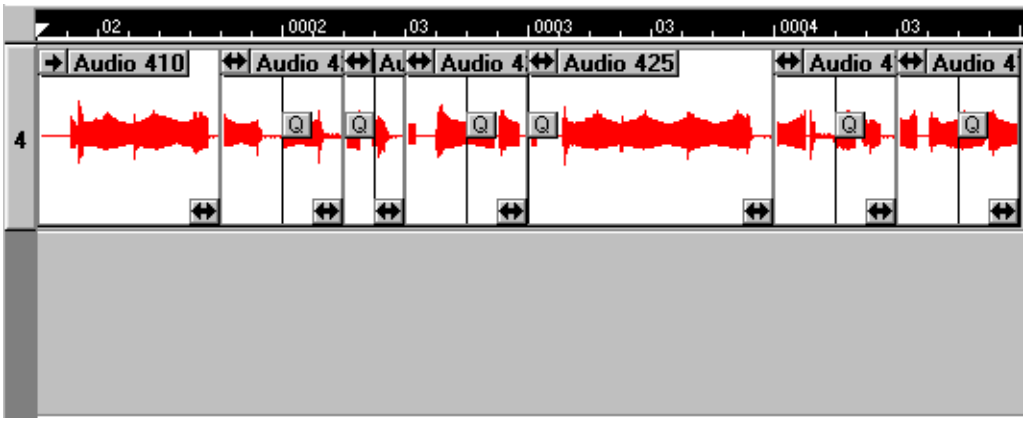
You will now have all the takes stacked above each other. Since the Track plays back on one channel only you will only hear one of them at a time. But, you can consecutively mute each one to find which pieces you want to keep from each.

7. **Use the Masking, Splitting, Muting and Delete functions to assemble one single take out of all the ones you originally had.**



The same recording, after having split the Audio Events at appropriate places and deleted the unused sections.

- **To view the reassembled recording as it is played back, pull down the View pop-up menu and select By Output.**
  This will show all Events on the same lane.



Fitting Audio Events to the Loop

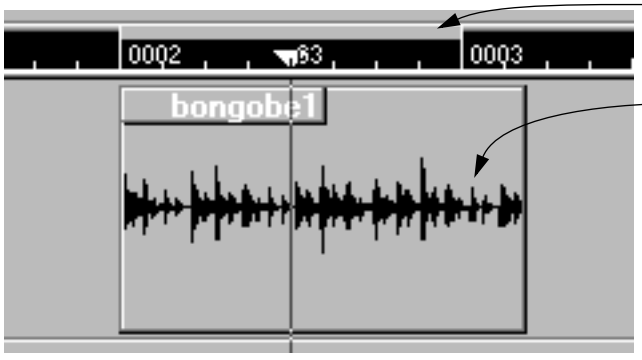
You may have an audio file with an inherent tempo that doesn't fit the current Arrangement. Cubase VST then allows you to adapt either the audio file to the Arrangement (by applying time correction) or the Arrangement to the audio file (by adjusting the tempo). Proceed as follows:

1. **Import the file into the Arrangement.**

2. **Open the Audio Editor and adjust the Start and End Insets of the Event so that it exactly fits some specified "musical" length, for example an even number of bars.**
   One good way of doing this is to use the Loop playback feature in the Wave editor. What you are trying to achieve here is that the audio file, when played in isolation, is of exactly the correct length. However, it will not fit in with the metronome or other events in the Arrangement.

3. **Move the event so that it starts at some sensible musical position, for example the downbeat of a bar.**

4. **Set up a loop of the same "musical" length as the event.**
   Since the two are currently not playing in the same tempo, the "graphical" length of the loop will not be the same as that of the event.


0002
0003
bongobe1
Here, the loop is set to a length of one bar.
This drum loop is also one bar long, but doesn't fit the current tempo.

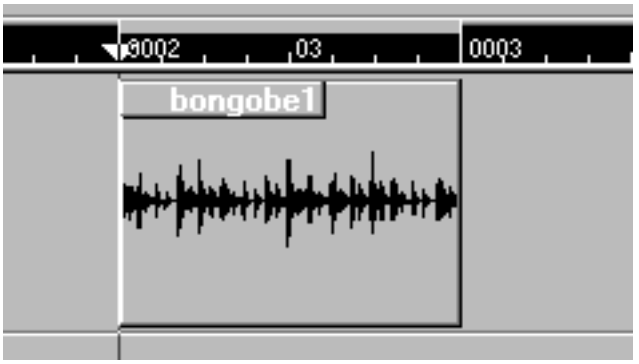
The event and Loop set up correctly.

5. **Select the audio event, and only that event.**

6. **Select "Fit Event To Loop Range" from the Do pop-up menu.**
   You are presented with a dialog that allows to choose between two options:

- Tempo: This will adjust the tempo of the Arrangement so that it fits the event. If you have the Master Track activated, a tempo change is added at the Loop start.
- Audio: This will time correct the part of the audio file that the event plays, so that it fits the current tempo. For more info on time correction, see page 281.

7. Click either, depending on your preference.
The event now fits the Arrangement.



The same event, after applying time correction.

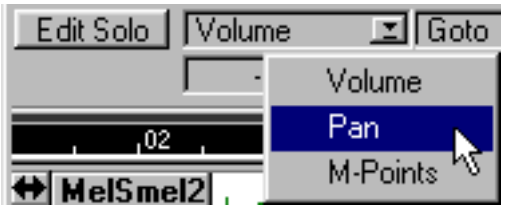
Changing the Volume and Panning of an Event

About this Section - What Volume/Pan am I changing?

In this section we deal with the “mechanics” of adding the Volume/Pan changes. You will learn how to change the volume and panning of individual Events and how to create dynamic changes of the same parameters.The relation between the volume you put in for an Event, the volume control in the Mixer window and the volume control in the Monitor window is described in detail on page 322.

Displaying the Volume/Pan Curve

For the Events to display any Dynamic data, the Dynamic Events item on the View pop-up menu must be ticked. To select whether volume or pan should be shown in the Events, pull down the pop-up menu immediately right of the Edit Solo button and select the corresponding option.



The third option, M-Points, is described on page 249.

Event/Segment relation for Volume/Pan Curves

Even though we are talking about volume and pan for Events here, in fact the dynamic data affects the *segment* that the Event plays. This means that if you have Ghost Events (that play the same segment), any changes you do to the volume/pan curve for one of the Events, will be reflected in the others.

Changing the overall Volume/Pan for an Event

Please note that the Volume and Pan curves differ a bit when it comes to default values:

- **If you haven’t yet edited the Volume curve for an Event, it consists of one single straight line.**
  That is, the volume is constant for the entire length of the Event. The default value is 0.0 dB.

- **For Pan, there is no default value!**
  This means, that if you haven’t yet edited the Pan curve for an Event, there is no curve shown at all. Instead the Panning set for the channel in the Monitor window is used. As soon as you insert a Pan value in the Dynamic Events display, a Pan curve is created.

To change the volume/panning, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the Pencil from the Toolbox.**

2. **If you want to make fine adjustments, press and hold [Shift].**

3. **Click on a Volume/Pan handle (the small breakpoint squares) and drag up/down.**
   A value label appears, indicating the Volume (in dB) or Pan position (again, if you haven't yet edited the Pan curve for the Event, you have to create a new Pan curve first - see below).

- The volume curve ranges from 0.0 dB down to –infinity. If you need to go above unity gain (amplify the sound), use the Monitor mixer faders (which can be automated using the Write function; see page 324).

Creating Volume/Pan Curves

Adding new points to the curve

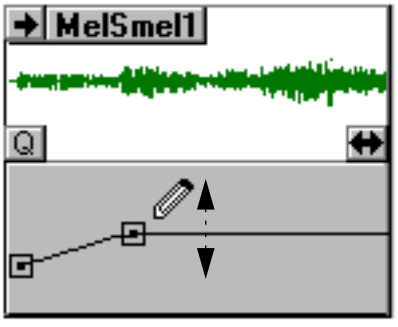
Adding points ("breakpoints") to the curve is done in a way similar to editing controller data in the editor:

1. **Set the Snap value as desired.**

2. **Select the Pencil.**

3. **Hold down [Alt] (and [Shift] if desired, see previous page).**

4. **Click somewhere in the "curve area" or press the mouse button and drag up down to find the right point.**



Editing points

- **If you want to move or change the vertical position of an existing "breakpoint", click on it with the Pencil and drag it up/down or sideways.**
  The Snap value applies for which positions you can move the value to.

- **If you want to make sure the breakpoint isn't moved left/right, hold down [Shift]. As described above, this also makes the value change in smaller steps.**

Applying the same Curve to all Grouped Events

If you have a number of Grouped events, you might want to give them all the same curve:

1. **Select the Pencil from the Toolbox.**

2. **Hold down [Control].**
   You might also want to hold down **[Alt]** (to create new breakpoints) and/or [Shift] (to restrict movement to vertical), as described above.

3. **Edit a breakpoint or input a new to one of the Events.**
   The entire curve is now copied to all the Events in the Group.

Deleting Volume Pan/Points

- **To delete a "breakpoint", click on it with the Eraser tool.**

Making an Event Play another Segment

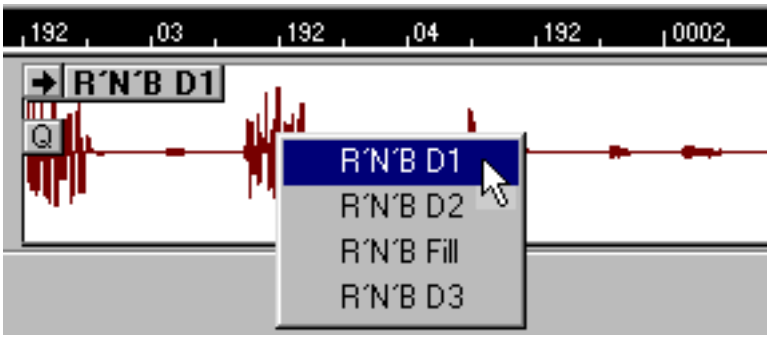
You can set which Segment an Event plays. Use this to make an already positioned Event play back another sound.

Please note that you are restricted to selecting segments from within the same file as the Event now plays.

With any type of Event

To make any one Event play another segment, proceed as follows:

1. **Hold down [Control] and [Alt] and click on an Event.**
   A pop-up menu shows a list of all the available Segments in the audio file, with the one now used by the Event highlighted.



2. **Select any Segment from the list.**
   If the Segment you select is already played by an Event, the Event you are working with will become a Ghost Event (shown with a dotted outline).

With Ghost Events

To make all Ghost Events that play the same segment play another segment instead, proceed as follows:

1. **Hold down [Control], [Shift] and [Alt] and click on an Event.**

2. **Select any Segment from the list.**

Exporting Events into Files

Export Segment, on the Do pop-up menu, allows you to save the Segment that an Event plays, as a separate audio file.

1. **Select the Event.**

2. **Select Export Segment.**

3. **In the file dialog that appears, specify a name and position for the file.**

21

Processing Audio Files

Introduction

A number of processing functions specifically for audio are included in the program. These can be applied in a number of ways:

- **On one or more selected Parts in the Arrange window.**
  This will process all files in the Part(s) by equal amounts.

- **On one or more selected Events in the Audio Editor**
  This will process those segments of the audio files that the Events play back.

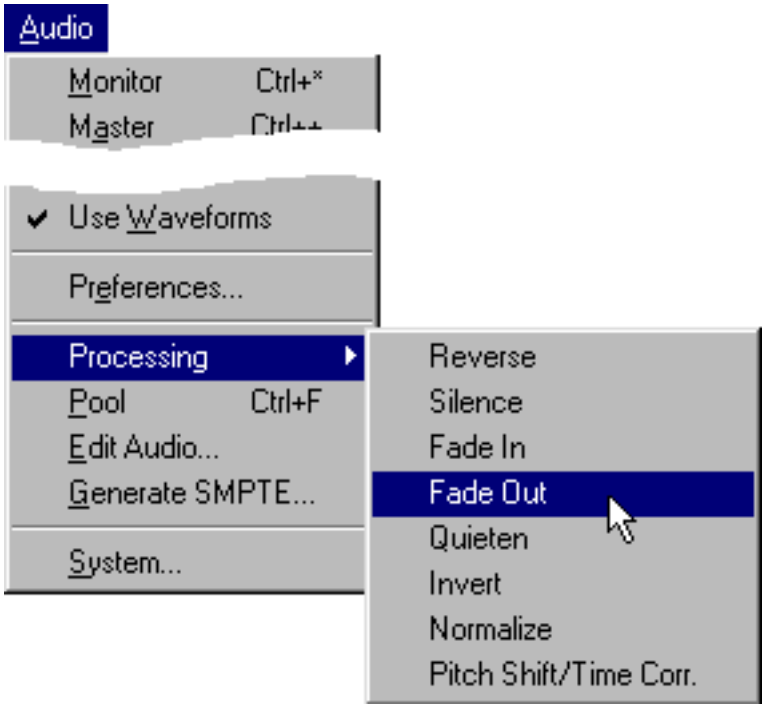
- **On one or more files or segments in the Pool**
- **A selection, segment or file in the Wave editor.**

● Note that the audio processing makes permanent alterations to the audio file(s)! If required, make copies of the files before applying a processing function! If you process a segment or Event, be aware that all segments playing this section of the file will be affected by the processing.
You should also remember that a segment or an Event is most often only a smaller section of a complete audio file. If you perform audio processing to this section, you may not be able to use the audio file in other Songs, etc. Again, be sure to make copies of your audio files before processing them.

Applying the Processing

1. **Select the audio you want to process.**

2. **Select the relevant Function from the Audio menu.**



The Functions

Reverse

This turns a recording backwards, just as when you turn a tape on a reel-to-reel recorder backwards.

Silence

This replaces the audio with absolute silence.

Fade In

This creates a linear fade in.

Fade Out

This creates a linear fade out.

Quieten

This lowers the amplitude of the recording to about half the level.

Invert (Phase)

This can be used with for example a stereo recording where one channel has accidentally been recorded out of phase with the other. You could say it turns the waveform “upside down”.

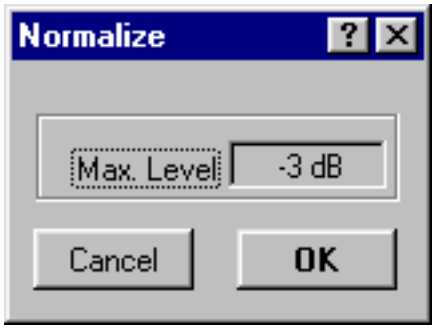
Normalize

This lets you increase the level of a recording that was made at too low a level:

1. **When you select this, the program first scans the file to find the maximum amplitude.**

2. **Then a dialog appears, allowing you to set the resulting level.**
   The program will compare the current maximum amplitude with the level you have set, and raise the level of the entire recording until the maximum amplitude matches your set level. The highest level you can set is 0 dB.

● Note that the settings you make are used for all audio you have selected for processing!



In this example, the loudest signal in the resulting file will have a level 3 dB below maximum.

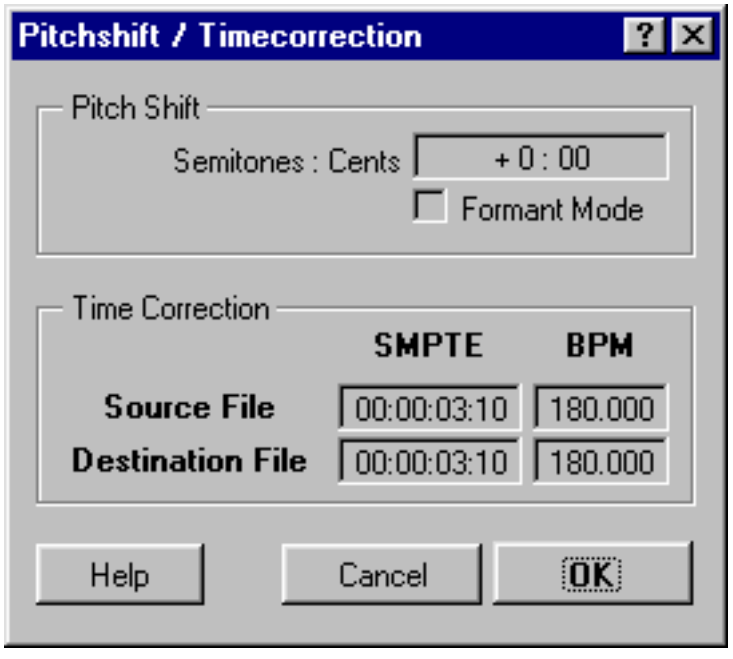
3. When you click OK, the file gets processed.

● Please note that the level of any background noise is raised just as much as the rest of the signal. If you have the option to re-record the file with correct level settings, this is in many cases a better option than using Normalize.

Pitch Shift/Time Correction

This menu item opens a dialog that lets you change the pitch of a recording without affecting the length, or change the length without affecting the pitch. You can even do both at the same time!

1. Select Pitchshift/Timecorrection.



The Pitch Shift/Time Correction dialog.

2. If you want Pitch Shift, specify the amount by adjusting the semi tones: cents (hundreds of a semitone) values.
The maximum change is +/– one octave (12 semitones).

3. If you don't want Pitch Shift, make sure this value is set to "+0:00".

4. **If you are pitch shifting vocal material, or other recordings with prominent resonant character, activate Formant Mode.**

5. **If you want Time Correction, you can either specify a new audio file length (in SMPTE format; hours:minutes:seconds:frames) or define a new tempo:**

- The program displays the current file length in the "Source File" SMPTE field, as a guideline. If you know what you want the new length of the file to be, enter this value in the "Destination File" SMPTE Field.
- If you know the "current" tempo of the music in the file and want the program to adapt the file to a "new" tempo, enter these two values in the Source File BPM and Destination File BPM fields, respectively.
  To get "exactly" the new tempo you desire, you must know the exact tempo of the original file.

● Note that the settings you make are used for all audio you have selected for processing!

---

6. **Click OK.**

About Audio Quality

In order to get the best possible audio quality when you pitch shift or time correct an audio file, please follow these rules:

- The smaller the change, the better the resulting sound quality.
- The amount of change that can be applied varies drastically with the complexity of the audio material.
  For example, pitch shifting a complete stereo mix one octave up or making it twice as long will most certainly make it sound unnatural.
- If you have the possibility to process individual files rather than a mix, this is preferred.

22

The Wave editor

What is the Wave Editor?

The Wave editor allows you to perform edits on your audio *files*. This includes Cutting and Pasting real audio data and applying DSP (Digital Signal Processing) functions. In other words, it provides more direct control over the audio files than the Audio editor does.

The Wave editor also provides additional tools for creating and modifying segments.

Precautions

In contrast to the Audio editor, the Wave editor makes permanent changes to your audio *files*, (sometimes called “destructive editing”). When you for example Paste in the Wave editor, this alters the file on disk directly, rather than just adding new segments or Events.

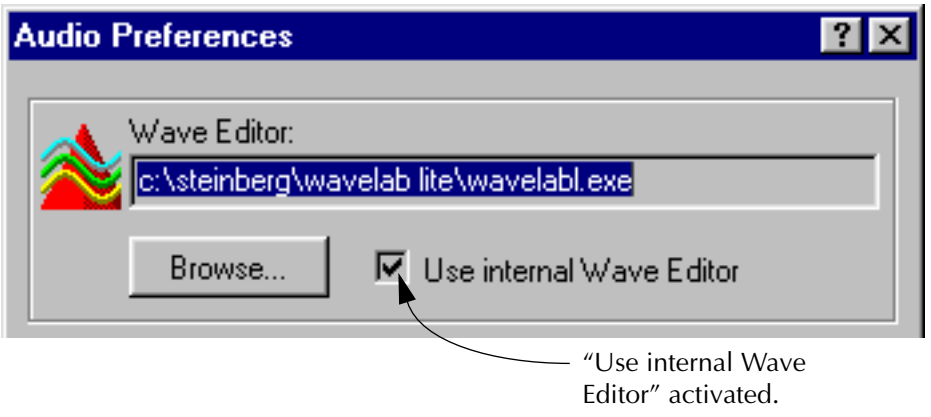
You can of course Undo the last action in the Wave editor. However, you might want to experiment with different editing operations in the Wave editor, and later decide to go back to the original file. If you do, use the Duplicate File item on the File pop-up menu in the Pool to duplicate your audio files before editing them in the Wave editor.

About the Wave Editor Preference setting

In Cubase VST you have the choice of working with the internal Wave Editor (as described in this chapter) or any external audio editing software (as described in the chapter “Using an External Wave Editor”). This choice is made in the Preferences dialog on the Audio menu:

1. **Pull down the Audio menu and select “Preferences...”.**
   The Audio Preferences dialog opens.

2. **Make sure the checkbox “Use internal Wave Editor” is activated.**
   This lets you open the internal Wave Editor in the ways described below.



3. **Click Exit to close the dialog.**

Opening Wave Editor Windows

From the Audio editor

To open the Wave editor, displaying the segment and file played by an Event in the Audio editor, proceed as follows:

- **Double click on the Event in the Audio editor.**
  The Wave editor opens, displaying the file, with the relevant segment indicated in black and the rest of the waveform in grey.

From the Pool

To open the Wave editor displaying a certain segment and its file, do one of the following:

- **Double click on a segment in the Pool.**
- **Drag the segment from the Pool into an open Wave editor window.**
  This is described in detail on page 224.

From the Arrange Window

It is also possible to open the Wave Editor directly from the Arrange window:

1. **Select the Audio Part containing the Audio Event you want to edit.**

2. **Pull down the Audio menu and select “Edit Audio”.**
   The Wave Editor opens, displaying the first segment in the selected Part.

Working with Multiple Editors

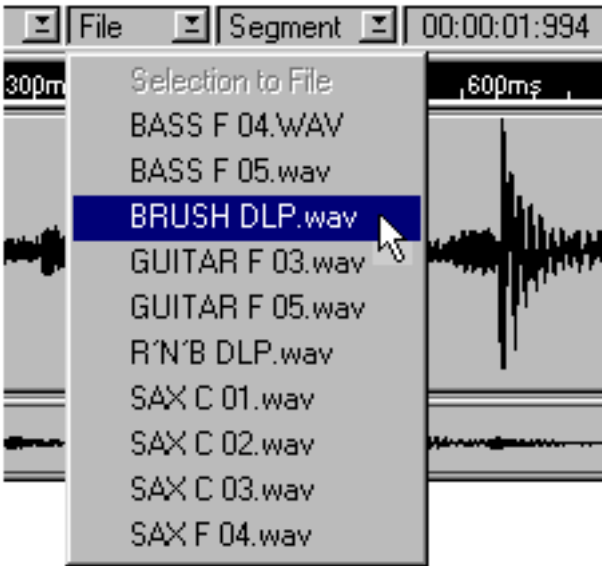
Using the techniques described above you can open as many Wave editor windows as memory permits.

By switching between the different windows you can work on a number of different files at the same time.

Making a Window Display another File

It is possible to make any of the open Wave editor windows display any of the files in the Pool:

1. **Pull down the pop-up File menu.**



The Wave editor's File menu holds a list of the files in the Pool.

2. **Select the desired file.**

Adjusting the View

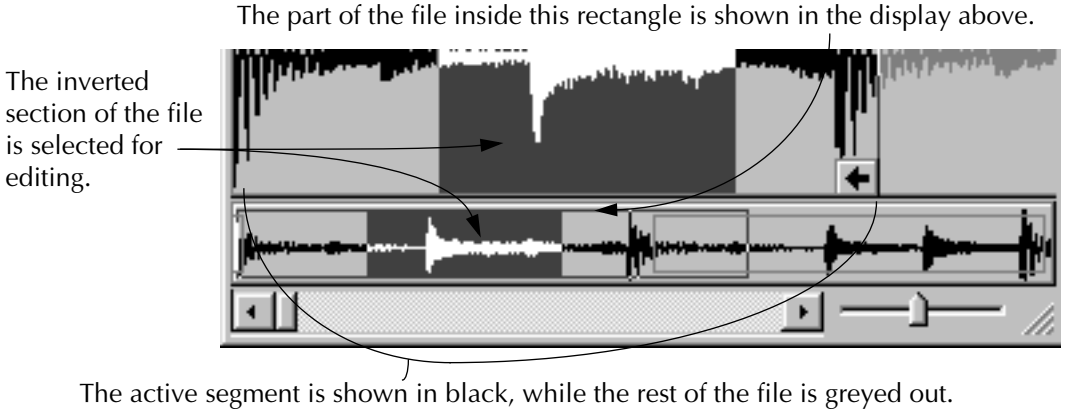
Ruler

The rulers in the Wave editor are always in Real Time format (Hours:Minutes:Seconds:Milliseconds).

Thumbnail View

The thumbnail is a miniature view of the file. The big difference between the thumbnail and the main waveform area is that the thumbnail always displays the entire file. Use the thumbnail view to quickly navigate around in the file.

The frame in the thumbnail shows what portion of the whole file is shown in the waveform display above.


The part of the file inside this rectangle is shown in the display above.
The inverted section of the file is selected for editing.
The active segment is shown in black, while the rest of the file is greyed out.

Segment Display

In the waveform area, the currently selected segment is indicated in black with Inset arrows (see the Audio editor). We call this the *active* segment. All audio data outside the active segment is displayed in grey.

You can make any of the segments in the file active, see page 291.

The active segment is displayed in black, while the rest of the file is grey.

Scrolling

Using the Scroll Bars

As in all editors, you can use the scroll bars to move through the displayed data.

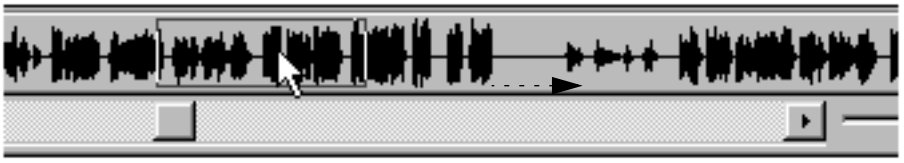
Scrolling to the segment Start and End

- **To move to the beginning/end of the selected segment, click the Go To Segment Start/End buttons on the Status Bar.**
  The Song position is then also moved to this position.

The Go To Segment Start/End buttons.

Using the Thumbnail

- **By dragging the black rectangle in the Thumbnail, you can scroll to any position.**

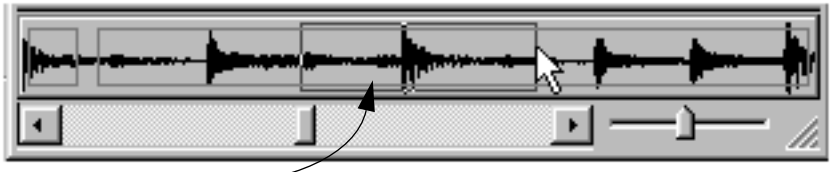


Dragging in the Thumbnail.

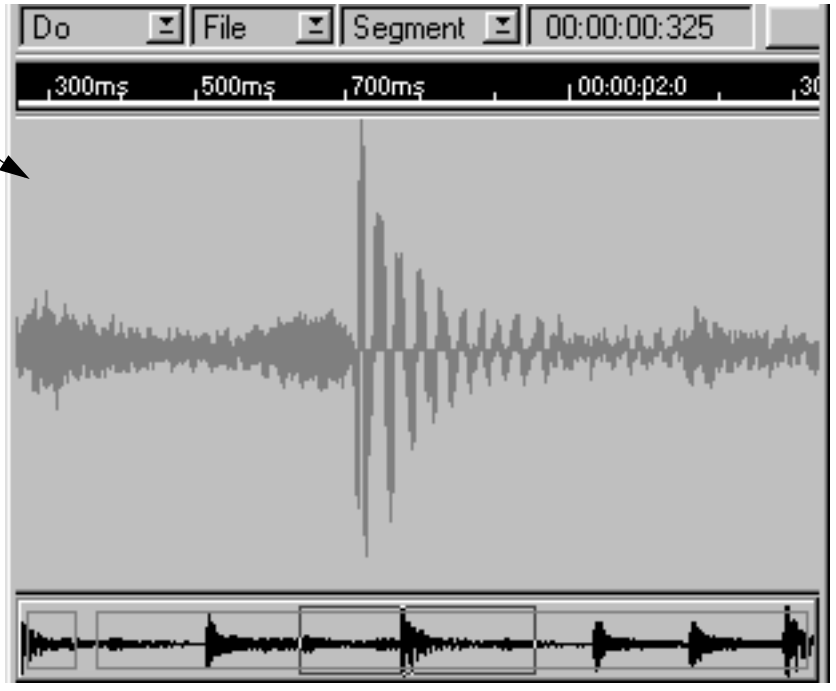
Setting Magnification

There are two ways to set the Magnification:

- **Use the slider at the end of the scroll bar.**
- **Hold down the [Control] key and drag inside the Thumbnail view.** When you release the mouse button, the selected part of the waveform will be shown in the waveform display.



[Control]]-dragging in the Thumbnail view will select a part of the file for display.



Playing Back

The Play and Loop buttons.

From any Position

1. **Firstly, make sure no audio is selected, by clicking somewhere in the waveform display.**
   If some audio is selected, only this will play, see below.

2. **If necessary, click in the ruler to set a new Song Position to play back from.**

3. **Press the Play button.**
   Playback continues as long as you hold the mouse button down, or until the end of the file.

Playing a certain section

1. **Select the audio you want to play, for example by dragging over it.**
   For more on selecting, see page 290.

2. **Press the Play button.**
   Playback continues as long as you hold the mouse button down, or until the end of the selection.

Looping

If the Loop button is activated, audio will loop continuously as long as you press the Play button.

- **If no audio is selected, and you start playback from outside the segment, the entire file will loop.**
- **If no audio is selected, and you start playback from within the segment, only the segment will loop.**
- **If some audio is selected, this will loop.**

Scrubbing and Auditioning

- **The Wave editor has Auditioning and Scrubbing tools that work just as in the Audio editor, see page 242.**

The Wave editor's Audition and Scrub Tools.

Selecting

A number of operations can be performed on the selected portion of the audio file. Making a selection in the Wave editor is very similar to selecting in other windows. The selected part of the waveform is displayed in inverse video.

Using the Mouse

To select from one point to another, proceed as follows:

- **Click, hold down [Shift] and click again, or...**
- **Drag to create a selection rectangle.**
  The area between the two points will be selected.

Selecting all Audio in the Active segment

- **If you use Select All on the Edit menu ([Control]-[A]), all audio in the active segment will be selected.**

Selecting all audio in the File

- **If the active segment is already selected, using Select All will select the entire file. In other words, to select the entire file, press [[Control]-[A] twice.**

Adjusting the Selection's Start and End Points numerically

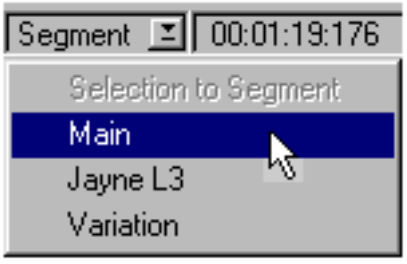
In the upper right part of the Wave Editor window there are value boxes for the start and end positions of the selection (in samples). These can be adjusted using regular value editing.

Working with segments

Making a segment Active

As described on page 287, one of the segments in the file is indicated in a special way. This is called the *active* segment. You can display any of the file's segments in this way:

1. **Pull down the Segment pop-up menu.**



The Wave editor's segment menu holds a list of the File's segments.

2. **Select the desired segment.**

Adjusting the Active segment's Start and End points

Sample-accurate Editing

Adjusting segment start and end points in the Wave editor has advantages:

- When you adjust segment points in the Audio editor, the points always snap to ticks (1/384 of a quarter note).
- In the Pool, you can adjust segments down to an accuracy of one single sample, but you have no graphical feedback.
- In the Wave editor you can adjust segments graphically and with single sample resolution.

Adjusting the Start and End Points by Dragging

By dragging the Inset handles, you can adjust the start and end points for the segment, just as in the Audio editor (see page 244), but with single sample resolution. If you need to, you may zoom in closely on the waveform for more precision.

Converting the Selection into a new segment

1. **Create and adjust the selection as described on page 290.**

2. **Verify that the selection is as intended, by playing back.**
   Playing back in a loop is a great way of finding points that make musical sense.

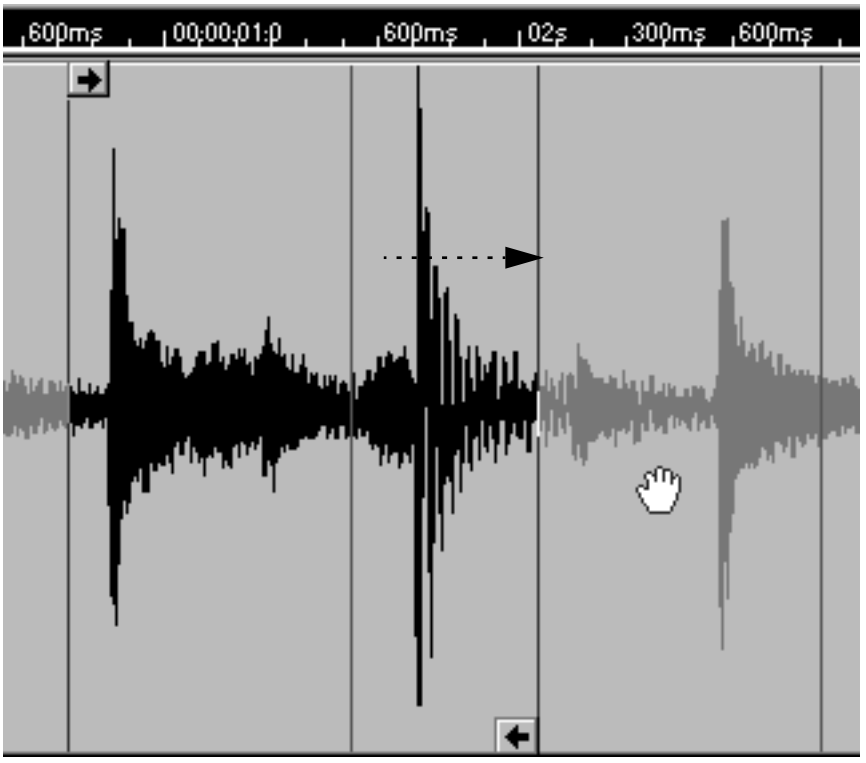
3. **Pull down the segment pop-up menu and select "Selection To Segment".**
   The new segment will get the name of its audio file, but with an index number at the end of the name. If the file is named "Guitar" and there already are segments named "Guitar1", "Guitar2" and "Guitar3", the new segment will be named "Guitar4".

Moving the segment within the file

You can also adjust the segment's start and end points simultaneously, that is, essentially "move" the segment within the file.

1. **Select the Hand tool from the Toolbox.**

2. **Position the pointer somewhere within the segment, press the mouse button and drag left/right.**



Moving the segment with the Hand tool.

Turning the Selection into a File

If you want to make the selection into a totally separate file, proceed as follows:

1. **Make and adjust the selection as described for segments above.**

2. **Select "Selection To File" from the Wave editor's pop-up File menu.**

3. **In the file dialog that appears, name and position the new file.**

Cutting and Pasting Audio

Caution!

- Cut and Paste in the Wave editor performs permanent changes to your audio files. If you need to make sure you don't inadvertently change your recordings, use the Duplicate File function in the Pool to make a copy of the file first.

Performing the Cut/Copy and Paste

For basic information on how to Copy and Paste, see the Getting Started book. The description below outlines the details specific to the Wave editor.

1. **Select the Audio you want to Cut or Copy.**

2. **Select Cut or Copy from the Edit menu.**

3. **Set the Song Position where you want the Pasted block of audio to be inserted.**

- The material you Paste always *replaces* existing material. This means it overwrites whatever audio was there before the Paste.

4. **Select Paste.**

Applying Processing Functions

On the Do pop-up menu you will find a number of processing functions that can be applied to the selection in the Wave editor. These are described in detail in the chapter "Processing Audio Files".

23

Using an External Wave Editor

Why use an external Wave Editor?

Cubase VST has a built in Wave Editor. However, you might have a more advanced editor (such as Steinberg WaveLab) that you would prefer to use instead. This chapter describes how you can make Cubase VST launch another program instead of the built in Wave Editor when you edit a wave file or segment.

Precautions

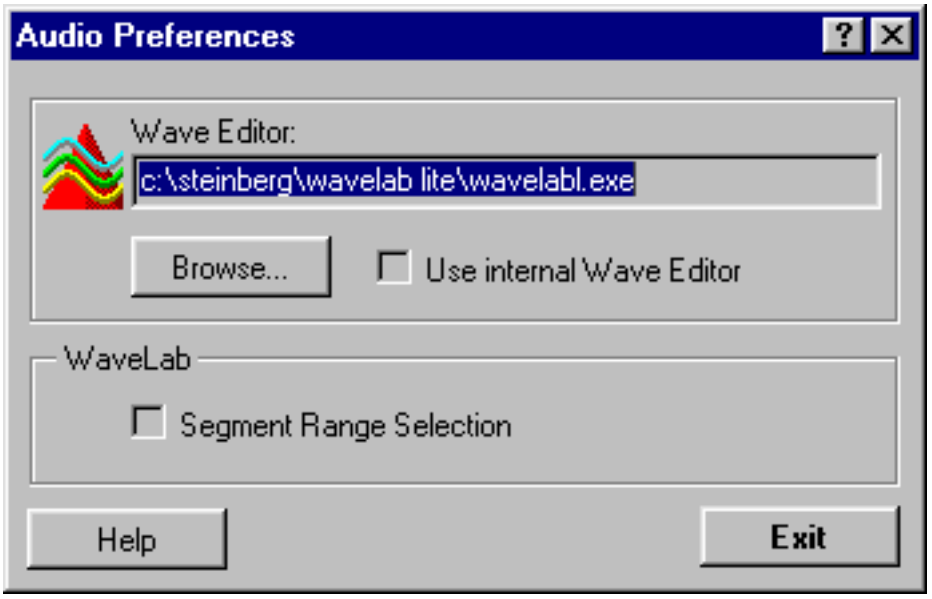
- **Many Wave Editors allow you to Undo your last action. However, it may be safest to use the Duplicate File item on the File pop-up menu in the Pool to make a backup of your audio file before editing it in an external Wave editor.**
- **The program you use must be able to launch and open a ".WAV"-file for editing, by receiving a DOS command line with the path and name of the file as argument.**
  If you are uncertain whether your programs meet this criterium or not, follow the instructions below and try it.

- **If your external Wave Editor uses the same audio hardware as Cubase VST to play back audio, you need to deactivate "Play Audio in Background" in the Preference dialog (on the File menu) before launching the external Wave Editor.**
  Otherwise, the Wave Editor will not be able to play back the edited audio.

Setting which Wave Editor to use

To select which program to use for Wave editor, proceed like this:

1. **Pull down the Audio menu and select “Preferences...”.**
   A dialog opens.



2. **Make sure “Use internal Wave Editor” is unchecked.**

3. **Click on the Browse button.**
   A regular file dialog opens. Find and select the Wave editor file you want to use, and click OK.

   The path and name of the selected Wave editor file is displayed in the dialog, together with its program icon.

4. **If you are using WaveLab Lite or WaveLab, and want to make use of the segment start and end insets when editing the audio file, activate “Segment Range Selection”.**
   See below.

5. **Click Exit.**

Editing in the selected Wave Editor

Once you have selected a Wave editor using the procedure described on the previous pages, you can access it from inside the Pool or the Audio Editor.

● Remember that any processing you perform on this audio file will be reflected in all its segments throughout the Song. If you don't want this, use the Duplicate File command in the Pool to create a copy of the audio file to edit instead.

Opening the Wave Editor from the Audio Editor

1. **Open the Audio Editor.**

2. **In the Audio Editor, double click on the Audio Event whose file you want to edit, or select "Edit Audio" from the Audio menu.**
   This automatically opens the file in the set Wave editor.

● If you are using WaveLab Lite or WaveLab, and you have activated the option "Segment Range Selection" in the Audio Preferences dialog, the segment range in the audio file will be selected when you open it in the editor. Furthermore, if you are using WaveLab (the full-featured version), Markers will be inserted in the audio file, at the start and end inset positions.

---

3. **Perform whatever processing you want.**
   This may include shortening or lengthening the file, applying DSP effects, etc. See the documentation for the Wave editor in question for more details.

4. **Save the audio file (you may want to save it under another name, see below) and close it.**
   Nothing stops you from keeping the Wave editor running, just remember to close the audio file.

5. **Return to Cubase VST.**
   If you have applied any processing to the audio file, an alert box will appear, telling you that the file contents have been changed, and the Pool and Arrange windows will be updated to reflect the changes.

- **If you have shortened the audio file in the Wave editor, the length of its segments in Cubase VST will automatically be adjusted if needed (since a segment cannot be longer than its audio file).**
- **If you have lengthened the audio file, the length and start point of its segments will not be affected.**

Opening the Wave Editor from the Pool

1. **Select the segment or audio file you want to edit.**

2. **Pull down the Audio menu and select "Edit Audio".**
   The set Wave Editor opens.

3. **Perform the editing and return to Cubase VST as described above.**

- If you use the "Save As..." command in the external Wave Editor to save the edited audio file under another name, you can switch between the original and the edited file without having to adjust or make new segments, by using the "Re-find" function in the Pool (see page 215). Note that this only works if you performed editing to the audio file that didn't change its length (e.g. dynamic or spectral editing).

Opening the "secondary" Wave Editor

Even if you have selected an external audio editing software as your primary Wave Editor (by deactivating the "Use internal Wave Editor" checkbox in the Audio Preferences dialog), you can open the internal Wave Editor at any time, by holding down [Control] and double clicking on an audio segment in the Audio Editor. Likewise, if you have *activated* "Use internal Wave Editor", [Control] + double clicking a segment will open the *external* Wave Editor. In other words:

- To open the "secondary" Wave Editor (the one that is *not* selected in the Audio Preferences dialog), press [Control] and double click on a segment in the Audio Editor.

24

Mixing and using Effects

Introduction

This chapter describes the general procedures of handling levels, pan, EQ and effects to create a final, fully automated (if you like), stereo mix.

What this chapter doesn't contain, is detailed descriptions of how to handle each part of Cubase VST that is involved in the Mixing process. For details, see the chapters describing the respective windows.

Also, the signal routing system and buses are described separately in the chapter "The Input/Output Bus System".

Volume

On mixdown as well as during recording, the output level of each audio channel is controlled in two ways: with the faders in the Monitor Mixer and with the Dynamic Volume Events in the Audio Editor.

Monitor Mixer

In the Monitor Mixer, each audio channel has a fader for volume control. You can also use the Mute and Solo buttons to silence one or several audio channels. The faders in the Master window determine the final output level of the stereo mix.

- **The fader settings are displayed numerically below the faders.**
  The Monitor Mixer allows you to boost weak signals by +6 dB, if you like. Just be sure to avoid signal levels above 0 dB (clipping).
- **If you hold down [Control] and click on a Monitor fader, it will automatically be set to position 0.0 dB.**
- **Faders for stereo pairs (both for regular audio channels and buses) normally move together (move one and the other follows), but if you hold down [Alt] you can change either independently.**
  For mono faders, the inverse is true. Hold down [Alt] while moving a fader, to simultaneously control the next fader in an odd-even pair.
- **To hear only the audio playback, click on the MIDI Mute button to the left in the Monitor Mixer.**
  This mutes all MIDI playback, letting you concentrate on mixing the audio.

You can use the Monitor and Master faders to set up a volume balance between the audio channels and perform a manual mix, by moving the faders and other controls while playing back. By using the Write function (described on page 322), you can automate the fader movements and other Monitor Mixer actions.

Dynamic Events

As described in the Audio Editor chapter, you can create a Volume curve for each Audio Event, and thereby get automatic volume changes. The Volume values created by this curve are added to the volume fader values in the Monitor Mixer, so you can combine the two ways of automating and controlling volume. The properties and differences of the two methods are discussed on page 322.

Panning

Just as with Volume, the pan (stereo position) of each audio channel can be controlled in two ways: with the Pan controls in the Monitor Mixer and with the Dynamic Pan Events in the Audio Editor.

Monitor Mixer

The Pan controls in the Monitor mixer pans the sound between the left and right side of the assigned stereo output bus (see page 201). If your mix contains stereo recordings, you will probably want to pan each stereo pair hard left/right.

- **When you are changing Pan for a channel, the setting is shown numerically (L63–R63) in the level display below the fader.**
  To make the display show the fader setting again, click the fader handle.

- **To select center Pan position, hold down [Control] and click on the Pan control.**

  The Master and bus faders determine the levels of each “side” in the stereo output. There are no Pan controls in the Master window. Just as with Volumes you can automate the Monitor panning using the Write function or the Dynamic Events (see page 322).

Dynamic Events

You can use the Dynamic Events feature in the Audio Editor to create Pan curves for single Audio Events.The Pan value set with the Dynamic Events overrides any Pan setting for the channel in the Monitor mixer.

EQ

Cubase VST is equipped with a powerful equalizer. Depending on your computer, you can have up to 4 bands of full parametric EQ per audio channel!

About the Hi Quality mode

For each audio channel you can select whether you want to use Hi Quality EQ or not. When Hi Quality mode is selected, the EQ bands have a greater gain range (±24 dB as opposed to ±12 dB), and generally improved audio quality. However, Hi Quality mode will also consume more CPU power. To conserve processor power, you could activate Hi Quality mode for some channels and deactivate it for others.

- Generally, we recommend that you use Hi Quality mode, except if you want to play back Songs mixed in a previous version of Cubase VST (where the Hi Quality mode wasn't available).

About EQing stereo channels

To add EQ to a stereo channel pair or Group (see page 317), make the equalizer settings for the left side channel. Just as with the volume fader and other controls, the settings are automatically duplicated for the right side channel and vice versa.

- To make independent EQ settings for one channel in a stereo pair, hold down [Alt].

Opening the EQ and making settings

At the top of each channel strip in the Monitor mixer there are two buttons, labelled "FX" and "EQ". The "EQ" button is used to activate equalizing for the channel, but to be able to do that, you must first open the equalizer and make some settings:

1. **Click the "FX" button for the channel you want to apply EQ to.**
   The EQ window opens. This contains a duplicate of the Monitor mixer channel strip, a section with effect sends (see page 307) and 1–4 EQ modules.

2. **Use the arrow buttons in the top right corner to set the number of visible EQ modules.**
   This helps you avoid "screen cluttering" by hiding unused modules.

3. **Click on the "Hi Quality" button to activate or deactivate Hi Quality mode.**
   This setting affects all EQ modules for the channel.

4. **Activate as many EQ modules as you need (up to four) by clicking on their "Enable" buttons.**
   As soon as any of the EQs are activated, the "EQ" button indicator in the channel strip is lit.

5. **Set the parameters for the activated EQ module.**
   It is perhaps easiest to set up a playback cycle and experiment with the settings until you get the desired sound.
   Each EQ module contains a fully parametric one band equalizer, with the following parameters:

Hi Limit	Determines the upper limit of the Frequency parameter. The highest value for this is 16000 Hz.
Lo Limit	Determines the lower limit of the Frequency parameter (down to 20 Hz). Nothing stops you from setting Hi Limit to its highest value and Lo Limit to its lowest, and thereby get a very wide range for the Frequency parameter. However, the narrower range you select, the finer resolution for the Frequency parameter.
Presets	These are four preset pairs of values for the Hi and Lo Limit parameters, allowing you to quickly select a range for the Frequency parameter (Lo, Lo Mid, Hi Mid or Hi).
Gain	Governs the amount of boost or attenuation around the set frequency. The value range is ± 12 dB.
Frequency	The center frequency for the equalization. Around this frequency, the sound will be boosted or attenuated according to the Gain setting. The range of the Frequency parameter is determined by the Hi and Lo Limits.
Q	Determines the width of the frequency band around the center frequency to be affected. The narrower frequency band, the more drastic effect of the boost or attenuation.
Q Presets	These are four presets for the Q value, ranging from a wide frequency band to a very narrow band.

- Please note that high Gain values may give rise to distortion. Compensate with the channel volume faders.

- The maximum total number of EQ modules (for all channels together) is governed by your computer. If you activate more EQ modules than your system can handle, you will note that the “Over” indicator in the Audio Performance window lights red, and the audio playback stutters. Keep an eye on the Performance bar graphs and deactivate a number of EQ modules or Effects, until the computer load seems normal.

6. **Close the EQ window by clicking on its close box in the upper right corner.**
   In the Monitor window, the “EQ” button indicator for the audio channel will now be lit, which means EQ is applied to that channel.

Activating Equalization from the Monitor Mixer or Inspector

When you have enabled the desired EQ modules and made settings, you can turn equalizing on and off for the channel by pressing [Control] and clicking its “EQ” button in the Monitor window or the Inspector.

Effects

About the difference between the three Effect types

In addition to the EQ, Cubase VST provide effects in three flavours:

- **Send effects**
  Up to four send effects can be used. When you use send effects, audio is routed through the effect processors via independent Effect Sends for each channel in the Monitor, just like on a "real" physical mixer. The output from each effect processor is then routed to one of the buses or the master faders, where it can be mixed with the "dry" signal, if desired. These effects are thus mono in-stereo out.

- **Insert effects**
  An insert effect is inserted into the signal chain of an audio channel, which means that the whole channel signal passes through the effect. This make inserts suitable for effects for which you don't need to mix dry (direct) and wet (processed) sound, e.g. distortion, filters or other effects that change the tonal or dynamic characteristics of the sound.
  You can have up to four different insert effects *per channel.*

- **Master effects**
  Up to four stereo in-stereo out effect processors can be added to the signal on the master bus, the final stereo mix. Please note that there is no mixing of the dry/fx signals as there is with the send effects. Typical uses for master effects would be compressor/limiter effects, noise suppression units, etc.

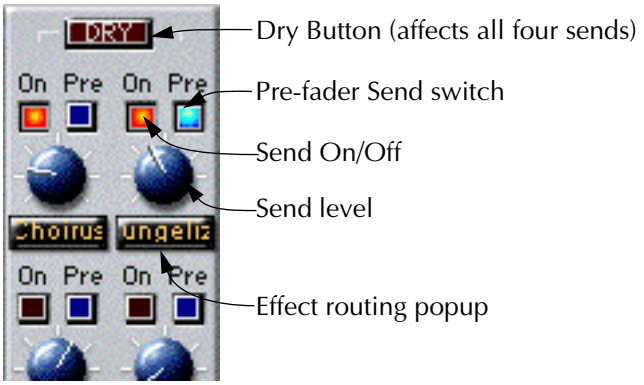
● Only effects with stereo inputs can be used as master effects, regardless whether or not Mono is activated in the Master window.

The effect processors are entirely "virtual", that is, they are all in software. A number of effects are provided with the program and additional effects can be purchased from Steinberg and third party vendors.

Routing an Audio Channel through the Send Effects

1. **Open the Monitor window.**

2. **Click on the EQ button for the audio channel you want to add effect to.**
   The EQ window opens, as described on the previous pages. The section between the channel fader and the EQ modules contains the effect sends.



3. **To route an effect send to one of the eight effects, click below its send knob and select an effect from the pop-up menu that appears.**
   Exactly what is available depends on how the Effects window has been set up, as described later in this chapter. However, the first eight items correspond to the eight internal effects while the following items route the effect sends to buses and Groups (see page 202 and page 317).

4. **Make sure the "DRY" button is not pressed.**
   When this button is pressed, all eight effect sends are deactivated for the channel. Click on it to turn the function on/off.

5. **Click on the "On" button for the effect sends you want to activate and turn the corresponding Send level knob to a moderate value.**
   Remember that the Effects rely heavily on the CPU power in your computer. The more activated sends and effect units, the more computer power will be used for effects.

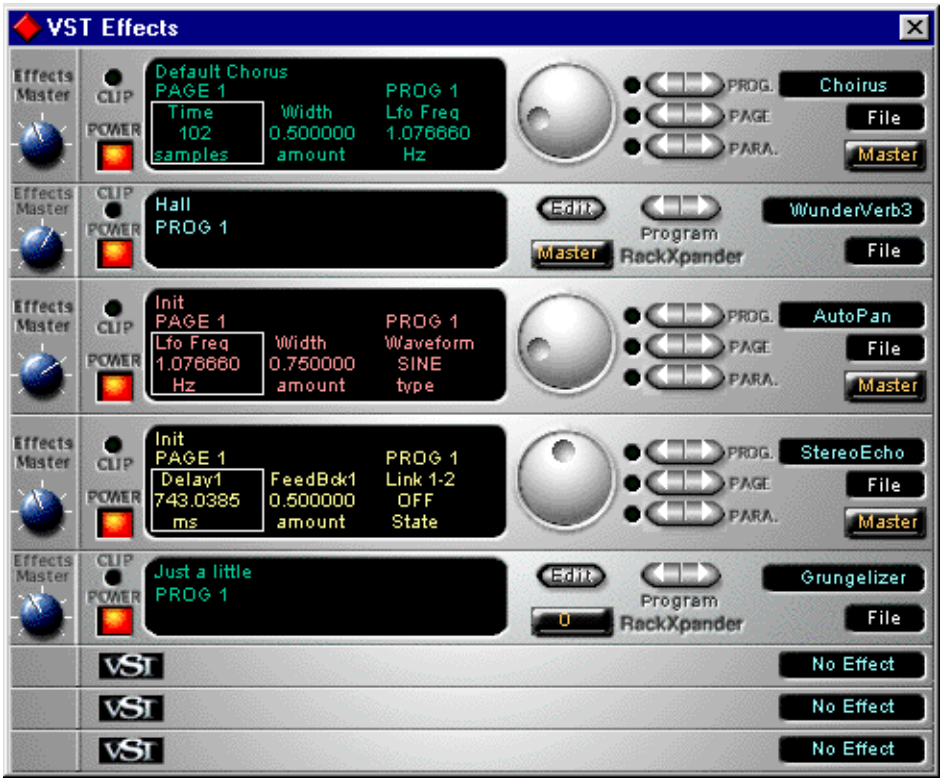
6. **If you want the signal to be sent to the effects before the faders, click on the Pre button for the send.**
   With Pre-fader effect sends, the amount of effect for the channel is not affected by the volume fader. With Post-fader effect sends (PRE button not pressed), the amount of effect is proportional to the channel volume, and will change with the volume fader movements.

   The next step is to select programs and set the parameters for the effect processors. Since you will probably need to adjust the send levels while doing this, leave the EQ window open.

Selecting Effects and making settings

You select effect types and programs in the Effects window:

1. **Pull down the Audio menu and select Effects.**
   The Send Effects window opens. This window resembles an effect rack, with eight separate “processors” arranged on top of each other.

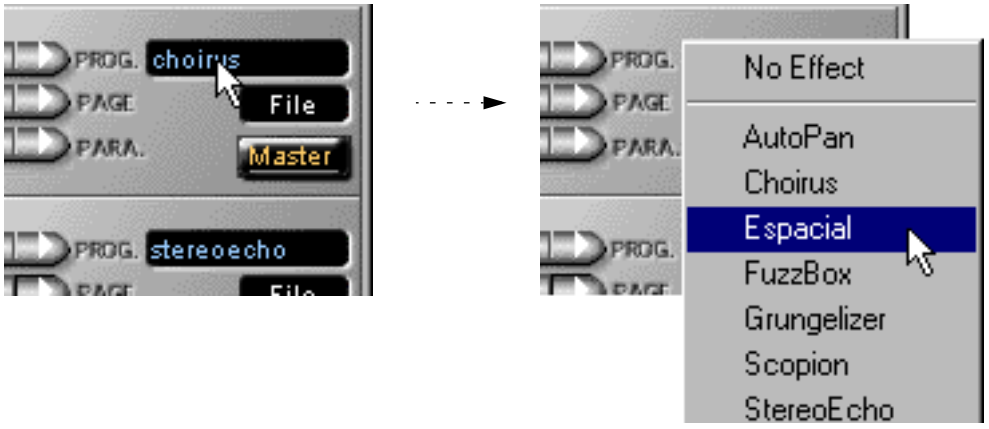


There are three different effect processor “fronts”: Standard (slots nr 1, 3 and 4 from the top in the picture above), Rack Xpander (slots 2 and 5 from the top) and “No Effect” (the three slots at the bottom). For details, see page 314.

2. **Activate an effect processor by clicking on its “Power” button.**

3. **Use the Output pop-up menu to route the effect output to the desired Output bus.**
   The location of this pop-up menu depends on the effect panel type; on standard VST effect panels the pop-up is located in the lower right corner; on Rack Xpander panels, the pop-up is located just to the right of the effect value display. The “normal” setting for the Output pop-up menu is “Master” (see page 204).

4. **Pull down the pop-up menu in the processor's upper right corner and select an effect type.**



Exactly which effect types are available depends on which Effect plug-ins are included with the program when you purchase it, and which DirectX plug-ins are installed on your computer (see page 334). There may also be additional Effect Plug-Ins separately available - contact your Steinberg dealer for more information.

5. **Click on the Prog. button, to put the processor in Program mode.**

6. **Step between the effect programs, either by clicking on the left or right part of the Prog. button or by rotating the value dial.**
   The number of program locations depends on selected effect type. It might be a good idea to set up a cycle and have the audio channel play back while you are making settings, to hear the effect of your selected effect programs.

7. **Use the send level knob in the EQ window to control the amount of effect for the audio channel.**

8. **Use the Effects Master knob to the left on the processor panel to set the amount of input level to the effect processor.**
   If you set this to a high value, it might cause clipping (distortion) in the effect processor. If the output of an effect processor is clipped, an indicator will light up (this feature is not necessarily supported by all Effect Plug-Ins).

9. **If you want to, repeat steps 2 – 7 for the other effect processors.**

● The effect settings can be automated, as described on page 324.

The three effect categories

On the Effect pop-up menus, the effects are organized in three categories:

Effect type	Description:
No Effect	If you select this, an “empty” panel will be displayed and no effect will be used. Select No Effect for the effect processors you don’t need! This will prevent them from using up memory and processor power.
VST-Native	These are effect plug-ins in VST:s “own” format, and can only be used with Steinberg programs such as Cubase VST and WaveLab. VST-native effects can use the “Standard” effect panel front or the Rack XPander panel (see the picture on page 308).
DirectX	DirectX is a Microsoft standard for handling multimedia under Windows95 and Windows NT. DirectX plug-ins (previously called ActiveMovie plug-ins) can be used with many different programs and applications, including Cubase VST. They are installed under Windows95 rather than separately for Cubase VST, but you can select which plug-ins should be available for selection in Cubase VST (see page 334). DirectX Plug-ins are listed at the bottom of the effect pop-up menus and use the Rack XPander panel front.

About Cubase VST's Implementation of Insert Effects

Inserts are serial

You can apply up to four effects per channel. The signal passes through the effects in series from the top downwards.

Each Channel has its own Insert Effect Rack

Each channel has its own rack of four effects which are totally independent of the other channels. This means that (in a system where additional effect plug-ins have been added) Channel 1 can be routed through distortion, gating and compression, whereas Channel 2 can be routed through tremolo, compression and a spectral enhancer, etc.

Insert effects require the same processing power as any other effect type. This means that applying insert effects on many channels uses up far more processing power than the send effects (four in total for the whole program). Remember that you can use the Performance window to keep an eye on the CPU load.

Which Effect Plug-ins can I use for Insert Effects?

Most effect plug-ins will work fine as Insert Effects. In general, the only restrictions are with the number of Inputs and Outputs in the Effects:

- **For a Plug-In to be usable as an Insert Effect, it has to have 1 or 2 inputs and 1 or 2 outputs.**
  This may seem obvious, but it is also possible to have effect plug-ins either with more than two inputs or outputs, or even no inputs or outputs at all. These cannot be used as Insert effects.

The number of inputs and outputs can also determine whether you use the Insert effects on a single (mono) audio channel or on a stereo channel pair:

- **For stereo audio channels, you need to use an effect with stereo inputs (e.g. one of the master effects).**
  It is possible to use a mono-input effect with a stereo channel pair, but then only the left channel in the pair will be processed, which is probably not what you want.

- **For mono audio channels, you can use mono- or stereo-input effects.**
  However, since the audio channel is in mono, the output of the effect will also be in mono. For stereo output effects, the left channel will be used.

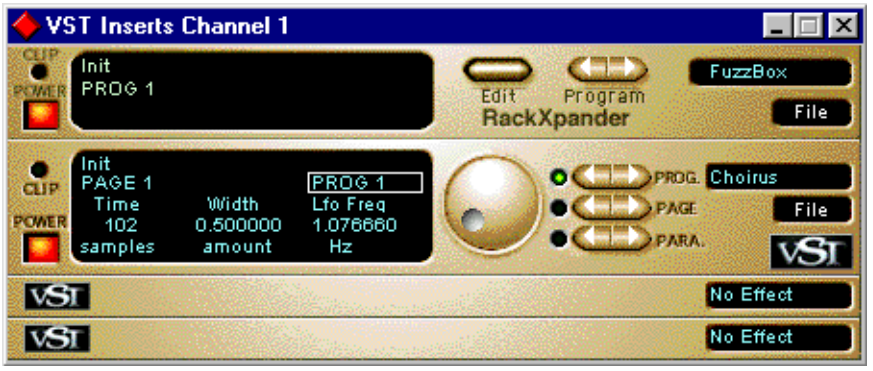
Routing an Audio Channel through Insert Effects

1. **Open the Monitor window.**

2. **Locate the audio channel you want to add insert effects to, and click on its Insert button.**

- For stereo Tracks, there will only be one Insert button, for the left channel in the audio channel pair. However, both channels in the pair are routed through the Insert effect (provided it's a stereo-input effect - see above).

The Insert Effects window opens. This looks much like the Send Effects window, but has no Effects Master knobs or output bus pop-up menus.



3. **Select and activate an Effect, and make settings for it just as with regular Send Effects.**

4. **If required, use the parameters in the effect's control panel to adjust input level and balance between dry and effect signal.**
   Since the entire signal passes through the effect, you will only hear the "wet" signal on the output, unless you adjust the settings of the effect to make the output include some of the "dry" sound as well.

- Not all Effect Plug-ins have dry/wet balance controls.

5. **If you want to, repeat steps 2-3 for the other effect processors.**
   Avoid activating effect processors that you don't use, since this draws some extra processor power. To minimize the processor load, pull down the Effect type pop-up for the unused processors, and select "No Effect".

- **To turn off an Insert Effect, click on its Power button.**

Selecting and activating Master Effects

1. **Pull down the Audio menu and select “Master Effects”.**
   The Master Effect rack appears. You could also click the Master FX button in the Master window to open the Master Effects window.

2. **Pull down the Effect type pop-up and select the plug-in.**

● There may be two versions of the plug-in on the menu. If this is the case, you should select the *stereo* version (the mono version is used as a Send Effect).

---

3. **Activate “Power”.**
   The master mix signal is now routed through the plug-in.

4. **Make settings for the effect.**
   If the effect uses the standard VST interface, you can use the Parameter buttons and the Value dial (see next page).
   If the effect does not use the standard VST interface, you need to click the Edit button to bring up a window with parameters for the effect.

5. **Repeat steps 3 and 4 for all effects you want to insert.**

6. **If you open the Master window, you will find the name of the selected effect(s) in the Master Effect slots.**

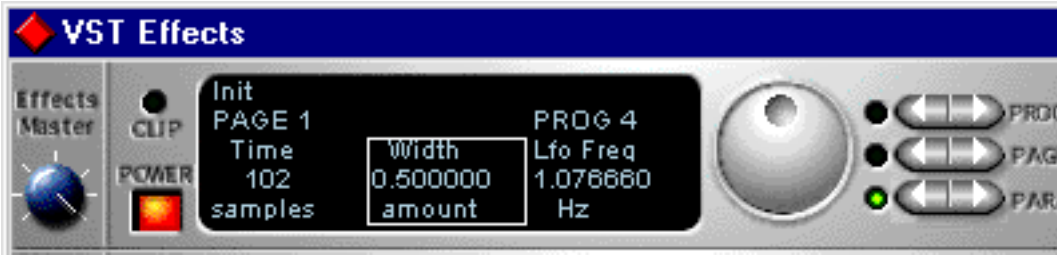
● To turn off a Master Effect, open the Master Effect window and select “No Effect” for the corresponding slot. Simply deactivating the Power switch will still cause the effect to use up some memory.

Editing Effects

If any of the preprogrammed effects suits you as it is, that is great. But you can also edit the effect parameters in each program. This is done differently for effects with the Standard VST interface and effects with the Rack XPander interface:

Editing Standard Effects:

1. **Click on the Para. button, to put the processor in Parameter mode.**
   In the display, up to three parameters are shown at a time. The parameter currently selected for editing has a border around it.



   In this picture, the parameter Width is selected for editing.

2. **If the parameter you want to edit is not visible in the display, click on the left or right part of the Page button to go to another parameter page.**
   While you are in Page mode (the indicator in the Page button is lit), you can also scroll between pages using the value dial. To return to Parameter mode, click on the Para. button again.

3. **To step between parameters, click on the left or right part of the Para. button.**
   If you click on the right part of the button while the rightmost parameter in the display is selected for editing, the display will switch to show the next parameter page (if there is one). The same goes for the left part of the button if the leftmost parameter in the display is selected.

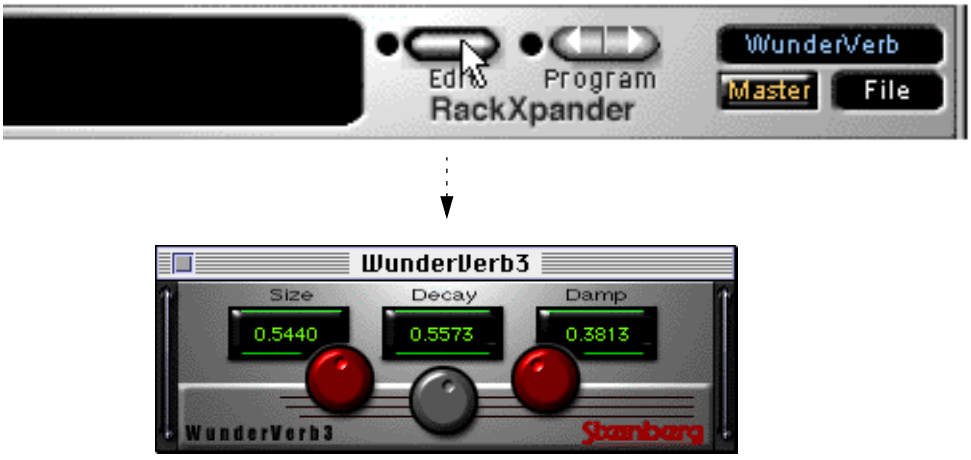
   The Parameters and their values are explained in the tables on the following pages.

4. **Set a value for the selected parameter by using the value dial.**
   If you want to make small adjustments; click on the dial, hold down the mouse button and move the pointer away from the dial before turning it. The further away from the dial the pointer is, the finer possible value adjustments.

- The Effect settings are saved with your Song. If you want to use your edited effects in other Songs, you can save and load them separately, as described on page 315.

Editing Rack XPander Effects

Effects shown with the Rack XPander panel front have custom windows for making settings. You open these parameter windows by clicking on the Edit button in the Rack XPander panel.



After having set up the effect as desired, you can close the parameter window and name and save the effect if you like (see below).

Naming Effects

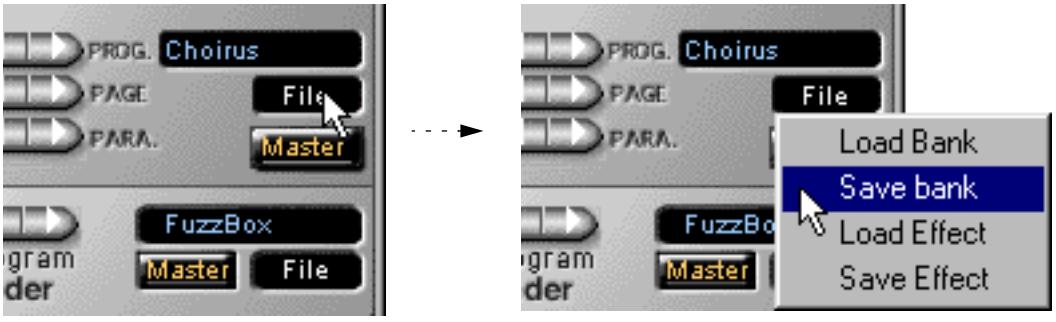
You can freely edit the effect parameters as described on the previous pages, and even name your edited effects:

1. **Click on the Program name in the top center of the effect processor "display".** A name box opens.
2. **Type in a new name.**
3. **Press [Return].**

Saving Effects

You can save your edited effects for further use by using the File pop-up menu to the right, under the Effect Type pop-up:

1. **Pull down the File pop-up menu.**



- **If you want to save the current Program only, select "Save Effect".**
- **If you want to save all Programs for the Effect Type, select "Save Bank".**

2. **In the file dialog that appears, select a name and location for the file.**
   It might be a good idea to prepare a special folder for your effects.

3. **Click Save.**

Loading Effects

You can load effects from disk for use in the selected effect processor:

1. **Pull down the File pop-up menu.**

- **If you want to load a single Program only, select “Load Effect”.**
- **If you want to load a complete Program Bank, select “Load Bank”.**

2. **In the file dialog that appears, find and select the file you want to load.**

3. **Click Open.**
   If you loaded a Bank, it will replace the current set of effect programs. If you loaded a single effect, it will replace the currently selected effect Program.

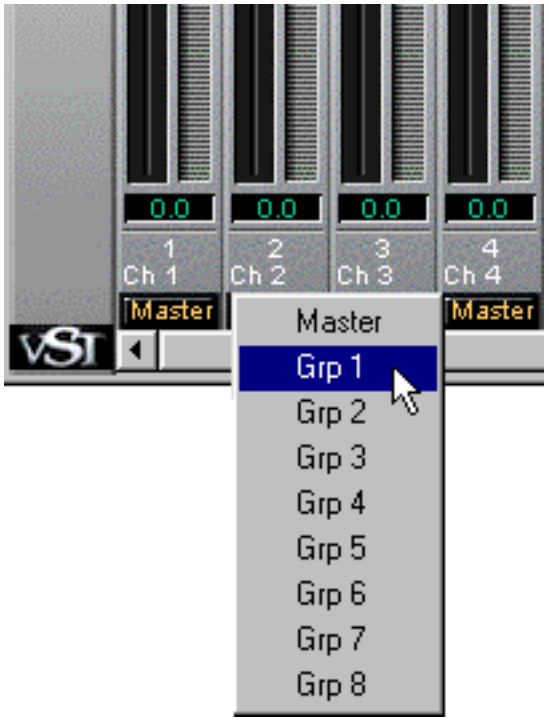
The Group Mixer

The Group Mixer is a separate mixer, with eight Groups (stereo channel pairs). You can route several audio channels to the same Group, to mix them with a single set of controls and add the same EQ or effects to all of them. This section describes the Group Mixer and how to use it.

Routing an Audio Channel to a Group

1. **Open the Monitor Mixer.**

2. **Locate the audio channel you want to route, and pull down the pop-up menu at the bottom of its channel strip.**
   On the pop-up menu, the Groups are listed after the available Output Buses.



In this case, only one Output Bus is available (Master).

3. **Select one of the eight Groups.**
   The output of the audio channel is now redirected to the selected Group.

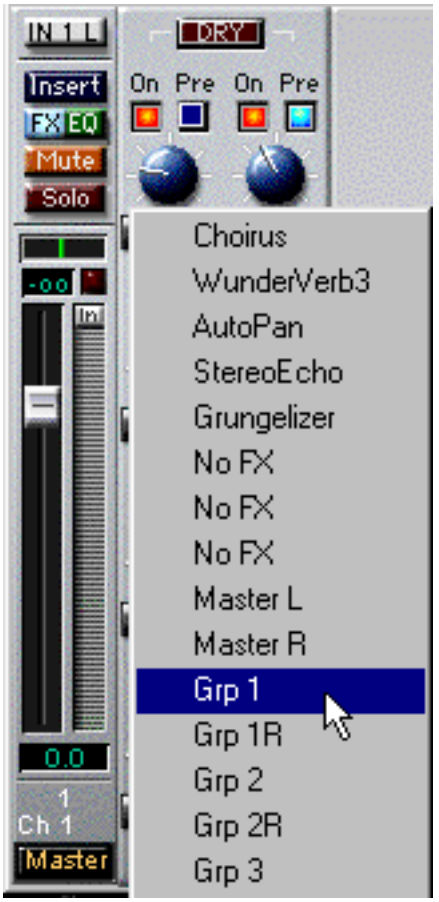
- The Groups are in stereo, which means that the pan setting for the audio channel is taken into account when you route the channel to a Group. If you want to route a stereo channel pair to a Group, you should pan the channels hard left/right and assign them to the same Group.

Routing an Effect Send to a Group

1. **Open the EQ/FX Send window for an audio channel, by clicking on its EQ button in the Monitor Mixer or the Inspector.**

2. **Activate a Send.**

3. **Pull down the Send Routing pop-up below the Send level knob and select one of the Groups on the list.**
   Note that the Send is routed to one *side* of a Group.



4. **Adjust the volume with the Send level knob.**

Opening the Group Mixer

There are two ways to display the Group Mixer:

- **Pull down the Audio menu and select “Group Mixer”,**

  or

- **Open the Monitor Mixer and scroll it to the right.**
  The Groups are displayed to the right of the regular audio channel strips. The Group channel strips are displayed in blue, to distinguish them from the regular channel strips.

The Group Mixer as a separate window...

...and as a part of the Monitor Mixer window.

Settings in the Group Mixer

The channel strips in the Group mixer are identical to the strips in the Monitor Mixer. The descriptions of the Monitor Mixer features apply to the Group Mixer as well. Some things to note:

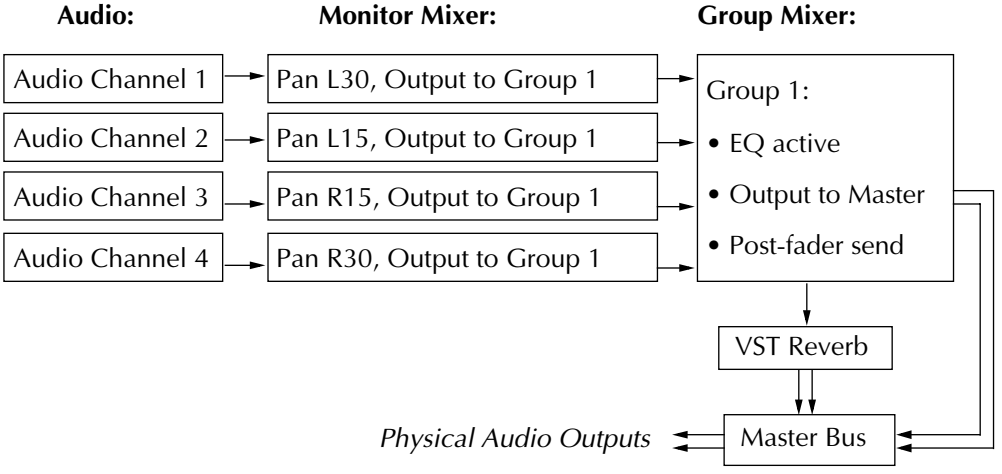
- **The Groups are always in stereo.**
  As with stereo channel pairs in the Monitor Mixer, all controls are "ganged" - dragging one fader will automatically move the other as well. If you want to make independent settings for a channel "side", hold down [Alt].

- **You can route the output of a Group to an Output Bus or to another Group with a higher number.**
  You cannot route a Group to itself or to Groups to the left of it in the Group Mixer. Routing is done with the pop-up menu at the bottom of each channel strip, independently for each "side" of a Group.

- **The "In" buttons are disabled in the Group Mixer.**
  Likewise, there are no Input (Monitoring) buttons. This is because Inputs are never connected directly to a Group.

An Example

In this example, we assume you have four Audio Tracks you want to "treat as one". For example, this could be four recordings of background vocals, which you want to mix as one entity:



Since you are applying EQ to a stereo submix (two channels) rather than to each individual Audio Channel (four channels), you will save processor power. Also, any EQ and Effect settings you make will affect all four channels - you don't have to copy settings. To set up the routing like this, proceed as follows:

1. **Play back the four audio channels together and set up volume balance and panning.**
   In the diagram above, each channel has been panned differently, to spread the background vocals in the stereo image.

2. **For each of the four audio channels, pull down the pop-up menu at the bottom of the channel strip, and select "Grp 1".**
   This routes the output of the audio channels to the Group Mixer instead of to an Output Bus.

3. **Pull down the Audio menu and select "Group Mixer", or scroll the Monitor Mixer to the right until you see the Group channel strips.**

4. **Locate Group 1 and make sure that its channel strips are panned fully left and right.**

5. **Pull down the Output Routing pop-up menu at the bottom of the channel strip and select "Master".**
   This routes the output of the Group to the Master Bus.

6. **Click on the big FX button to the left in the Group/Channel Mixer window.**
   The Send Effects window opens.

7. **Select and activate the Wunderverb 3 reverb effect.**

8. **In the Group/Channel Mixer window, click the EQ button for Group 1.**
   The EQ/FX send window for Group 1 opens.

9. **Activate and set up equalization for the Group.**

10. **Activate an effect send, and route it to the Wunderverb 3 effect.**

11. **Activate playback, and use the Group 1 faders to set the level of the combined background vocal recordings.**
    The level faders in the Group Mixer are automatically "ganged" so that they move together when you drag one of them.

ReWire

If you are the owner of Propellerhead Software ReBirth RB-338 version 2.0 or later, you can fully integrate this with Cubase VST, having the output of ReBirth (the synths, the drum machines or even individual drum sounds) appear on separate audio channels in Cubase VST, while running the two programs in perfect synchronization. All this is done using the ReWire facility, found on the Audio menu in Cubase VST. For more information about this, see the ReBirth documentation.

Volume and Pan Automation – Dynamic Events or Monitor Mixer

Cubase VST offers two ways of automating volume and pan: the Dynamic Events set in the Audio Editor and the Write function in the Monitor Mixer. The two methods have their specific properties and uses, as described below:

Dynamic Events

The Dynamic events allow you to control the volume and panning individually for *each segment*. This allows you to create fade-ins, fade-outs and auto-pan effects, which are then integral parts of each segment. This is all done in the Audio Editor, see page 274.

What this means is that if you for example create a volume curve for one segment, and later copy this segment for use in other places in the song, all copies will "inherit" the volume curve of the original segment. You can later adjust the curve for each individual segment, if needed.

A more advanced possibility is to use Ghost events. These are audio events which all *share* a segment, and thereby share a volume or pan curve. This means that if one is adjusted, they are all affected. See page 351.

- If you use the Dynamic Events to control volume, you cannot boost the s ignal above unity gain (0.0 dB).

Monitor Mixer Automation

Using the Write function in the Monitor mixer you can automate Volume and Panning (actually all mixer settings and changes) for each *audio channel*. All Tracks in the Arrange window that are set to play back via this audio channel will be affected likewise by these controls. This method is described on the following pages.

Let's say, as an example, that one channel is first used for a guitar and later in the song for vocals. If you then use the Monitor window to lower the volume in the guitar intro, you will get the same lower volume for the vocal, since they are on the same channel.

When you are using the Monitor mixer to control volume, you can go above unity gain (actually amplify the sound). Furthermore, you can automate Mutes and Solos.

Conclusion

So, when to use Dynamic Events and when to use the Monitor Mixer depends on what is needed at the moment; if you need to make minute adjustment of shorter segments and repeat those in the Song, you should choose Dynamic Events. If you make longer non-repeating recordings and prefer to adjust volumes via (on-screen) faders, you use the Monitor window.

Do not hesitate to combine the two methods of automation, simultaneously or during different parts of the Song. The settings you make in the Monitor window are relative to the volume value delivered by the Dynamic Events automation. For example, if the Dynamic Event volume has a value of -2.0 dB, and you set the Monitor window fader to -0.4 dB, the resulting volume will be -2.4 dB.

- Please note that the Monitor Mixer automation is not restricted to Volume and Pan - Mutes, Solo, EQ and Effect settings can also be automated.

Automating the Monitor mixer

Your actions in the Monitor mixer window can be automated in a very straightforward way: by "writing" them into a special Audiomix Part. When played back, this Part will repeat your fader movements and button presses just like you performed them. You will even see the faders and buttons move on the screen, like on a physical mixer with motorized controls.

What can be automated?

Mixdown in Cubase VST can be completely automated! The following parameter settings are recorded with the Write function:

For each channel and Group:

- Volume
- Pan
- Mute
- Solo
- EQ On switch
- Settings for 4 EQ modules
- 8 x Effect Send Active switches
- 8 x Effect Send levels
- 8 x Effect Send PRE switches
- Effect DRY switch
- 4 x Insert Effect Program selection (audio channel 1 to 32 only)
- 4 x Insert Effect parameters (the 15 first parameters for each effect - audio channel 1 to 32 only)

Global for all channels:

- Master volume Left and Right
- 8 x Send Effect "Master" level
- 8 x Send Effect Program selection
- 8 x Send Effect parameters (the 16 first parameters for each effect)
- 4 x Master Effect Program selection
- 4 x Master Effect parameters (the 8 first parameters for each effect)

Recording your actions

1. **Open the Monitor window.**
   If you want to record Group mixer actions, you can do this in the Monitor window or in the separate Group mixer window (which contains duplicates of the Read and Write buttons in the Monitor window).

2. **Click on the Write button in the upper left corner to activate recording.**
   While this button is "lit" (activated), every volume, pan, mute or solo movement you make will be recorded.

3. **Start playback.**

4. **Move the faders and pan controls, mute and solo as you would during a manual mixdown.**
   Since you can repeat this recording several times, it is probably easiest to mix one or a couple of channels at a time, and stop and deactivate the Write function in between. That way, you can also Undo your last run if you're not satisfied, using the Undo command on the Edit menu.

5. **Stop playback.**
   If you check the Arrange window, you will note that a special Mixer Track called "Audiomix" has been created. This Track contains one long Part named "Audiomix", in which all your Monitor mixer actions are stored. Don't worry about the length of this Part; it will automatically be lengthened if you record past its end.
   Please note that there is only one Audiomix Part/Track, created the first time you use the Write function in your Arrangement. No new Parts are created the next time you use the Write function; information is added to the existing Part instead.

6. **Deactivate the Write function by clicking on the button.**

● Exiting the Monitor window will automatically deactivate the Write function.

Recording Mixer settings in Stop mode

The Write function works in Stop mode as well as during playback. If you activate Write when Cubase VST is stopped, all changes you make to your mixer parameters are recorded at the current Song Position. This feature can be used creatively if you need initial mixer settings, abrupt changes, etc.

Undoing your recording

If you select Undo from the Edit menu, all actions recorded *since you last activated Write* will be undone. Therefore, make it a habit to always deactivate Write after each recording "pass" and listen to what you recorded.

- **If you find this too cumbersome, you can make separate Audiomix Parts for the different audio channels or recording "passes", and edit/delete these afterwards.**
  This is described on page 327.

Playing back your recorded Mixer actions

1. **Check that the Audiomix Track or Part are not muted.**

2. **Activate the Automated playback by clicking on the Read button in the upper left corner of the Monitor window.**

You may have Write and Read activated simultaneously, if you want to watch and listen to your recorded mixer actions while you're recording fader movements for another mixer channel, etc.

3. **Start playback as usual.**
   The monitor faders and controls will move automatically, following your recorded actions.

Moving and Muting the Audiomix Part

The Audiomix Part can be handled as any Mixer Part:

- **If you want to turn off Monitor mixer automation from the Arrange window, you can mute the Audiomix Part or Track.**
- **You can copy recorded mixer actions to several places in your Arrangement by cutting out the relevant section of the Audiomix Part with the Scissors tool and duplicating it, placing the copies wherever you want them.**

Working with one Audiomix Part for each Audio Channel

Although Cubase VST only creates one dedicated Audiomix Track, there is a way to structure your Mixer Automation into different Parts for different channels, which makes it easier to edit and redo mixer recordings you're not satisfied with:

1. **Record your fader movements and other mixer actions for the first audio channel, as described on the previous page.**

2. **Deactivate the Write function and go to the Arrange window.**

3. **Make a new Mixer Track.**
   It might be a good idea to name it after the audio channel you just mixed, to avoid confusion later on.

4. **Move the entire Audiomix Part to the new Track.**

5. **Open the Monitor again, activate the Write function and record your mixer actions for the next audio channel.**
   Now Cubase VST creates a new Audiomix Part on the original, empty Audiomix Track. If you activate the Read function, your previously recorded Part will be played back from its new Track, so you can watch your recorded fader movements while you continue with new audio channels.

6. **Repeat steps 2 to 5 for as many channels you like.**
   You will end up with a number of Mixer Tracks, all playing back simultaneously, affecting different audio channels in the Monitor mixer. If you want to, you can keep it that way. If you like to clean up your Arrange window, you can Merge the Parts into one, as described in the chapter "The Arrangement - More on what you can do with Parts and Tracks".

Editing the Audiomix Part

The Audiomix Part contains Mixer Events, which can be edited in List Edit:

1. **Select the Audiomix Part in the Arrange Window.**

2. **Open List Edit.**

3. **Pull the divider to the right so that you can see the Comment column.**
   This column shows which Mixer parameter (volume, pan etc) and audio channel each Event controls.

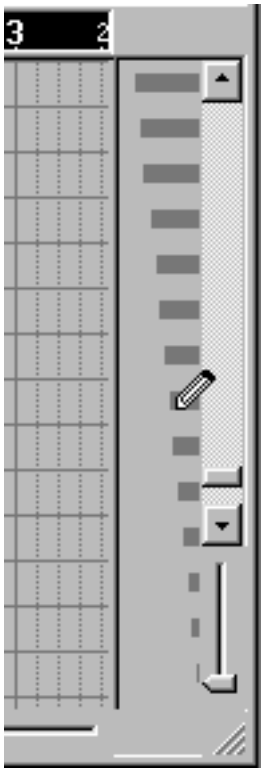
- Switch parameters (parameters with on/off values) are handled in a special way. All information about a switch Event (switch name, on/off) will be displayed in the Comments column, but do not try to edit a Switch value if you are not sure about how the Value 2 encoding works (see page 329).

---

4. **Select an Event that corresponds to the fader (or other Mixer control) you want to edit.**

5. **Pull down the Mask pop-up menu and select "Mask It!".**
   This will hide all Events except those of the same type as the selected (that is, only Events of the same type and the same audio channel as the selected one will be shown).

6. **Look at the "Value 2 display" to the right in the editor.**
   As described in the List Edit chapter, this display shows Value 2 for each Event as a horizontal bargraph. If you have recorded a fader movement, this will be displayed as a ramp, as shown below:



7. Use the Pencil tool to redraw the curve, or the Eraser tool to delete Events.
You can of course edit the values in the Value 2 column in the actual list. Use this feature if for example you want to set a fader to a specific value at a certain position.

● The value 101 for a fader corresponds to 0 dB (unity gain).

8. When you're done, pull down the Mask pop-up menu, select "No Mask" and press [Return] to leave List Edit.

How List values work for Switches

The text in the Comments column corresponds to the numerical value in the Value 1 column. Each *continuous parameter* (such as volume, pan, etc) on *each audio channel*, has a unique Event number (value 1), while the Value 2 column shows the parameter values. However, switches (on/off-parameters) are handled in a special way:
All switches on the same audio channel share the same Event number!

All other information (which switch is it and what is its state) is encoded into Value 2. If you want to edit the values of switch Events, you have to consult the tables below to find the appropriate values. This is the Value 2 functionality for switches on each audio channel:

Switch Name	"On" value	"Off" value
Mute	64	0
Solo	65	1
EQ On/Off	66	2
Effect send DRY	67	3
Effect send 1 On/Off	68	4
Effect send 2 On/Off	69	5
Effect send 3 On/Off	70	6
Effect send 4 On/Off	71	7
Effect send 5 On/Off	80	16
Effect send 6 On/Off	81	17
Effect send 7 On/Off	82	18
Effect send 8 On/Off	83	19
Effect send 1 PRE switch	72	8
Effect send 2 PRE switch	73	9
Effect send 3 PRE switch	74	10
Effect send 4 PRE switch	75	11
Effect send 5 PRE switch	84	20

Switch Name	"On" value	"Off" value
Effect send 6 PRE switch	85	21
Effect send 7 PRE switch	86	22
Effect send 8 PRE switch	87	23
EQ module 1 Enable switch	76	12
EQ module 2 Enable switch	77	13
EQ module 3 Enable switch	78	14
EQ module 4 Enable switch	79	15

Combining manual Mixing and/or two kinds of Automation

Even if you automate the volume or pan for an audio channel, you can still make a manual adjustment by dragging the fader/pan control in the Monitor window. Just remember to leave the Write function off, or your movements will be recorded "on top of" the already recorded automation.

Likewise, if you have automated volume or pan using Dynamic Events, you can still manually or automatically adjust the volume/pan in the Monitor mixer.

25

Installing and using external effect plug-ins

About this chapter

This chapter describes how to install new effect plug-ins, for use as mixer effects or master effects. There are two basic kinds of plug-ins:

- **VST-native Plug-ins.**
  These are effect plug-ins in VST:s "own" format, and can only be used with Steinberg programs such as Cubase VST and WaveLab.

- **DirectX Plug-ins.**
  Microsoft DirectX is a set of standards and routines for handling various kinds of multimedia under Windows95 and Windows NT. DirectX plug-ins (previously called ActiveMovie plug-ins) can be used with many different programs and applications, including Cubase VST.

The two plug-in types are handled slightly differently:

VST-native Plug-ins

Installation

VST-native plug-ins are installed simply by dragging the files with extension ".dll" from the plug-in disk to the "Vstplugins" folder (for details, see the installation document that comes with the plug-in). When you launch Cubase VST and open one of the Effects windows, you will find the installed plug-in on the Effect type pop-up.

About ".fxp"- and ".fxb"-files

When you purchase or download VST-native plug-ins, you may find files with the extensions ".fxp" or ".fxb" included in the package. These are effect Program and Effect Bank files respectively, containing saved parameter settings for the specific effect plug-in. You can place these files anywhere on your hard disk, but we recommend that you make a separate folder for each plug-in that you have Program or Bank files for, and place this inside your "Vstplugins" folder.

- **Read more about how to load and save effect Programs and Banks on page 315.**

Using and Editing the Effects

As described on page 308, plug-in effects are selected from the Effect pop-up menu in one of the three Effect windows (Send, Insert or Master Effect). VST-native plug-ins are always shown in the middle section of the Effect pop-up menu.

- If you cannot find your installed plug-in on the Effect pop-up menu, it may be that you are in the wrong Effect window. Effect plug-ins with mono inputs are only available in the Send or Insert Effects windows, and plug-ins with stereo inputs are only available in the Insert or Master Effects windows.

After selecting the effect from the pop-up, two things can happen, depending on the plug-in. If the plug-in uses VST's standard Effect user interface, the settings for the plug-in simply appear in the selected effect, as with any on-board VST effect.

The standard VST effect interface.

However, many plug-ins use special user interfaces, with windows of their own. If this is the case, the selected effect gets the label "Rack XPander". This is a generic front-end for all plug-in effects with non-standard user interfaces. To display the parameters and settings, click the Edit button. The Prog button and File pop-up menu work as with standard VST effects.

The Rack XPander interface.

- **See page 306 for more info on how to use and edit external Effects.**

DirectX Plug-ins

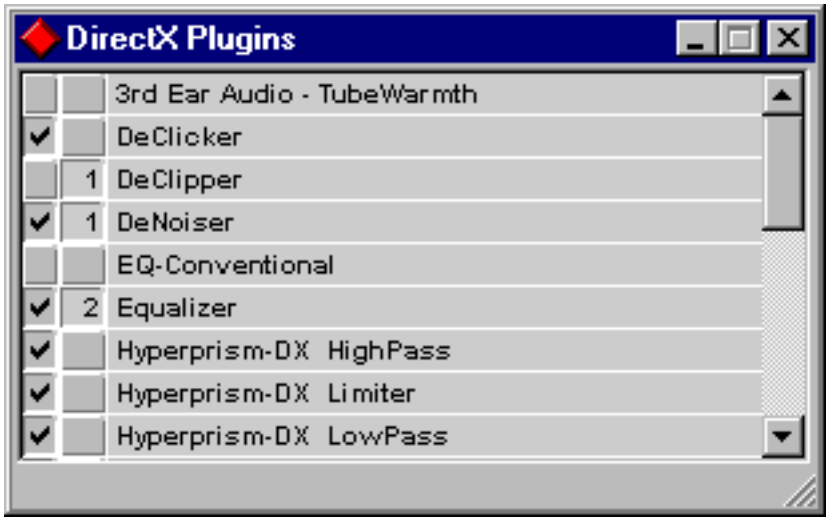
Installation

To be able to use DirectX plug-ins, you must first have DirectX installed on your computer. Therefore, DirectX 5 is included with Cubase VST and installed automatically when you install the program. Refer to the Microsoft web site for information about updates, etc.

DirectX plug-ins should *not* be placed in the VST folder! Rather, you should follow the installation instructions included with each plug-in.

Managing and selecting DirectX plug-ins

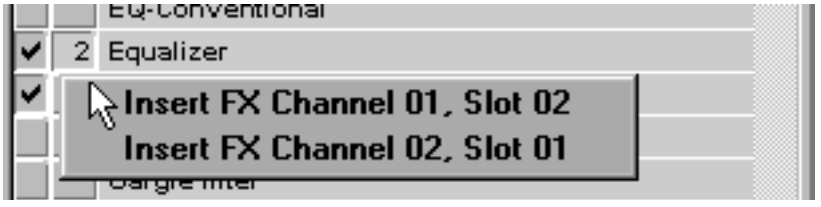
On the Audio menu you will find an item called “DirectX Plug-ins...”. Selecting this opens a dialog listing all the available DirectX compatible plug-ins in your system.



- **To activate a plug-in (make it available for selection), click in the left column.**
  Only the currently activated plug-ins (shown with a check sign in the left column) will appear in the FX lists in the Send, Insert and Master Effects windows.

  The idea here is that there could be a variety of DirectX plug-ins in your system, many of which are not intended for musical audio processing. Disabling these helps you keep the FX pop-up menus in Cubase VST more manageable.

- **The second column indicates how many instances of the plug-in are currently used in Cubase VST.**
  Clicking in this column (or right-clicking anywhere in the row) for a plug-in which is already in use produces a pop-up showing exactly where each use occurs.



- Please note that a plug-in may be in use even if it isn't "activated" in the left column! You might for example have opened a Song containing effects that currently are "deactivated" on the menu. The left column purely determines whether or not the plug-in will be visible in the FX pop-up menus.

Using and Editing the Effects

Once enabled, DirectX plug-in effects can be selected from the Effect pop-up menu in one of the three Effect windows (Send, Insert or Master Effect). DirectX plug-ins are always shown in the lower half of the Effect pop-up menu.

- As with VST-native effects, plug-ins with mono inputs are only available in the Send or Insert Effects windows, and plug-ins with stereo inputs are only available in the Insert or Master Effects windows.

After selecting the effect from the pop-up menu, a Rack XPander interface will appear (see page 333). To display the window with parameters and settings for the plug-in effect, click the Edit button (for detailed information, see the documentation for the DirectX plug-in). The Prog button and File pop-up menu work as with standard VST effects.

26

Importing and Exporting Audio

Importing audio files into the Arrangement

By using the Import Audio function on the File menu, you can quickly import audio into your Arrangement without having to open the Pool:

1. **Select the Audio Track to which you want to import an audio file.**
   Note that you can only import stereo files to stereo Tracks and vice versa.

2. **Move the Left Locator to where you want the audio file to start.**

3. **Pull down the File menu and select "Import Audio...".**
   A file dialog opens.

4. **Select a file format (WAV, AIF or both) from the File Type pop-up.**
   Files of the selected type(s) are listed in the file dialog box.

5. **Use the file dialog box to locate the file and select it.**

- **You can audition the audio file with the Play button.**
  When you click the Play button, its label changes to "Stop" and the selected audio file is played back. Playback continues until you click on Stop, or select another file.

6. **Click "Open".**
   The file is imported into the Pool, just as when using the Import Audio File command on the File menu in the Pool. A segment that plays the whole file is created and placed in an Audio Part, which in turn is placed on the selected Audio Track, at the position of the Left Locator.

Mixing down to an audio file

The Export Audio feature in Cubase VST allows you to mix down any number of audio tracks, complete with effects and mixer automation, to a new audio file, in one of several file formats, mono or stereo.

- Please note that MIDI Tracks are not included in this type of mixdown. To make a complete mixdown containing both MIDI and audio, follow the instructions on page 341.

---

1. **Set up the left and right locator to encompass the area that you want to mix down.**

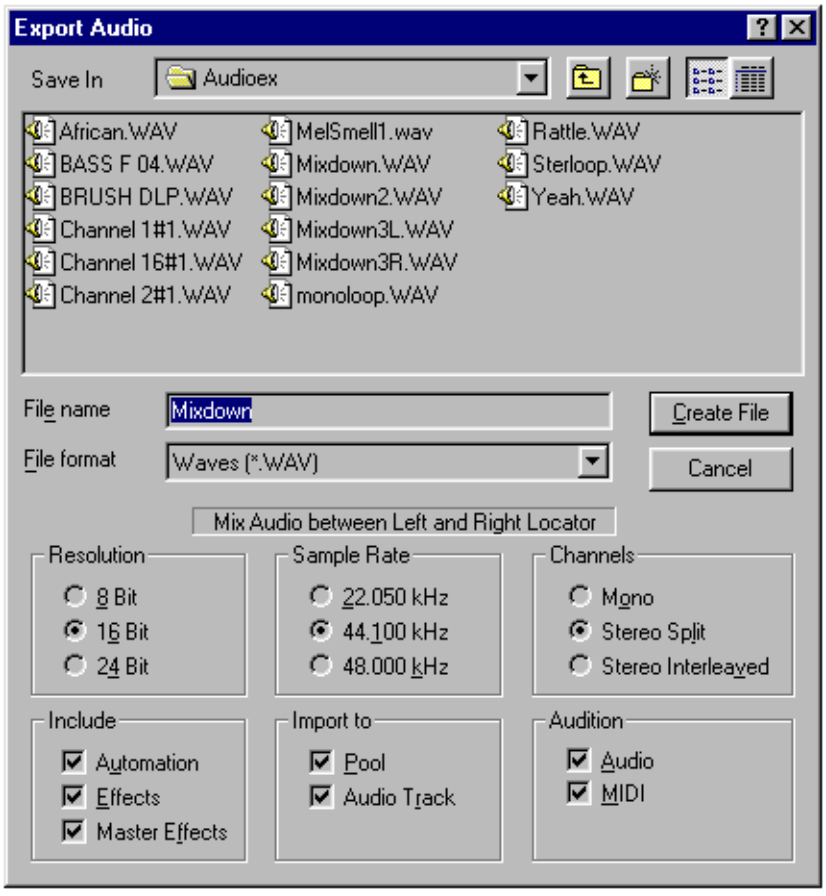
2. **Set up your Tracks, so that they play back the way you want.**
   You can use the automation in the Monitor Mixer window, as well as Effects and Master Effects. If you are planning not to include any of these features in the exported audio file, you should turn them off while preparing the Tracks as well, to hear what you get.

- If you plan to export a stereo file and import it back into VST, it might be a good idea to leave audio channels 1 and 2 unused when you set up your Tracks for mixdown. See the section about imported files and Audio Tracks on page 341.

---

3. **If you want to include the automation, make sure that the Read button is activated in the Monitor window.**

4. **Pull down the File menu and select “Export Audio”.**
   The Export Audio dialog opens.



5. **Decide whether you want to include automation and/or effects, by using the "Include" checkboxes.**
   You can independently include the automation from the Monitor window, the Mixer Effects and the Master Effects.

6. **If you want to automatically import the resulting audio file back into Cubase VST, activate the "Import to" checkboxes.**
   If you activate the "Pool" checkbox, the file will appear in the Pool. Activating the "Audio Track" checkbox as well, will place the file in a new Part on an Audio Track, starting at the Left Locator. For more info about the created Audio Track, see page 341.

7. **If you want an audible verification during the mixdown process, activate the "Audition Audio" checkbox.**
   This will cause the unmuted audio Tracks to rapidly play back while the mixdown file is created.

● The Audition Audio option is not available if you select "Stereo Interleaved" or a Resolution other than 16 bit (see below).

---

8. Select mono or stereo with the "Channels" radio buttons.
You have three choices here:

- You can make a mono file, in which case the left and right channels are mixed (as when using the mono switch in the Master window).
- You can select the Stereo Split option, in which case two mono files (one for each stereo side) will be created. If you have activated the "Import to Audio Track" options in step 6 above, the two files are grouped and placed on an "Any" channel audio Track, using channel 1 and 2.
- Finally, you can select Stereo Interleaved, in which case a true stereo file is created.

9. Select a file type.
You can choose between AIFF and WAVE. Which type to choose depends on which other programs you plan to use the file in. Please note that WAVE files (audio files with the extension ".WAV", used for PC) cannot be imported into Cubase VST for Macintosh.

10.Select Resolution.
The choices are 8, 16 and 24 bit. 8 bit audio files are of limited fidelity, but can be useful for multimedia applications, or situations when you want to keep the file size down. 24 bit files can be imported into some high-end audio editors, such as Steinberg WaveLab. If you plan to use the file in VST, you have to select the 16 bit option.

11.Select a sample rate.
You can choose between 22.05, 44.1 and 48 kHz.

● It is possible to import and/or audition the file no matter which sample rate is selected. Please note however, that if the selected sample rate is another than the one used by Cubase VST, the pitch and length of the audio will be incorrect when you audition it or play it back.
For example, if you have selected 48kHz and VST plays back at 44.1 kHz, the re-imported audio file will play back too slow, and with a lower pitch.

12.Select a folder and a name for the audio file to be created.
If you have selected the "Stereo Split" option in step 8 above, the two files will have the same name, but with the letter "L" appended for the left channel file and "R" for the right channel file.

13.Press the Create File button.
The audio file is created. If you have activated the "Audition" option, the resulting audio will be cued (played back rapidly) during the process.

If you have activated the "Import to" options, the file will be imported into the Pool and, if you like, onto an audio Track. You can play it back to check the results immediately. Just remember to mute the original Tracks, and turn off any eq and/or effects for the audio channel(s) used by the imported Track, so that you really hear the true result (see below).

About imported files and Audio Tracks

If you choose to automatically import the audio file into the Arrangement, using the "Import to Audio Track" checkbox, the segment(s) and Track will have the following properties:

- **If an Audio Track is selected when you select Export Audio, the imported audio is placed in a Part on the selected Track.**
  The selected Audio Track must be a mono Track if the audio file is in mono, a stereo track if "Stereo Interleaved" is selected and an "Any" channel Track if the "Stereo Split" option is used. Otherwise, a new Track is created, as described below.

- **If no Audio Track is selected, a new Track, named MixDown, is created.**

Including your MIDI music in the mixdown

If you want to prepare a complete master audio file, you probably want to include some MIDI material in your Arrangement. Proceed as follows:

1. **Set up all your MIDI Tracks, instruments and external sound equipment, so that your Arrangement plays back as intended.**

2. **Connect the output of your mixer, synthesizer or whatever sound source you use, to the VST audio inputs.**
   To avoid feedback, make sure not to include the VST audio output in the mix.

3. **Select one or two Tracks for recording, and check the recording levels with the Input Meter function in the Master window, by playing back loud sections of the MIDI music.**

4. **Rewind to where the MIDI Parts start, and activate recording.**
   When you are done, stop recording as usual. You will now have audio Tracks that play back the sound of your MIDI equipment. You can now mute the corresponding MIDI Tracks.

5. **If you need to overdub more MIDI material, repeat steps 3 and 4 (using new audio Tracks).**

6. **Finally, use the Export Audio function as described in this chapter, to create an audio file containing a complete mixdown of your Arrangement.**

27

Working with ReCycle files

About ReCycle

Steinberg ReCycle is a program specifically designed for working with sampled loops. Using ReCycle you can "slice" a loop and make separate samples of each beat. Among other things, this makes it possible to change the tempo of loops without affecting the pitch, and edit the loop as if it was built from individual sounds.

- At the time of writing, the currently available version of ReCycle for Windows does not allow export of "REX" files for use in Cubase VST. Please contact your dealer to find out when this update will be available.

However, if you have access to ReCycle version 1.6 (or later) for Macintosh, you can export ReCycled files in a format which can be read by both Windows and Macintosh versions of Cubase VST.

- When moving ReCycle “REX” files from the Macintosh to the Windows platform, make sure their names have the extension “.REX”.

Using ReCycle files in VST

To ReCycle a file for use in Cubase VST, proceed as follows:

1. **Locate the file on disk and open it in ReCycle.**
   This can either be a file recorded in Cubase, or a file of any other origin.

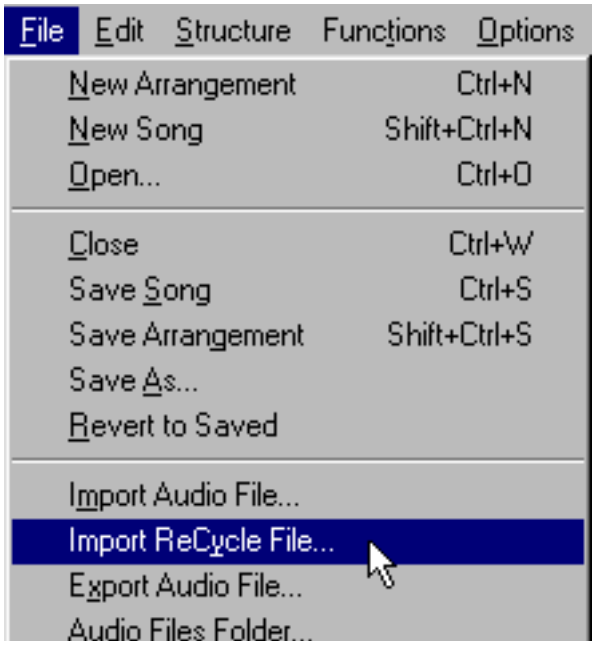
2. **Set up the slices, bar length, time signature and sampler options as desired.**
   A typical application would be “slicing for tempo changes”, see the application examples in the ReCycle manual for details.

3. **Select “Export to ReCycle! REX file”, from the ReCycle File menu.**

4. **Specify a location and name for the file and save it.**

5. **In Cubase VST, select a mono Audio Track on to which the file can be imported, and set the Left Locator to the position at which you'd like the file to appear.**
   There are special rules for importing into “Any” Tracks, see page 346.

6. **Select “Import ReCycle file...”, from the File menu.**



7. **Locate the ReCycle export file you just saved, and open it.**
   The following will now occur:

- The file is added to the Pool.
- A number of Segments are created for the file, each corresponding to a slice in Recycle.
- A Part for playing back these Segments is automatically created on the active Track, starting at the Left Locator position.

Now you can play back the ReCycled file in any tempo, as if using a sampler. You can also edit it in detail, quantize, etc, for example from the Audio editor.

- **If you need to re-import the file into the Arrangement, drag the file item from the Pool to the Arrangement, as with any other file.**
  A new Part is then created.

● Please note that the new file will sound very strange if played back in its entirety. It should only be triggered from the Part which has been created in the Arrangement.
Also note that if you ReCycle a file already used in the Arrangement, you will have two copies of it, one regular and one ReCycled. You might want to delete – or at least mute – the original, to avoid confusion.

About tempo changes and the last Segment(s)

Sometimes you may import a ReCycle file into an Arrangement with a faster tempo than that of the original loop. In this case the slices (Segments) will overlap, and the last segment will continue past the end of the Part.

An audio event in Cubase should never play past the end of the Part otherwise you will hear audio in the Arrangement that you can't actually "see". To get around this problem, Cubase VST automatically shortens segments that would otherwise play past the end of the Part, so that they end *exactly* where the Part ends. This is done automatically when you import the ReCycle file.

In fact, if you have used a very high stretch factor in ReCycle, or if the Cubase tempo is drastically different from the original loop tempo, several of the last segments could be affected by this problem and will be shortened. If you later raise the tempo, the shortened segments will then become *too* short, since they no longer play to the end of the Part. There are two ways to fix this:

- **Manually adjust the length of the offending segments, in the Audio Editor.**
- **Delete the existing Part and re-import the ReCycle file, by dragging the *file* symbol from the Pool to the Arrange window.**
  In the new Part that appears the length of the last segment(s) will be adjusted to fit the *current* tempo.

Importing into "Any" Tracks - Polyphonic playback

While a sampler or sampling synthesizer is *polyphonic*, each track in Cubase VST is *monophonic*, that is, it can only play back one sound at a time. This is not ideal when playing many short overlapping sounds, which is what happens with ReCycled files.

Drum loops should not normally be affected, however with other types of material, bass loops etc, the monophonic character of a Cubase VST channel might lead to clicks in the transition between segments. To avoid this, Cubase can "simulate" the polyphonic behaviour of a sampler by splitting up a ReCycle file, so that the "slices" play back on more than one channel.

Proceed as follows:

1. **Examine your Arrangement and locate two or more consecutive channels that you can reserve for a ReCycle file.**
   The number of tracks you need for Polyphonic operation depends on the nature of the loop. The trick is to avoid overlapping segments, since it is in the overlap that clicks might occur. If you have no idea how many to choose, don't worry, the program will suggest a number for you, see below.

● Please note that you can minimize the number of Tracks needed by using as small a stretch factor as possible in ReCycle, and avoiding very short segments.

---

2. **Create or select a Track and set it to Channel "Any".**

3. **Set the Left Locator to the position at which you want the Part to appear.**

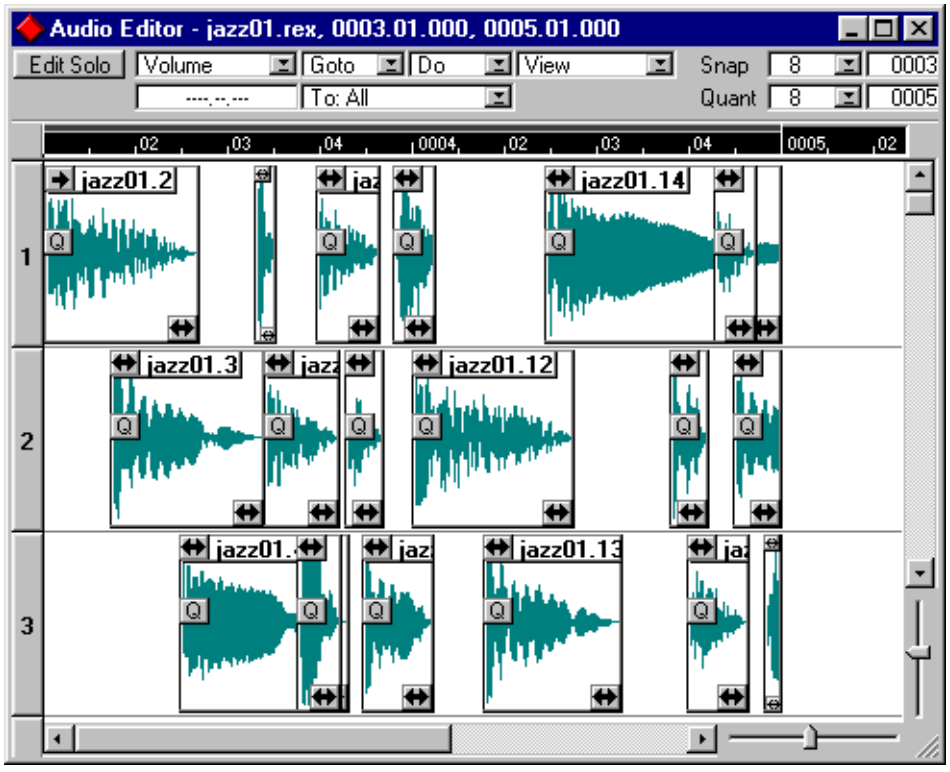
4. **Import the ReCycle file from disk.**

5. **In the dialog that appears, the program suggests an appropriate number of channels to ensure that no overlap occurs.**
   This can be changed if necessary.

6. **Using the same dialog you can specify which channel to use first.**
   For example if you want the file to use channels 1, 2 and 3, specify "1" as the start channel and "3" as the number of channels to use.

7. **Click OK.**

8. **Open the Part that appears, and examine it in the Audio Editor.**
   As you see, the slices now alternate between the specified channels.



The drawback of this procedure is that more than one audio channel is "used up" by a single file. However, if you run out of audio channels you can use the "Export Audio" feature to turn your "multi-channel" ReCycle Track into one file, that only requires one audio channel, see below.

Editing Tips and Tricks

- You can completely re-assemble your drum patterns by editing slices in the audio editor for example creating variations and fills by duplicating and moving events.
- To replace the sounds in the loop, while maintaining the timing integrity of the playing, you can use the “segment pop-up” feature to make the events play other segments than they originally did. Hold down [Control] and [Alt], click on an event and select the desired segment from the menu that appears.
- Once you have finished editing a ReCycle file (or several), you can mix it (them) down to one audio file, using the “Export Audio” feature described elsewhere in this book. This minimizes the audio channels required for the loops. If also simplifies some editing procedures, since there are fewer events to handle when “cutting and pasting”. Doing this does not mean you can’t continue to perform detailed editing on the loop. You can always keep the original ReCycle Track muted, and re-do the “Audio Export” whenever it is needed.
- Exporting a “Polyphonic” ReCycle Track into a mono Track means it will only use up one audio channel. No clicks will appear in this file, since the mix-down incorporates any overlapping audio as it is originally played on multiple channels.

28

Making the Most of the Event/ Segment Relationship

What is an Event really?

An Audio Event is an item in Cubase VST that contains three pieces of information:

- A reference to a segment.
- A start point, relative to the Part the Event resides in.
- A Q-Point (see page 233).

Everything else that you see when you edit an Event in the Audio Editor, is really in the segment!

What is a Segment really?

A segment is an item that contains the following information:

- A reference to an audio file on your hard disk. By reference we mean that the segment doesn't contain any audio in itself; it only "points" to a file on disk.
- A start and end inset, to determine which section of the file that the segment plays.
- A name.
- A volume curve (if you have created one).
- A pan curve (if you have created one).
- A set of Match Points (if you have created Match Points, either manually or using the Get M-Points function).

Copying Audio Events

There are two principal ways of copying Audio Events in Cubase VST: “normal” copying and Ghost copying. These two methods are fundamentally different, which is important to understand.

Making “Normal” Copies of Audio Events

When you copy Events in any “normal” way, new segments are automatically created. This means that if you edit the segment in a copied Event, the original segment is unaffected.

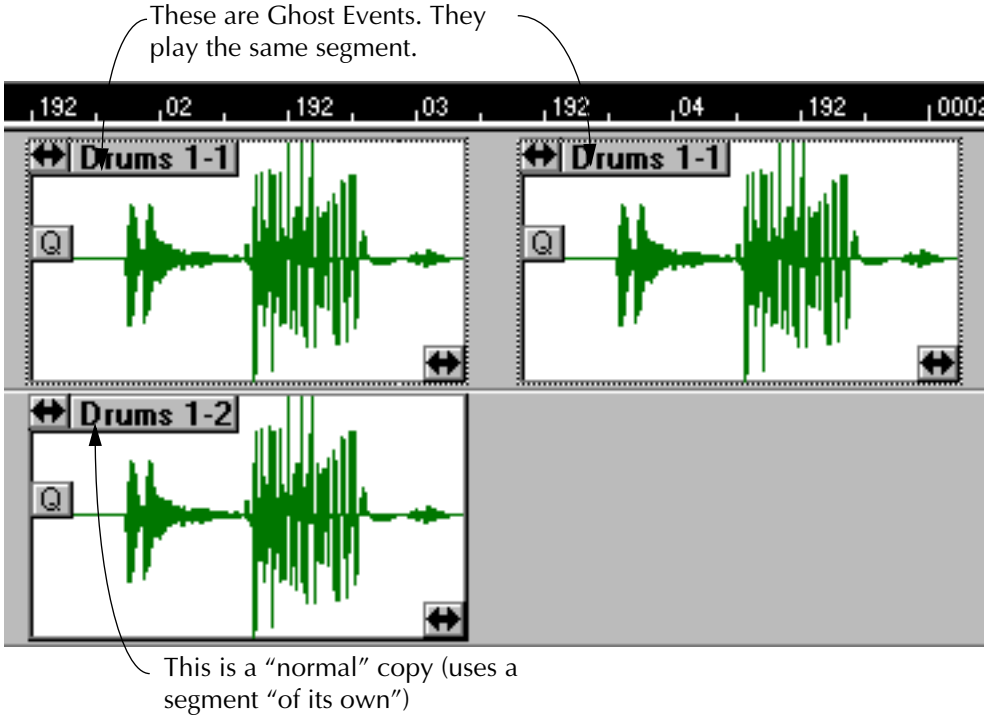
When should I use “normal” copies?

There are a number of situations where this is exactly what you want. You may want to add a volume curve to one of the copied Events, but not to the others, or shorten one of the copied Events, to “make room” for another Event on the same audio channel, etc.

Making Ghost Copies of Audio Events

A Ghost Event is any Audio Event that plays the same segment as another Event. This means that there are no “original” Events; all Events that play the same segment are considered Ghosts.

Ghost Events are shown with dotted outlines in the audio editor.



When are Ghost Events created?

Ghost Events are created when you perform the following operations:

- **When you ghost copy an Event in the Audio editor.**
  This is done by holding down [Control] and dragging the Event to a new position in the Part.

- **When you drag a segment from the Pool into the Audio editor or the Arrange window, and that segment is already played by another Event.**
  As soon as two or more Events play the same segment, the Events are Ghost Events.

- **When you make a Ghost Copy of an Audio Part.**
- **In the Audio editor, when you hold down [Alt] and [Control] and select a new segment for an Event, and the segment you select is already in use.**

When should I use Ghost Events?

If you edit a segment, the changes you make are reflected in all Events that play the segment. Therefore, you may use Ghost Events if you want any editing you do to apply "every time that segment" is used. This includes:

- **The start and end insets (when you edit them "in the Pool" - see below).**
  Allows you to for example fine-tune the length of a drum loop and use it repeatedly in your Arrangement.

- **The volume and pan curves.**
  Lets you for example smooth out the volume in an "uneven" segment, or create auto-pan effects.

- **The Match Points.**
- **The name of the segment.**

The following editing is not copied to Ghost Events:

- **Changing the position of the Q-Points.**
  These are part of the Events, not the segments.

- **Changing the start and end insets "in the Audio editor".**
  This will instead automatically create a new segment. However, if you hold down [Control] while you are changing the insets, all Ghost Events will be affected and no new segment will be created.

Converting a Ghost Event to a “normal” Event

If you find that you want to edit one Event without affecting its Ghost Copies, you have to convert it to a “normal” Event first:

1. **Open the Pool and select the segment that the Event plays.**

2. **Pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Duplicate Segment.**
   A new segment with the same name is created. If you want to, you may change the name of the new segment to avoid confusion.

3. **Return to the Audio Editor and select the Event in question.**

4. **Hold down [Alt] and [Control] and click on the Event.**
   A pop-up menu opens, containing all segments “belonging to” the same audio file.

5. **Select the segment you created in the Pool.**
   Now, the Event is no longer a Ghost Event, and you can edit it without affecting any other Events.

About Audio Ghost Parts

You can create Ghost-copies of Audio Parts, by using the Pencil tool, the Repeat command or by [Control]-dragging. The audio Ghost Parts behave just like MIDI Ghost Parts.

29

Optimizing Audio Performance

Introduction

This chapter contains several different sections:

- **Information about the components in your computer system and how they affect audio performance.**
  This is mainly intended as background information and as a help for when you plan to update your system.

- **Information about the System dialog and Driver settings.**
  This is important information for all Cubase VST users.

- **Some tips for optimizing audio performance.**

- **Hard disk maintenance tips.**
  You do back up regularly, don't you?

About Audio Cards

Which cards will work?

Cubase VST works with any audio card that meets the following requirements:

- 16 bit audio recording and playback capability.
- Windows Multimedia compatible, or...
- DirectX compatible (playback only, see page 379), or...
- Comes with an ASIO driver.

Sample rates

Cubase VST can record and play back at the sample rates your card supports. The choice of sample rate is made in the System dialog as described on page 362.

Most audio cards support 11, 22 and 44.1kHz. Many cards do not support 48kHz and some don’t support 32kHz.

Audio Quality

The audio quality you get from your recordings (the amount of distortion, the amount of background noise etc.) is solely dependant on your audio card and your other audio equipment, not on Cubase VST.

Number of Audio Channels

The number of audio channels you can get in Cubase VST does not depend on the audio card at all but is related to a number of computer performance factors. More on this later in this chapter.

Stereo/Mono

All 16-bit audio cards can record and play back in stereo or mono. In Cubase VST you can decide before each recording which it should be, stereo or mono, from the Inspector.

Outputs – Stereo and Multi Output Cards

Stereo Only cards

Standard PC Audio cards, accessed via the ASIO Multimedia or DirectX driver, normally only allow for one stereo output. With such a card you may be able to play a large number of channels in Cubase VST, but the output is still only a mixed stereo signal.

Multi Output Cards

There are three ways Cubase VST can access a card with more than one set of stereo outputs:

- Via a Windows Multimedia (or DirectX) driver that caters for multi channel operation.
  Some cards come with both a stereo and a multi channel driver. You have to select either for use in Cubase VST. We recommend that you select the multi-channel driver.

- Via special Windows Multimedia drivers that make the card appear as several standard PC cards, to Windows.

- Via a dedicated ASIO driver.
  Some cards come with ASIO drivers specifically written for the card. This is then the best option to choose, since it allows you to bypass the Windows Multimedia system.

If your card fits to any of the descriptions above, you will be able to take full advantage of Cubase VST's "bus system", see page 194.

Drivers

Cubase always uses ASIO for audio playback. With Cubase VST comes some ASIO drivers, most notably the ASIO Multimedia driver, which serves as a "glue" between Cubase VST and Windows Multimedia system and thus allows you to use standard Windows compatible audio cards, see page 369. For these cards, you do not need anything else than the latest Windows driver for the card, installed as the manufacturer recommends. Everything else is installed with Cubase VST.

Other ASIO drivers might be added to the system, for cards that require it. Each driver should come with its own installation program and instructions.

The technically minded might want to know that ASIO drivers come in the form of "DLLs". They can be located anywhere on the hard disk. The installation procedure adds the driver to the Windows Registry. To replace or remove a driver, use the installation program that came with the driver. You should definitely avoid renaming or moving ASIO drivers "manually".

Using the DirectX driver

Cubase VST supports DirectX, or to be more precise, DirectX, which is a part of the Microsoft DirectX Foundation package. This means that if your audio card comes with a native DirectX driver, you can use this instead of the Windows Multimedia system to play back audio. This has some benefits (mainly lower latency times and the ability to play back audio from several applications simultaneously) but also some restrictions (mainly audio output only - no input). For details, see page 379.

Simultaneous Recording and Playback - “Full Duplex”

On a regular multi track recorder you often perform something called overdubbing. This is when you listen to one Track and at the same time record on another.

You can of course overdub in Cubase VST, but there are a few things you have to be aware of.

For a PC audio card to allow simultaneous recording and playback, the card must support something called “Full Duplex”. Some PC audio cards do not have this ability. This means that as soon as you enter record mode, you will not hear your previously recorded audio Tracks. This is not a limitation of Cubase VST, but of the cards themselves.

If your card does have the ability to record and play back at the same time you should activate this function in ASIO Multimedia Setup, see page 369.

It is of course a great benefit to have this functionality, since it allows you to match your current performance to the previous audio recordings, for example when adding vocal harmonies, one by one.

Some cards, like the Roland RAP-10, have the ability to use one channel for playback and the other for recording, which means that you can record and play back audio at the same time, but only if playback is limited to mono. Some cards can play back and record audio at the same time, but with reduced audio quality of the playback signal (usually 8 bit resolution instead of 16 bit). If this is the case with your audio card (see its documentation), make sure to deactivate all audio inputs when you want to listen to your recordings with full audio quality.

Multiple Cards

If you have multiple cards you can theoretically select one for input and another for output. However, this is not recommended unless the cards are tied together with a word clock sync signal. The sample rate clocks in any two cards will always drift slightly against each other, which can cause glitches and dropouts in the audio.

Computer Performance and Audio Channels

The number of audio channels you get from your system depends on a number of factors. These factors are all related to the amount of data that has to be transferred within the system. When you record, data is collected by the audio card and transferred via the computer's processor to the hard disk. When you play back, this process is reversed. On the way there are a number of bottlenecks to pass, which we will try to outline on the following pages. Please also refer to the Read Me files in your Cubase VST directory which may contain late information on how to optimize your system.

How do I know how many channels I can get?

There is no easy answer to that question. To find out, record and play back channel by channel, until Cubase VST informs you that there is not enough capacity to play back all the Tracks at the same time.

Computer architecture and processor speed

In all audio operations, the computer's processor is involved, which means that the processor speed will limit the amount of audio that can be handled at any given moment.

Processor Type

Cubase VST requires a Pentium processor. However, there are several manufacturers of Pentium "equivalents". We strongly recommend that you use an Intel processor. Intel Pentium processors have significantly better processing power when it comes to handling floating point numbers, than many of the "equivalents". Cubase VST (and many other audio applications) relies very heavily on floating point calculations. This means that this difference in design between processors is much more apparent in VST than when comparing processors when they run for example a word processor or database program.

Processor Cache

A 2nd level processor cache is strongly recommended, the larger the better. This is included in many computer models. If in doubt, consult your computer dealer.

Memory (RAM)

Audio work requires a lot of RAM! In fact, the amount of available RAM is in direct relation to the number of audio channels. You have a large amount of control over how Cubase VST handles the available memory, as described on the following pages.

Disk Controller Card

The controller card for the hard disk is the next possible bottleneck:

- We recommend that you use a controller card connected to your computer's PCI bus rather than to the ISA bus. A PCI card can transfer data considerably faster than an ISA card.

Hard Disk Performance

The performance of the hard disk is probably the biggest limiting factor.

One unit of measure for a hard disk's speed is the Average Access Time. This should be as low as possible, and the more Tracks you plan to record on the drive, the lower it has be. For eight stereo Tracks, you need an Average Access Time of 20 ms or less.

Many manufacturers do not specify the Average Access Time. You will then have to check out a number of other parameters:

- Average Seek Time. This should be as low as possible.
  For eight stereo Tracks at 44.1 kHz, you need an Average Seek Time of 9ms or less.
- Rotation Speed. Sometimes indicated as Rotation Latency. The Rotation Speed should be as high as possible, which in turn makes the Rotation Latency as small as possible.
  For eight stereo Tracks you need a Rotation Speed of 5400rps or above, which equals a Rotation Latency of 5.6 ms or less.
- Sustained Data Transfer Rate. This should be as high as possible.
  For eight stereo Tracks you need at least 5Megabytes/second.

SCSI or E-IDE?

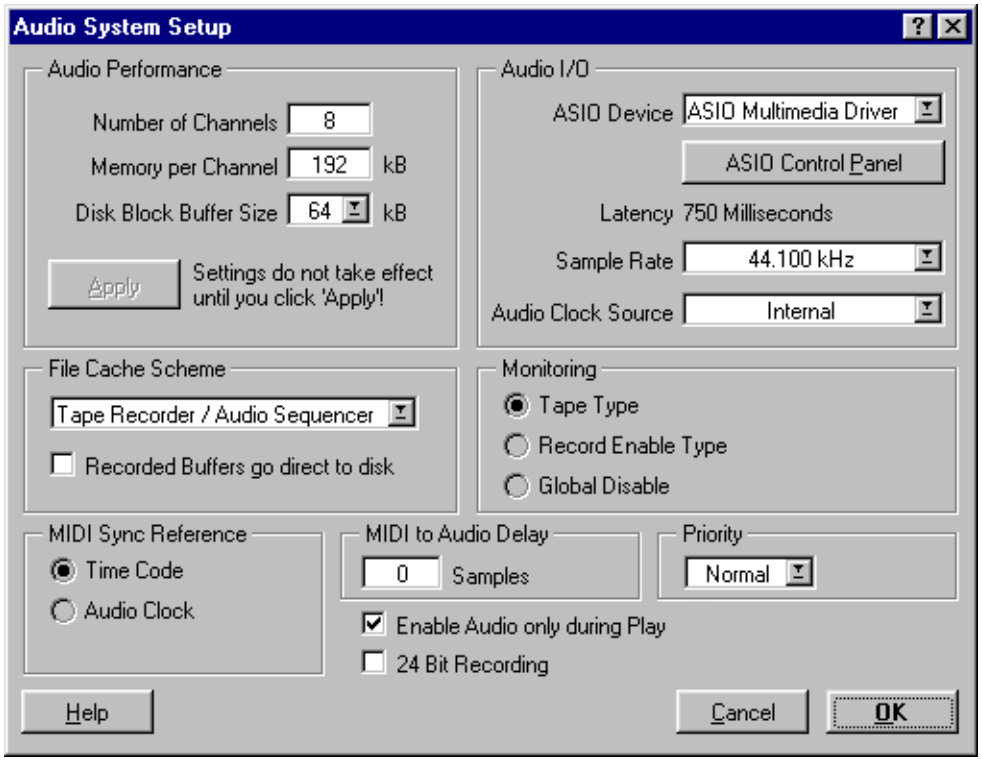
- In general, SCSI disks are better suited for hard disk recording than IDE drives, for various technical reasons. However, a fast E-IDE drive is better than a slow SCSI one.
- If you decide not to use SCSI, try to get an "Enhanced IDE" (E-IDE) drive rather than a regular IDE one.
- If you use a SCSI or E-IDE drive, make sure it has a built in cache of at least 128 kByte, preferably 256 kByte or more.

Other hard disk considerations

- Make sure the hard disk does not have automatic “thermal recalibration”. Or, at least use a hard disk that only performs thermal recalibration when the hard disk is not in operation. Some manufacturers sell special “A/V” (Audio/Video) drives, claimed to be specifically suitable for hard disk recording. This usually means (among other things) that the drive doesn't have automatic thermal recalibration.
- Try to get as large a disk as you can. We recommend 1GByte and up. You will get 1 minute of mono audio for each 5 MByte on the hard disk, per Track, at 44.1kHz sample rate. This means that if you for example record two stereo Tracks, you will use up 20 MByte per minute.
- We recommend that you save your audio files together with your Song documents on a separate drive, leaving the main drive of your computer to hold Windows, program files and the like.

Audio System Settings

Cubase allows you to set the number of audio channels you want to use to in the program. The maximum number of audio channels is 64 (96 if you are using the Cubase VST/24 version), but most systems will be restricted to a smaller number, due to limited processor power, RAM, etc. The settings are made in the System Setup dialog (reached from the Audio menu) and involves several parameters:



Audio Performance section

- **Number of Channels.**
  Sets the number of audio channels you would like to have access to (4 - 64, or 4 - 96 in VST/24).

- **Memory per Channel.**
  Sets the amount of internal memory assigned to each audio channel. This value multiplied by the Number of Channels has a direct relation to the amount of RAM available to the program. The higher the value the lesser the risk of playback problems. On the other hand, raising this will probably lower the number of channels you can use at the same time, since the total amount of RAM in the computer is always limited.

- **Disk Block Buffer Size.**
  Governs the buffer size used in Cubase VST when reading and writing data from/to the hard disk. The larger value, the smoother and faster performance. However, each Buffer Size value has a corresponding minimum Memory per Channel setting. For example, if the Disk Block Buffer Size is 64 kB, the Memory per Channel cannot be lower than 192 kB.

As you can see, there is a quite involved relation between these three parameters. To ensure the best HD/audio performance, you would raise the Disk Block Buffer Size, but this automatically increases the Memory per Channel which in turn limits the possible Number of Channels. This means you will have to experiment with different settings to find the performance/memory/channel balance best suited for your system.

The Apply button

Clicking the Apply button applies the settings you have made. If you get a warning reading “Not enough memory for the Audio Engine”, you either have to decrease the number of audio channels or decrease the Memory per Channel figure.

Try these settings first!

- **Generally, start with Disk Block Buffer Size set to 64 kB and Memory per Channel set to 256 kB.**
- **If you find that the audio and hard disk performance is poor (playback stutters, system momentarily slows down), try raising the Disk Block Buffer Size to 96 kB.**
  The Memory per Channel setting is automatically increased to 288 kB.
- **If you need more channels, try lowering Disk Block Buffer Size to 48 kB.**

● All of the above assumes your hard disk is fast enough to handle the number of channels specified.

Audio I/O

ASIO Device

Here you select the ASIO driver you want to use. The options depend on which drivers are available for your audio card:

- **ASIO Multimedia driver.**
  This is the “standard” choice, for using the Windows Multimedia System to play back and record audio.
- **ASIO DirectX driver.**
  This option is available if your audio card has a native DirectX driver. It is also required that you have DirectX 5 or better installed, but this is done automatically when you install Cubase VST. See page 379 for details.
- **Dedicated ASIO drivers.**
  If your audio card has a dedicated ASIO driver (that is, an ASIO driver specifically written for that audio card), you should always use that driver and not the Multimedia or DirectX drivers.

ASIO Control Panel

If the driver supports it, this button brings up a window with settings specific to the audio card.

- For the ASIO Multimedia driver, see page 369 for more info.
- For the ASIO DirectX driver, see page 379 for more info.
- For other ASIO drivers, see the documentation that came with the card/driver.

Latency indication

Depending on the audio hardware and drivers, there will be different latencies (delays) involved when recording and playing back audio. This is especially troublesome when you are monitoring what you record in VST, since the monitored sound will be delayed a substantial amount. However, the recorded audio will not be affected, since VST takes the latency into account, and adjusts the timing of the recorded audio accordingly.

Users of Windows Multimedia compatible audio cards may want to note that you can reduce the latency by adjusting buffers in the ASIO Multimedia Setup window. However, we do not recommend you to do this unless you are absolutely sure of what you are doing.

● Using DirectX instead of the Windows Multimedia system will also result in lower latency times. This can be useful if you find that the latency makes it hard to perform an accurate manual mix (since fader and knob movements are slightly delayed). However, since DirectX is restricted to audio playback only, this method will not remedy the audio monitoring delay. See page 379.

Sample Rate

This setting determines the audio quality of your recordings. The higher the value, the better the quality, but when you raise the value, each recording also uses up more disk space and computer processing power.

You should not change the Sample Rate setting if you already have files in the Pool (which you will have if you have made any audio recordings at all in this Song).

Audio Clock Source

If the card and its driver supports it, this pop-up allows you to select an external source to which the audio playback can synchronize its sample rate. See the documentation that came with the card for details.

● If you use the ASIO Multimedia or DirectX driver, only the “Internal” option is available.

File Cache Scheme

Virtual Tape Recorder/Audio Sequencer

This pop-up allows you to select one of three methods for audio *playback* file caching.

Here's the background: When the computer reads data from the hard disk, this data is first transferred to an intermediate RAM storage area, called a cache. If things are set up cleverly, using a file cache can improve computer performance. This mainly depends on whether the same data is requested repeatedly or not:

- **If you use Cubase VST more or less like a tape recorder, that is, mainly with long recordings that are generally used just once in the Song, choose the Virtual Tape Recorder option.**
  In this mode, Cubase VST does not rely heavily on file caching.

- **If you use Cubase VST more as an "assembly" tool, repeating the same material over and over, choose the Audio Sequencer option.**
  In this mode, Cubase VST relies heavily on file caching. For this to have a positive effect on performance, the same file(s) would be repeated over and over without large gaps between, like you would with a drum loop.

- **If you do little bit of both, select the combined option.**

Recorded Buffers go direct to disk

This option is related to audio recording. Normally you would leave this option on.

- **When this is *activated*, as soon as an audio buffer has been "captured" by Cubase VST, it will be saved to disk.**

- **When this is *deactivated*, "captured" audio buffers may be passed on to the Windows system cache before they are saved to disk.**
  You should only deactivate this option if you have problems recording, related to your disk and driver. The problem with using the system cache is that if you have a lot of memory in your computer, and you have raised the system cache settings, a considerable amount of data might be stacked up before being saved to disk. This might create playback and recording problems, since saving large amounts of data to disk might block the system too long for the other processes to get all the time they need.

MIDI Sync Reference

This determines what clock source MIDI playback will use.

- If Time Code is selected, the MIDI playback will always be in time with any external time code coming in. However, there is a risk that MIDI playback will not be in perfect sync with the audio. This happens because the audio card is not aware of fluctuations in the incoming time code and therefore can not adjust to them.
- Audio Clock is the preferred option when you are not using any external synchronization. If Audio Clock is selected, MIDI and audio playback will always be in perfect sync. However, there's a risk they will both drift in relation to incoming time code.

MIDI to Audio Delay

If you experience that MIDI playback lags behind the audio, this could be because the MIDI response in your MIDI instrument is slightly slow. If this is the case, use this parameter to compensate.

Priority

When you run Cubase VST there are several processes fighting for access to processor time in your computer. This parameter allows you to determine which processes should have priority. Select an option depending on the character of your recordings:

Setting:	Description:
Low	In this mode, MIDI timing gets top priority. If you don't use much audio (especially audio processing such as effects and EQ) you should try selecting this option.
Normal	In this mode, MIDI timing and audio playback get roughly equal priorities. Try this mode if you find that audio playback stutters in "Low" mode.
High	In this mode, audio precedes MIDI in priority. Normally, this should not affect the MIDI timing badly, but if you have very "busy" MIDI recordings, the timing may suffer somewhat.
Highest	This mode gives maximum priority to audio, which means that the MIDI timing may suffer and the user interface may seem more sluggish. Select this mode if you use a lot of audio Effects and EQ, and not much MIDI material.

Enable Audio only during Play

Normally, after Cubase VST has established connection to the audio hardware, it starts sending a continuous stream of audio blocks to the audio hardware - even if audio playback isn't activated. However, some audio drivers cannot handle hours and hours of continuous audio streams. The results are occasional audio glitches, "hiccups", etc.

To remedy this problem, there is a checkbox called "Enable Audio only during Play", in the System dialog on the Audio menu. When this is activated, Cubase VST stops transmitting audio blocks to the audio hardware as soon as playback is stopped. When playback starts again, communication with the audio hardware is re-opened (actually, this is the same as activating and deactivating "Disable Audio", only it is done automatically).

By default, this checkbox is turned off, but if you are having problems with audio playback you should try activating it.

● The "Enable Audio only during Play" switch has one drawback: since all audio transfers are stopped when the playback is stopped, any trailing reverb or delay 'tails' will be cut off.

---

24 Bit Recording (VST/24 only)

If you are using Cubase VST/24, you will find an additional checkbox in the Audio System dialog, labelled "24 Bit Recording". When this checkbox is activated, all audio files you record will be 24 bit files.

- **This is only useful if you are using audio hardware that supports 24 bit audio.**
  You may also need to deactivate the "Use 16-Bit only" option in the ASIO Control Panel, as described on page 375.

- **Remember that 24 bit files will be 1.5 times the size of 16 bit files.**
- **You can freely mix 24 bit and 16 bit files in the same Song.**
- **You can also turn 24 bit recording on and off by clicking on the red "24Bit" button in the Arrange window.**
  This has the same function as the checkbox in the Audio System dialog.

Save your System settings!

Some of the settings in the System Setup dialog are saved automatically in the Cubase VST preferences, while others are saved with the Song, according to the table below. To make sure that you always start out with the audio settings you know work well on your system, tailor your System settings once and for all, and save your Song as the def.all Song.

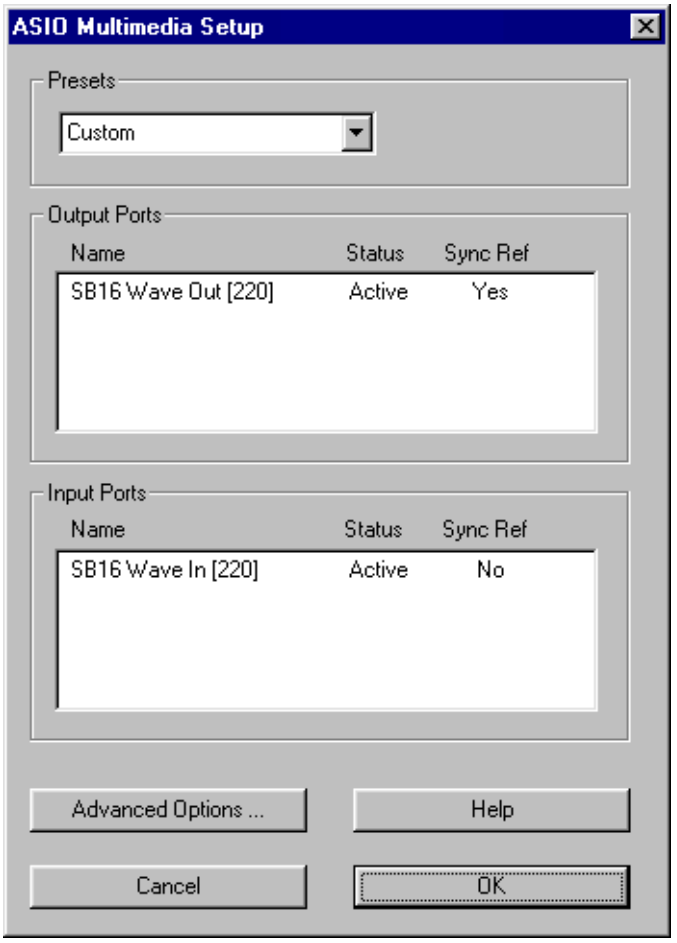
Setting	Saved in
Audio Performance Settings	Song
Monitoring Switch	Song
MIDI Sync Reference	Song
Audio I/O Settings	Preferences
MIDI To Audio Delay	Preferences
Priority Setting	Preferences

The ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog

When the ASIO Multimedia driver is selected (see page 363), you can use the ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog to make settings for the audio cards in your system, to optimize the performance and take full advantage of the card's features.

Actually, there are two dialogs, once basic setup dialog (described below) and one with advanced options (described on page 370).

The Basic ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog



Opening the dialog

This dialog can be opened in two ways:

- By clicking the ASIO Control Panel button in the System dialog, or...
- By selecting ASIO Multimedia Setup on the Start menu in Windows95.

Selecting a Preset

At the top of the dialog you will find a pop-up menu labelled "Presets". This contains pre-programmed setups for a number of audio cards. In fact, this is the only setting which can be changed in this dialog, but in most cases it will be sufficient.

- **If you are using a single audio card, and the pop-up list contains a Preset for it, you should select this.**
  There may be several Presets for a single audio card type. For example, you may be able to select a "half duplex" or a "full duplex" setup. "Full duplex" means that the card has the ability to record and play back at the same time, which is a great benefit. If your audio card supports this feature (see the audio card documentation), make sure to select the "full duplex" Preset.

The Output/Input Port lists

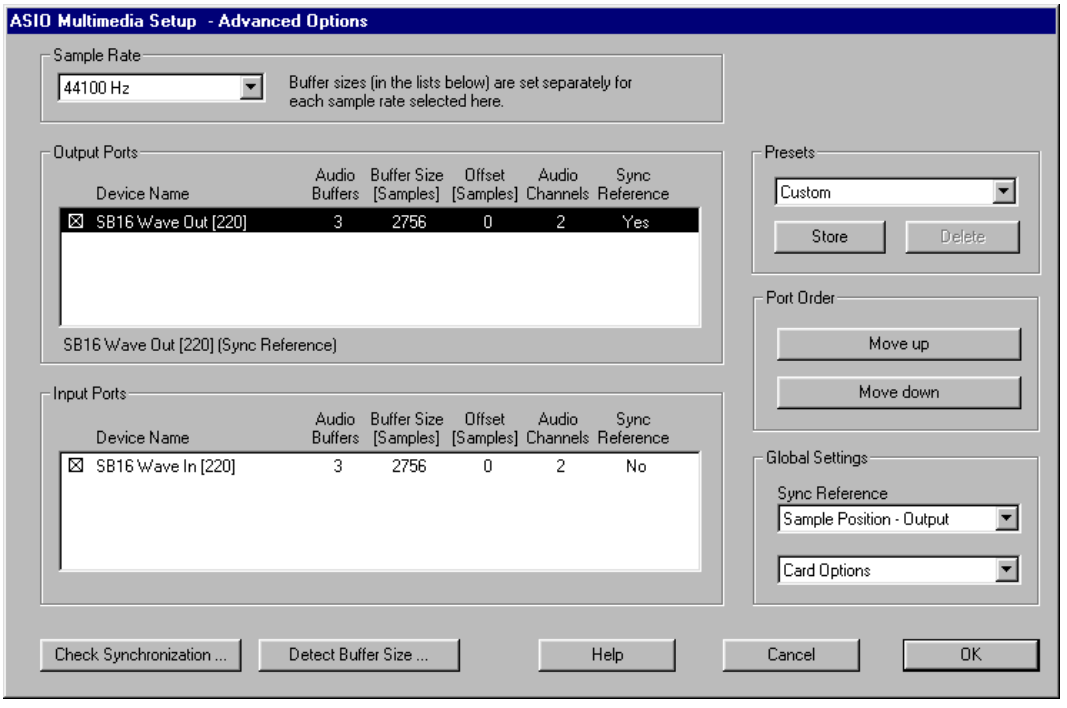
These show all the Output and Input Ports currently available in your system. You will also find information about which Ports are active and which Output Port is used as Sync Reference (see page 372). You cannot change anything directly in these lists, although the "Status" and "Sync Ref" settings may change when you select another Preset.

Advanced Options...

Clicking this button opens the Advanced Multimedia Setup dialog, as described below. You may have to use this for one of following reasons:

- There is no Preset available for your audio card.
- You have more than one audio card.
- You experience problems with audio playback or recording, such as audio glitches, dropouts or poor synchronization between audio and MIDI.

The Advanced Options dialog



This dialog is opened by clicking the "Advanced Options..." button in the basic ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog. It contains a number of settings and some functions to help you calibrate your audio system properly.

Below, you will find a general working procedure followed by descriptions of all parameters and controls in the dialog.

Changing the settings in the Advanced Options dialog

When you open the dialog, you will either have a Preset or the Custom option selected, depending on what was selected in the basic ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog.

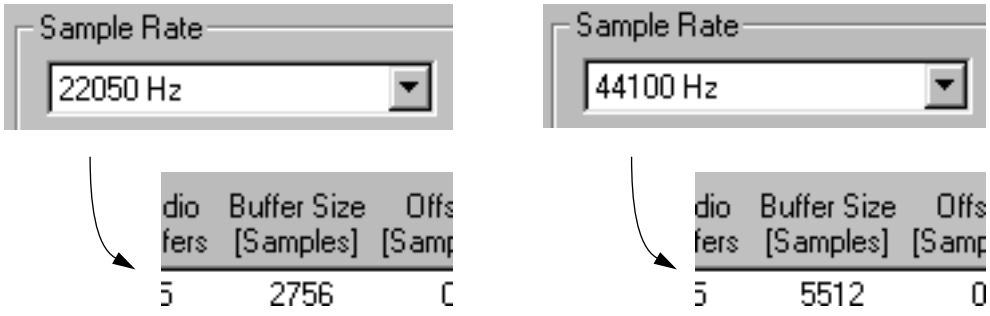
- **As soon as you change any value, the Custom option is selected and set to the current values in the window.**
  For example, if you have selected a Preset for a Soundblaster card, and edit the number of Audio Buffers, the Custom option is selected and is automatically set to the values of the Soundblaster Preset, but with the new Audio Buffer setting.

- **When you have set up your audio card(s) as desired, you can either store your settings as a Preset (see page 376) or click OK.**
  If you click OK, you will return to the basic ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog, with the Custom option selected. The Custom option will contain your new settings.

- **If you click Cancel, you will return to the ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog, and your changes will be discarded.**

Sample Rate pop-up

When you set the Buffer Size (see below), you have to make separate settings for all available sample rates. Each setting will then be used by the audio system when you select the corresponding sample rate in the System dialog.
The Sample Rate pop-up in the Advanced Options dialog determines which sample rate you are currently making Buffer Size settings for.



If you change sample rate, different Buffer Sizes will be displayed.

Note that you only need to make Buffer Size settings for the sample rates that you actually use for playback and recording (many users will probably only need to make settings for 44100 Hz).

● Selecting a sample rate on this pop-up will not affect the sample rate setting in the System dialog (the sample rate used to play back and record audio).

Output and Input Port lists

Here, all available Input and Output Ports are listed, together with a number of settings. To change a setting, double click on it and enter a new value with the computer keyboard. The columns in the lists are described in the table below:

Column:	Description:
Checkbox	Click here to activate or deactivate a Port. Only active Ports (shown with a checked box) will be available for audio input and output.
Device Name	The name of the Port. You can change the name of a Port if you like. The names shown here will appear in the Master window (Output Ports) and the Input window (Input Ports) in VST.
Audio Buffers	This value determines how many audio buffers are used when playing back or recording audio on the selected Port. See the section about buffers, below this table.
Buffer Size	This value determines the size of the audio buffers for a Port, in samples. See the section about buffers, below this table. Note that there are different Buffer Size values for different Sample Rates (see page 371).
Offset	This is an offset time for a Port, in samples. With some audio cards (usually stereo multimedia cards), there may be a slight delay on the Input or Output port, causing recorded audio to be a little “off the beat”. You can use the Offset value to compensate for this. To find out if you need to change the Offset value for your audio card, try recording the audio metronome click, by feeding the audio output of the card back into an audio input (remember to disable Monitoring in the System dialog first, to avoid feedback!). Then zoom in on the recorded audio metronome click in the Wave Editor and check whether it’s off the beat.
Audio Channels	Indicates the number of audio channels associated with each Port. You cannot change this value.
Sync Reference	This column indicates which Port is used as Sync Reference, i.e. to which audio Port the MIDI playback is synchronized. You cannot change this value directly in the column, rather Sync Reference is always set to the *first activated Port on the list.* To select another Port as Sync Reference, you have to make sure it’s activated, select it and then move it to the top of the list using the “Move Up” button (see below). To select whether Sync Reference should be set to an Input or an Output port, use the Sync Reference pop-up menu in the lower right corner of the dialog. This is also where you select the preferred method of Sync Reference (see page 374).

About Audio Buffers and Buffer Size

When Cubase VST receives or sends out data to an audio card, it passes via a buffer, a temporary storage area. Furthermore, to be able to send data continuously, just having one buffer isn't enough; you need several buffers that the system can switch between.

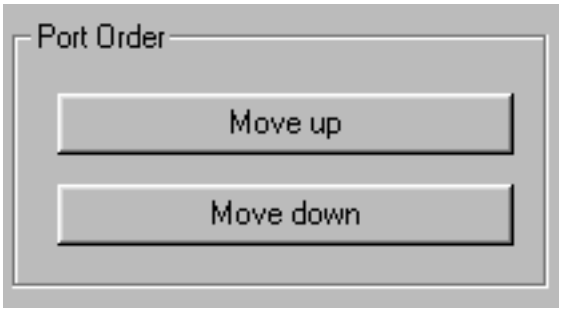
Having many and large buffers ensures that playback will occur without glitches. However, the time between the moment Cubase VST sends out the data and when it actually arrives on the output (the "latency" - see page 364) will be longer. This means that it will take longer for changes that you make – for example in the Monitor window – to take effect. Also, the larger the latency, the longer the monitoring (sound input to output) delay.

You can adjust the number of buffers and buffer sizes, if required. The following guidelines apply:

- **You can set the number of buffers directly in the Port lists, but we recommend that you do this in the "Check Buffers and Sync" dialog.**
  This allows you to try out different settings before applying them, as described on page 377.

- **If you are using the "DMA Block" Sync Reference method, you should set the Buffer Sizes with the "Detect Buffer Size" function (see page 374).**
- **If you are using the "Sample Position" Sync Reference method, you are free to change the Buffer Size value directly in the list if necessary, but again, we recommend that you do this in the "Check Buffers and Sync" dialog instead (see page 377).**
- **There are different Buffer Size settings for different sample rates.**
  Use the Sample Rate pop-up at the top of the dialog to select a sample rate to make settings for (see page 371).

Port Order buttons



These buttons are used to move the selected Port up or down in the Port list. The order of the Ports in the list is very important, since the first activated Port from the top of the list will be used as Sync Reference as described above.

Sync Reference pop-up

This setting is used to select a method of "synchronizing" the MIDI playback to the audio. There are two different methods:

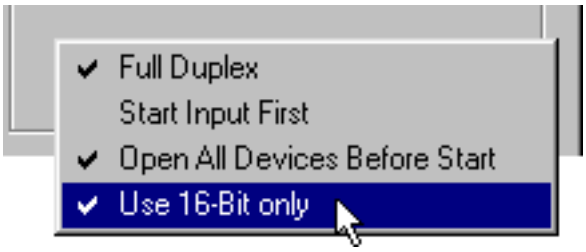
- **Sample Position**
  This is the preferred setting if your card supports it. In this mode the number of samples played are reported from the card to Cubase VST and this number is used for synchronizing the MIDI playback. This is equivalent to synchronizing to a sample accurate external clock.
  Unfortunately, not all audio cards support this method. If the documentation for your audio card is unclear on this point, try selecting Sample Position as sync reference method, and use the Check Buffers and Sync method to determine whether it works properly (see page 377).

- **DMA Blocks**
  This should only be used as a last resort. In this mode, the reference between audio and MIDI is determined by the rate at which the data blocks are being transferred by Direct Memory Access (DMA) to the audio card during recording and playback (yes, this is a heavy technical explanation, but this is a very technical issue!).
  For this mode to work properly, the Audio Buffers setting must be in accordance with the real blocksize used in the system. Use the Detect Buffer Size function to achieve this (see page 376).

On the pop-up menu, you will find four options:

Sample Position Output	Selects the uppermost Port that is activated on the Output Port list for Sync Reference, using the Sample Position method.
DMA Block Output	Selects the uppermost Port that is activated on the Output Port list for Sync Reference, using the DMA Block method.
Sample Position Input	Selects the uppermost Port that is activated on the Input Port list for Sync Reference, using the Sample Position method.
DMA Block Input	Selects the uppermost Port that is activated on the Input Port list for Sync Reference, using the DMA Block method.

Card Options



This pop-up menu contains four additional settings:

Full duplex	When this switch is activated, Cubase VST will play back audio Tracks while recording new ones. It is of course a great benefit to have this ability, since it allows you to hear previously recorded audio Tracks whilst recording overdubs. However, not all audio cards support this feature. Activate this switch if: • You know you have a card that supports this feature. • You use two separate cards for recording and playback. (Not recommended, unless the cards are tied together with a word clock sync signal. Otherwise, the sample rate clocks in the two cards will always drift slightly against each other, which can cause glitches and dropouts in the audio.)
Start Input First	If your card does not seem to work correctly with Full Duplex activated, you should try this option which starts the Input on the card before the Output.
Open All Devices Before Start	This is only for multi-channel cards. It determines how the card is initialized. If the card works with this option activated, this is preferred, because all ports will then be in absolute sync. Only if you have problems with the card should you deactivate this option.
Use 16-Bit only	This is described below.

About the “Use 16-Bit only” option

This option determines the sample bit resolution used when VST is communicating with the audio hardware. If the option is activated, all audio devices are opened with a sample width of 16 bits. If the option is deactivated, all audio devices are opened with their respective highest supported sample width. This makes it possible to use a 16-Bit device together with a 24-Bit device, for example.

Generally, we recommend that you keep this option deactivated, *except*:

- If you specifically want to make sure that only 16-Bit resolution is used.
- If you experience loss of performance with the switch deactivated (this may be the case if your audio hardware is on an ISA-bus).

Presets

As in the basic ASIO Multimedia Setup dialog, you can select a Preset from this pop-up menu. However, in the Advanced dialog, you can also store your own Presets, or delete Presets you don't need (factory Presets excluded).

To create and store a Preset, proceed as follows:

1. **Make the desired settings.**
   This may include using the functions "Check Buffers and Sync" and "Detect Buffer Size" (see below).

● Note that there are different Buffer Size values for each sample rate! Use the Sample Rate pop-up at the top of the dialog to select the sample rates that you need to use, and set Buffer Sizes for each of them before storing.

---

2. **Click Store.**
   A dialog with a name box appears.

3. **Enter a new name for the Preset, or enter a name of an existing Preset.**
   Note that you cannot overwrite any of the factory-made Presets.

4. **Click OK to save the Preset or Cancel to abort.**

You can also delete any Presets you have made yourself:

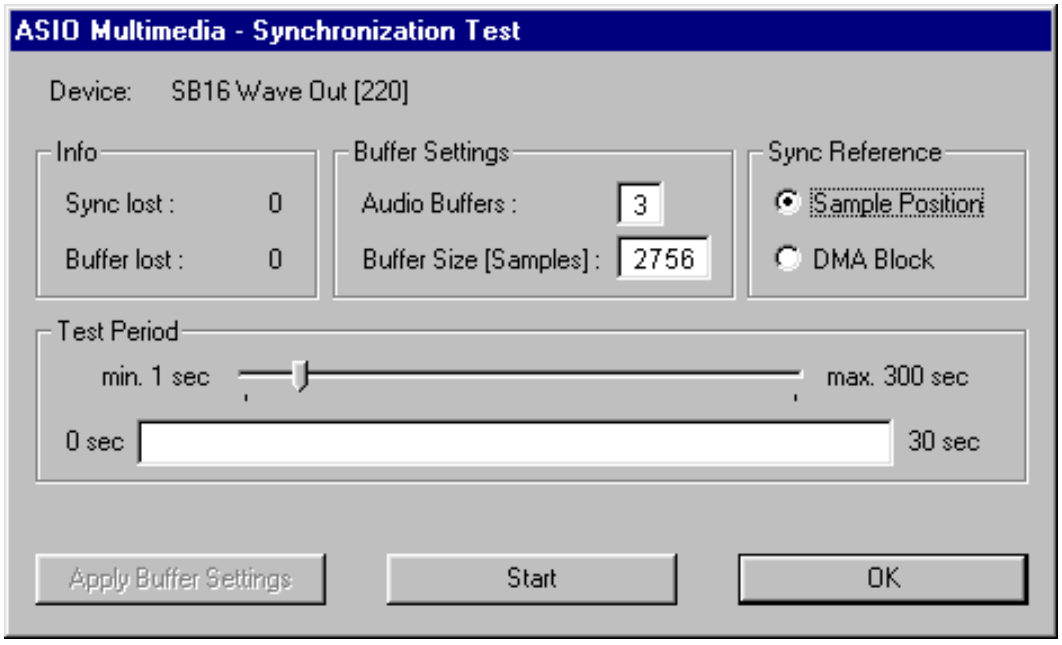
1. **Select the Preset you want to delete.**
   If you select a factory-made Preset, the Delete button will be greyed-out.

2. **Click Delete.**
   The Preset is removed from the list.

Detect Buffer Size

This button automatically detects the correct buffer size for cards where DMA Block has to be used as sync method. Also, you may need to use it when the Buffers and Sync test indicates problems (see below).

The Check Buffers and Sync dialog



This dialog is opened by clicking the “Check Buffers and Sync” button in the Advanced Options dialog. In a situation when you have to manually change your Buffer and/or Sync Reference settings, it helps you check if your settings are OK. This is how to use it:

1. **In the Port list, select the Port you want to test.**
   The function will perform a test that determines both whether MIDI to Audio synchronization will work, and whether audio playback/recording will work without dropouts. If you are specifically interested in testing synchronization, you should probably select the Port currently used as Sync Reference (see page 374).

2. **Click the “Check Buffers and Sync” button.**
   The dialog opens. At the top of the dialog, the name of the selected Port is displayed.

3. **Select a method for Sync Reference.**
   As described above, Sample Position is the preferred choice if your audio card supports it.

4. **Make settings for Audio Buffers and Buffer Size.**
   These settings are used for the test only. You can apply them as “real” settings by clicking the button “Apply Buffer Settings”. This makes it easy to try out different settings, and apply them after the test has indicated that they should work.

5. **Set a test period with the slider.**
   You can set a test period ranging from 1 second to 5 minutes. The longer the test period, the more certain you can be that your settings will work.

6. **Click “Start”.**
   The test begins. The duration of the test is indicated by the progress bar below the Test Period slider.

- **If the “Sync lost” value (in the upper left corner) builds up, this indicates that MIDI to Audio synchronization is unstable.**
- **If the “Buffer lost” value (below the “Sync lost” value) builds up, this indicates audio dropouts.**

7. **Wait until the test is completed or, if the Sync/Buffer lost values are building up, click the “Stop” button to stop the test.**

   If the test was successful (no Sync or Buffer lost), an alert will tell you so. If Sync or Buffers were lost, a message will appear, suggesting what you can do to remedy the problem. Make the necessary changes and perform the test again.

8. **When the test is successful, click “Apply Buffer Settings” and then OK.**
   You are returned to the Advanced Settings dialog, with the new Buffer settings applied to the selected Port.

● A successful test doesn’t automatically ensure that audio playback and recording will be troublefree! When doing “real” audio work in Cubase VST, the computer may have additional tasks which could decrease the performance. The Buffers and Sync test should be viewed as a guide, not an absolute rule.

Automatic Sync Testing

You will find that the program sometimes automatically asks whether you want a sync and buffer test to be performed. This will happen after installation of Cubase VST and after you make any changes to the audio configuration (activating/deactivating ports, changing the buffer sizes, etc.).

- **If you choose to test the new configuration, the program will open all selected audio devices over a short time and try to simulate a Cubase VST operation, using the current ASIO Multimedia settings. It will also check the sync stability of the selected Sync Reference port.**
  If the test fails, you will have to change the settings manually, as described in the Troubleshooting document.

- **If you choose to skip the test, the program will remind you later on that the new settings weren’t tested, and ask whether you want to perform the test.**

Using the ASIO DirectX Driver

Microsoft DirectX is a set of standards and routines for handling various kinds of multimedia under Windows95 and Windows NT, including audio playback. DirectX version 5 is automatically installed when you install Cubase VST. If you have an audio card with a DirectX driver, you can use DirectX instead of the ASIO Multimedia driver when playing back audio in Cubase VST. Using the DirectX driver has the following benefits:

- **Lower latency (see page 364).**
  For example, this makes it easier to perform a manual mix, since the "response time" of faders and other mixer controls will be shorter. A typical approach would be to record audio using the ASIO Multimedia driver and then switch to the ASIO DirectX driver for mixdown (since DirectX does not support audio input, see below).

- **Several applications can play back audio simultaneously.**
  This means that you can run Cubase VST together with a DirectX compatible software synth, for example. Note that the application "in focus" (the one currently "at the front") determines the audio playback format. You cannot simultaneously play back audio at different resolutions or sample rates.
  Also, be aware that playing back audio from several applications simultaneously may cause clipping (digital distortion), simply because the level of the added audio signals may exceed 0dB. If this happens, lower the outputs of the respective applications.

- **The "Sample Position" method is automatically used for synchronizing MIDI playback to audio (see page 374).**
  You will not have to use the "DMA Blocks" sync method or set the size of the audio buffers, which is an advantage.

However, there are also some restrictions:

- **You can only use the DirectX driver for audio playback, not for recording!**
  This is because Microsoft DirectX currently doesn't support audio input, only output.

- **The ASIO DirectX driver only works for cards with a "native" DirectX driver.**
  DirectX emulation for an audio card is not supported.

● If your audio card has a dedicated ASIO driver (that is, an ASIO driver specifically written for that audio card), you should always use that driver and not the DirectX driver. A dedicated ASIO driver will provide low latency times and enable audio input.

Installing a DirectX driver for your audio card

At this point, there are three possibilities:

- **A driver for you audio card may be included in the Microsoft DirectX package.**
  In this case, you don't have to do anything; the DirectX driver for the card was installed automatically with DirectX. If you are not sure, see Microsofts website (www.microsoft.com) for a list of supported audio cards.

- **A DirectX driver was included with your audio card when you purchased and installed it the first time.**
  Again, this means that the DirectX driver is already installed.

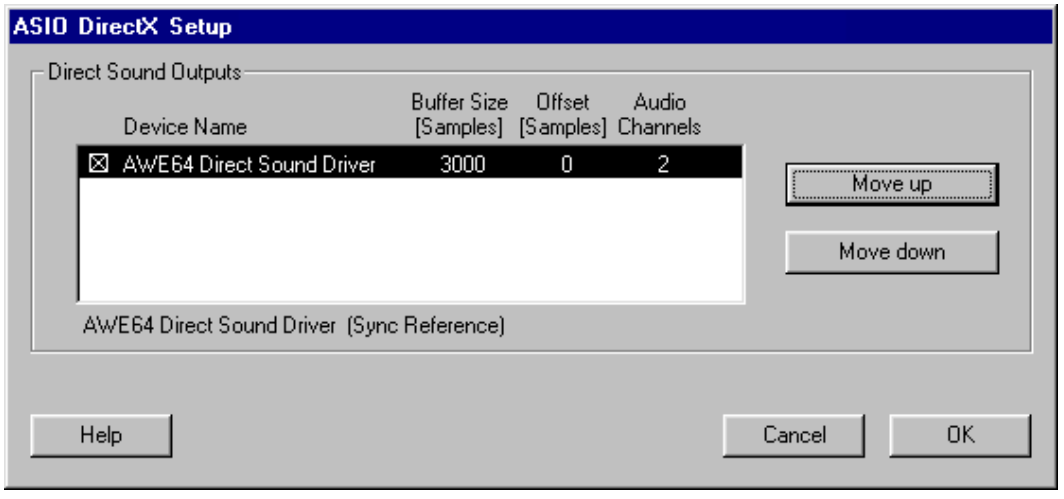
- **There is a DirectX driver for your audio card, but you haven't installed it.**
  For example, you may have purchased or downloaded a DirectX driver after having installed your audio card. In this case, follow the installation instructions included with the driver.

Selecting the ASIO DirectX driver in Cubase VST

1. **Pull down the Audio menu and select System.**
   The Audio System dialog appears.

2. **Select the ASIO DirectX driver from the ASIO Device pop-up menu.**

3. **Click the ASIO Control Panel button.**
   The Control Panel for the DirectX driver appears:



4. **Check that your audio card appears and that it's activated.**

5. **Click OK to close the Control Panel and the Audio System dialog.**

Conclusion: When should I use the DirectX driver?

Since both the DirectX and Multimedia drivers have limitations, you may want to combine these during the same session, for example recording with the Multimedia driver and switching to DirectX for mixdown. Use the following guidelines to determine when to select which driver:

Select the ASIO DirectX driver if:

- You only need to play back audio, not record.
- You do not have or need several audio outputs.
- You want to be able to play back audio from two or more applications simultaneously (and they all support DirectX).

Select the ASIO Multimedia driver if:

- You need to record audio.
- If you don't find the higher latency a problem during playback.

● Again, if you have a *dedicated* ASIO driver for your audio card, you should always use this, rather than the DirectX or Multimedia drivers.

Methods of Optimizing Performance

Using Stereo/Mono and Sample Rate settings to gain more channels

If your computer system limits the number of channels, you should try recording with a lower sample rate and/or mono recording.

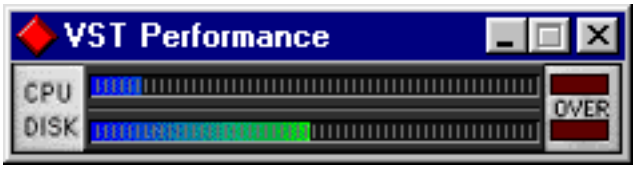
This will considerably reduce the amount of data that needs to be transferred from the hard disk to the audio card. A 44100Hz stereo recording creates four times as much data as 22050Hz mono!

- **Of course, you will not actually get more audio channels when recording in mono, but since a stereo recording uses two channels and a mono recording only one, you will get one precious channel left, which you can use for other recordings.**

The Performance window, EQ and Effects

Even though you have been able to activate a number of audio channels in the System dialog without getting any warning, you may possibly run into performance problems when adding EQ or effects. This is due to the fact that the Apply function doesn't "know" how much processing is activated. The EQ and effects modules put a certain demand on the processor, which may cause the audio playback to drop out or stutter. Therefore:

1. **Pull down the Audio menu and select Performance...**
   The Audio Performance window appears.



2. **Move the Performance window to a place on the screen, where you can see it all the time.**

- **The upper bar graph shows the CPU (processor) load.**
  If the red OVER indicator lights, you need to decrease the number of EQ modules, active Effects and/or audio channels playing back simultaneously.

- **The lower bar graph shows the Hard Disk transfer load.**
  If the red OVER indicator lights, the hard disk is not supplying data fast enough to the computer. You might then try going into the System dialog, lower the number of channels and raise the Disk Block Buffer Size. If this doesn't help, you need a faster hard disk.

● Please note that the OVER indicator for the Disk meter may light up briefly during positioning or when stopping playback. This is not an indication of any problem.

Maintaining the Hard Disk

Defragment!

Always make sure your hard disk is defragmented. Fragmentation affects the performance of any hard disk severely. A defragmentation utility is included with later versions of DOS and Windows 95. See your computer manuals for details.

Delete Unused Files!

Cubase VST requires a lot of disk space and fast disks. If you don’t delete unused files, your hard disk will soon fill up.

When you use Purge Segments in the Pool, it will be evident which files are no longer used in a Song (the files not used will have no Segments at all). This gives you a way of finding out which files can be deleted. But please remember that an audio file can be used in more than one Song.

Back Up!

It can’t be said too often. Disk crashes are a well known phenomenon. Without a regular backup scheme you take the risk to lose valuable recordings!

30

The Master Track

What is the Master Track?

Cubase VST has a Master Track, a special "hidden" Track that contains all the tempo and time signature changes. There is one Master Track for each Arrangement. The Master Track does not have Parts, you always edit the entire length of the Song.

● For the tempo changes to have any affect on the Arrangement whatsoever, you must have the Master button on the Transport Bar activated! The Time Signatures in the Master Track, however, are always used.

The Master button on the Transport Bar.

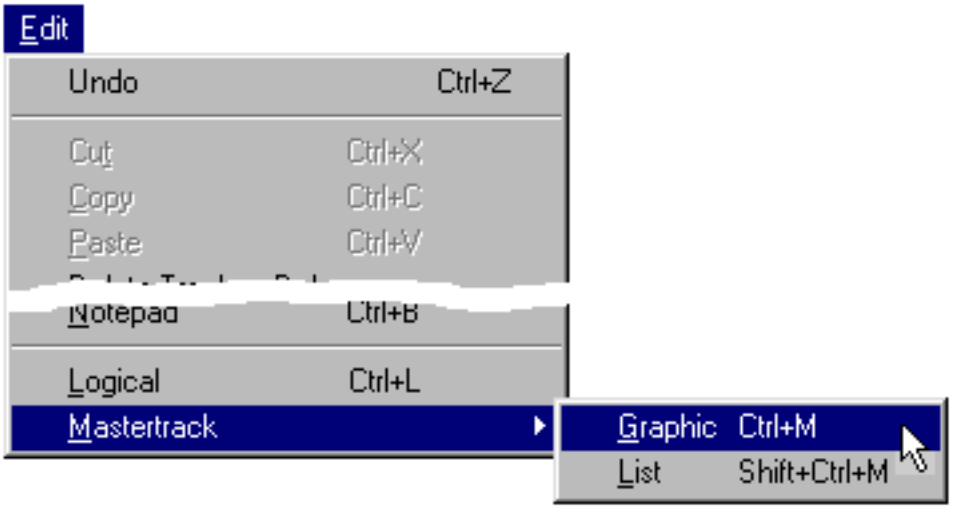
There are three ways to change the Master Track:

- by editing in the Master Track Graphic editor (see page 399 in this chapter).
- by editing in the Master Track List editor (see page 406 in this chapter).
- by recording tempo changes (see page 394 in this chapter).

Opening the Graphic Editor

You can open the graphic Master Track editor in two ways:

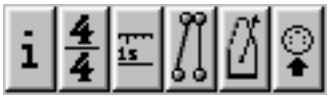
- **By selecting Mastertrack Graphic from the Edit menu.**



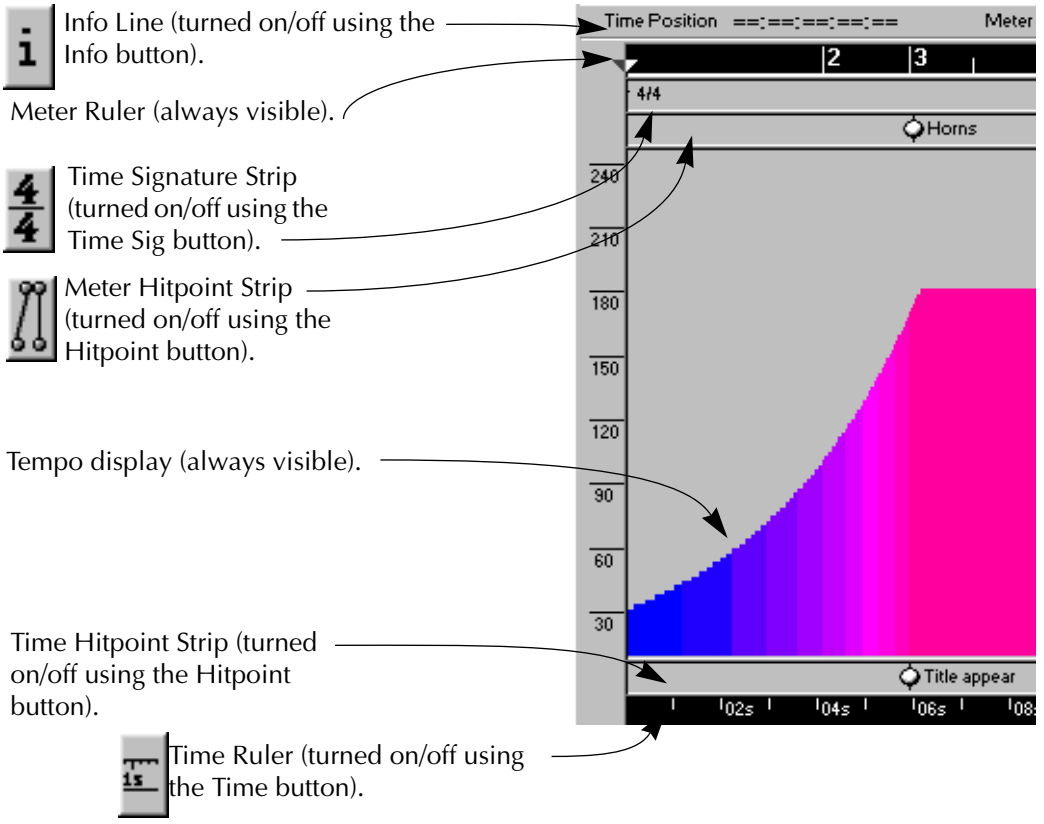
- **By pressing [Control]-[M] on the computer keyboard.**

The Window Sections

The central display in the Graphic editor is divided into six sections. Some of these can be hidden using the group of buttons on the Function bar.



Here are the graphic editor's areas, from top to bottom:



About the Tempo Display

The Tempo Display behaves very much like the Continuous Data Display in for example Key Edit. For a basic introduction to Cubase VST's way of handling continuous data (tempo belongs to this type of data), see the chapters about the MIDI Editors.

The First Tempo/Time Signature Event

When you first open the Master Track editor, for a new song, it will only contain one tempo, displayed as a grey or colored box continuing for ever to the right.

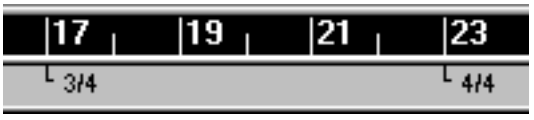
- You can't move or delete the first Tempo or Time signature Event.

The Tempo Display and Scrolling

Since the Tempo Display can be scrolled and the window resized, you might not always see the entire tempo graph:

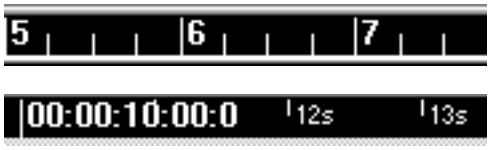
- If the display is "white", this is because the tempo graph is below the window (scroll down).
- If the entire display is grey, this is because the top of the graph is above the window (scroll up).

About Time Signature Events



Time Signature Events are displayed as small "hangers" above the tempo graph, visible if the Time Sig button is activated on the Function bar (see illustration above). The Events themselves can be selected, moved, copied, etc and the values for them are edited on the Info Line, as described on page 398.

About Rulers and Positions



The Master Track editor has two rulers, one above and one below the Tempo Display. The upper ruler shows *meter* (bars, beats etc.). The lower ruler – which can be turned on/off using the Time button, see page 387 in this chapter – shows time in one of a number of formats. To select a time format for this ruler, use the pop-up Options menu.

The formats are made up as follows:

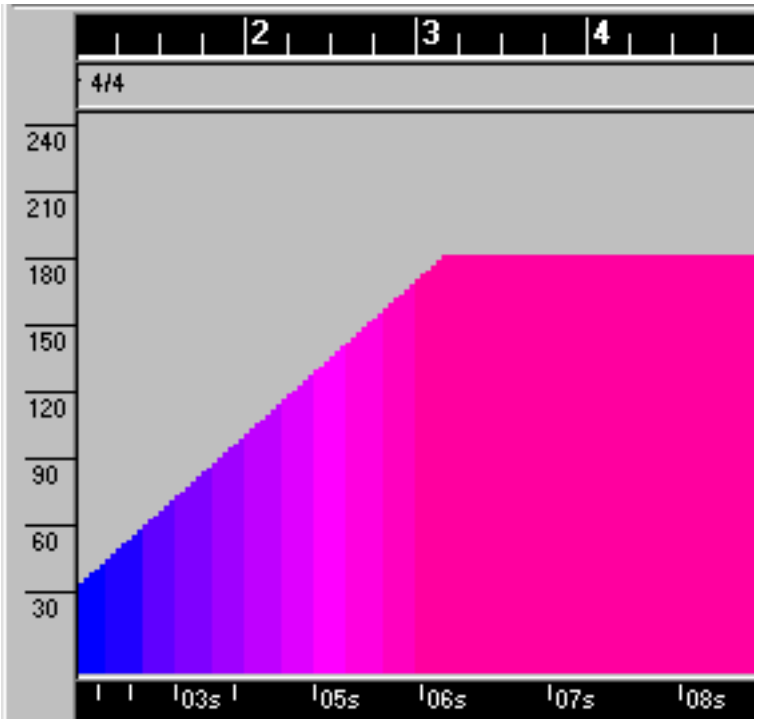
SMPTE/EBU	hours:minutes:seconds:frames:subframes
1/1000 sec	hours:minutes:seconds:thousands of seconds
Frames	frames
16mm Film	feet'frames
35mm Film	feet'frames:sprockets (4 sprockets per frame)

For SMPTE/EBU and Frames, the number of frames per second is set in the Synchronization dialog box, reached from the main Options menu. There are always 80 subframes to a frame, regardless of the frame rate.

The amount of detail shown on the ruler depends on how far you have zoomed in.

Switching between Meter and Time based Display

Normally, the meter ruler will be linear, that is, there will be equal distance between all bars on the screen. If there are tempo changes, the time ruler will be non-linear to match. If you watch the accelerando below you will see that the meter ruler is linear but the tick marks on the timing ruler get more and spread apart as the tempo increases.



There will be cases where you want the Meter ruler to be linear and the Time ruler to adapt to this, and there will be cases where you want the opposite (for example when working with film or video). For this purpose, the display can be switched, using one of the buttons on the Status Bar.

Meter Linear

Time Linear

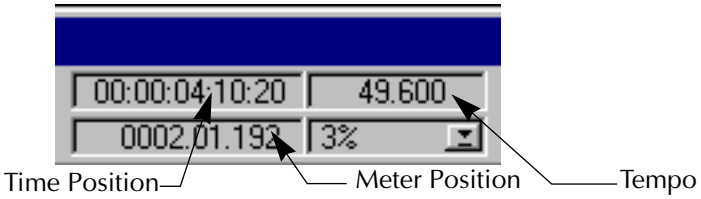
After switching, you may have to change the horizontal magnification of the window to make the window show the range you are interested in.

Moving around and setting Song Position

Since the Master Track is basically an editor like any other, moving around and setting Song position is basically identical to using any editor. Here are two minor differences:

- **To Position the Song Pointer, simply click on *either* Position Ruler.**
- **The Goto menu has slightly fewer options than the other editors.**

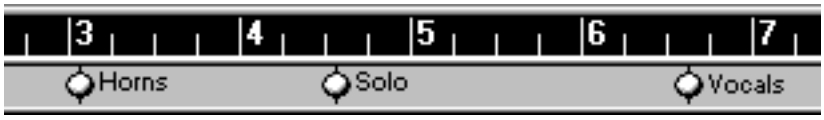
Position Boxes



The Mouse Pointer position is always shown on the Status bar, at the top as a time position and below as a meter position. These two position boxes are also used when moving and duplicating objects, as in all Cubase VST editors and in the Arrange window.

● Please note that these two boxes always show the position at the closest Snap value. Since the Snap value is used when positioning Events, these boxes will always indicate the position that an Event will *actually* appear on when you move it or draw it in. This also means that when you have zoomed in very far, you will probably want to set Snap to Off to be able to position accurately.

About Hitpoints



The Master Track editor also adds “Hitpoints” to Cubase VST. These are used to match time positions to meter positions, for example to make a certain musical cue fit a scene in a film or video.

Hitpoints come in two flavors, meter and time based. "Meter Hits" are shown on the upper Hitpoint strip and "Time Hits" are shown on the lower. You can hide all Hitpoints by using the Hitpoint button on the Status Bar, see page 387 in this chapter. Utilizing Hitpoints, tempo changes can be created which make the music fit any type of cue. More on working with Hitpoints in the next chapter.

About the Toolbox

The Master Track editor has a Toolbox, just like all Cubase VST's main windows:

Activate Master!

- For the Tempo and Time Signature changes to have any effect on playback, you must turn on the Master button on the Transport Bar.

Recording Tempo Changes

Recording Tempo Changes in the Graphic Editor

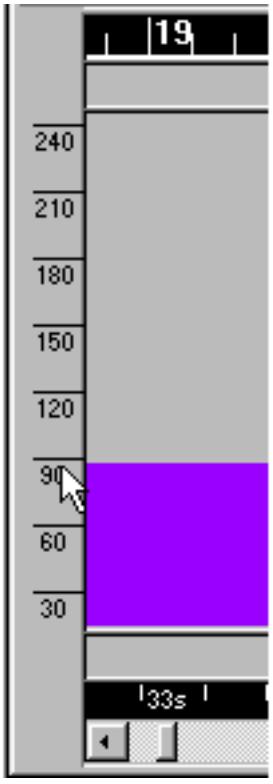
To record tempo changes using the mouse, proceed as follows:

1. **Select a Snap value (using the Snap pop-up on the Function bar) to decide for a spacing between the Events.**
   Do not use a higher value than needed, since this will make it harder to perform detailed editing on the recording afterwards. Often quarter notes will suffice, but experiment to find a value that suits you.

2. **Activate playback from any position in the Song.**

3. **Position the mouse pointer over the tempo scale to the left of the tempo graph.**
   Watch the Tempo box on the Status bar, it will show the Tempo represented by the mouse position, see page 391 in this chapter.

4. **Click the mouse button to insert one tempo Event, or drag up and down to create accelerandi or ritardandi.**



5. **When the mouse button is down you record tempo changes, when it is up you don't. Use this is as a way of punching in/out.**
   The display does not get updated while the mouse button is down.

6. **When you are ready, stop playback.**

● The recording you make overwrites any earlier recordings at the same positions (The Master Track editor always records in “Replace Mode”).

Recording Tempo Changes from the Arrange Window

It is possible to record changes in tempo without entering the Master Track editor(s). There are two major uses for this:

- You get a better view over the actual position in the Song, since you can watch the Part display while you are changing the tempo.
- You can use this for setting out "markers" for tempo changes and then edit in the actual tempo values in the Master Track afterwards.

When the "Record Tempo/Mutes" item is on (checked) on the Options menu, and Cubase VST is put into Record mode, it records any tempo changes and puts them in on the Master Track.

● Make sure you don't overwrite (Replace) any regular recording when Cubase VST is put into Record mode. To make certain, select an empty Track.

Tempo Recording works just as regular recording, using the Locators, with punch in and out at any time and so on, but...

- **The Master Track is always in Replace mode, that is, the recording always replaces the existing tempo Events.**

Once in Record mode, change the tempo value on the Transport bar. Each time you change it, the new setting is recorded. Recorded tempo changes appear in the Master Track, where they can be edited as usual.

● For the recorded tempi to have any effect on playback or future recordings you must of course switch Cubase VST to Master (press [M] on the computer keyboard).

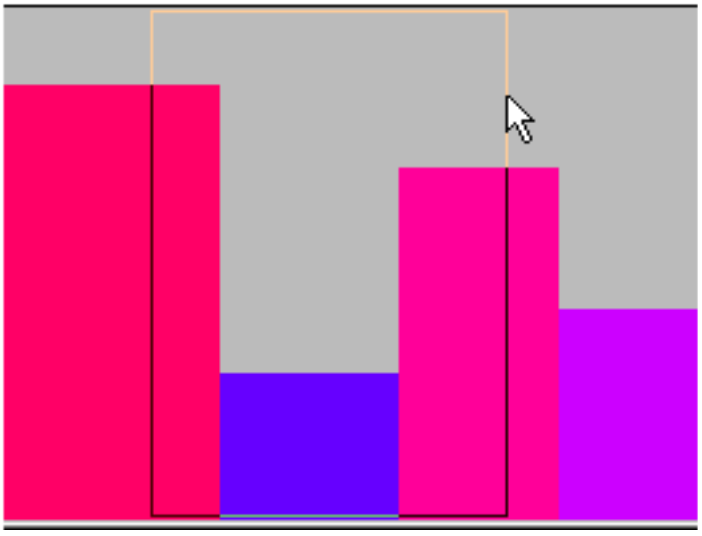
Remember that it is only tempo *changes* that are recorded, you may have to set an initial tempo directly in the Master Track. Also remember that this type of recording does not use the Snap value, and is therefore harder to edit than a recording made directly in the Graphic editor.

Selecting

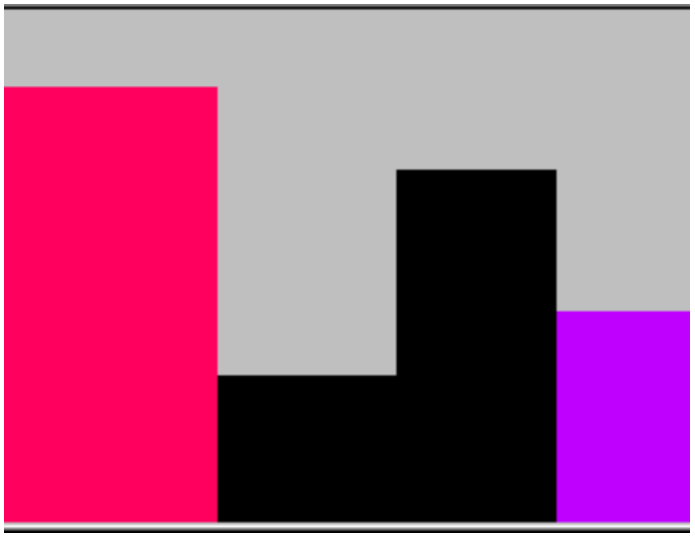
Tempo Events

Selecting in the tempo graph is done as everywhere else in Cubase VST:

- Clicking on one Event selects it.
- If you hold down [Shift], you can select more Events.
- If you press the mouse button somewhere in a free (white) area and drag, a rectangle appears. This rectangle should stretch over the *beginning* of all the Events you wish to select.



With a rectangle like this...



... you select these two Events, since they both begin within the range.

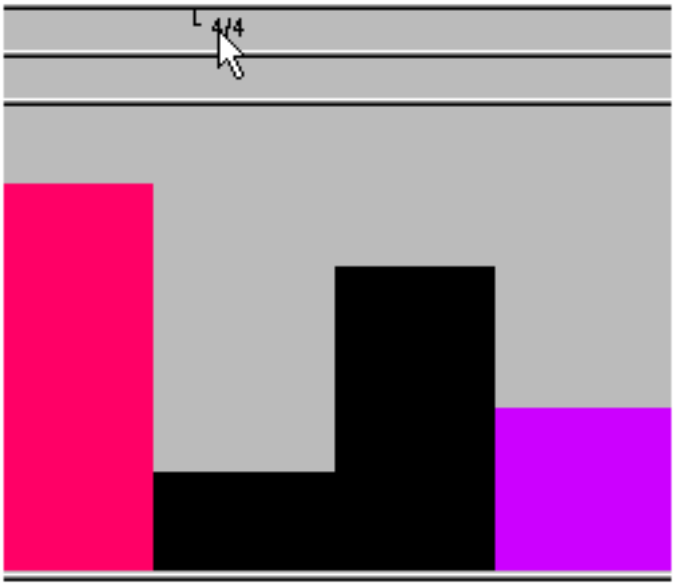
- You can click on one Event and then use the [←] and [→] keys to step through them. Hold down [Shift] to select as well.
- You can use Select All ([Control]-[A]) to select all Events, not just the tempo ones.
- To deselect, simply click on some free (white) area in the display.

Time Signature Events and Hitpoints

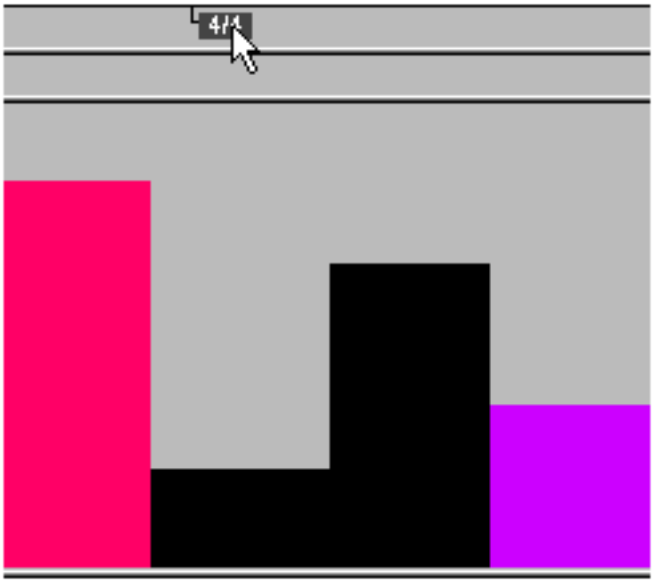
Selecting Time Signature Events (and "Hitpoints", see the next chapter) is done in exactly the same way as with Tempo Events, see above.

Selecting Events of Different Types at the Same Time

The Master Track editor displays data of several different types: Tempo Events, Time Signature Events and Hitpoint Events. To select more than one type, first make your selection in one area (for example in the Tempo Display) using any of the methods above then hold down [Shift] and continue selecting in the next area (for example among the Time Signatures), again using any method.



To select for example some Tempi and a Time Signature, first select the Tempi, then hold down [Shift]...



...and click on the Time Signature Event.

The only exception to this is Select All, which (as stated above) selects *all* Events, regardless of type.

Editing on the Info Line

When you select one and only one Event its settings appear on the Info Line.

- All types of Events have a Time and a Meter position. You can edit either to move the Event.
- The Time Position is always edited in time code (SMPTE) format; as hours:minutes:seconds:frames:subframes.
- Tempo Events can also be edited on the Info Line. If you have the display switched to the Time based mode (see page 390), the curve will get "compacted" or "expanded" as you change the tempo.
- Time Signature Events have a numerator and a denominator which can be changed individually on the Info Line to produce any time signature from 1/2 to 16/16.
- Hitpoints' names (as shown in the value column) are described on page 415.

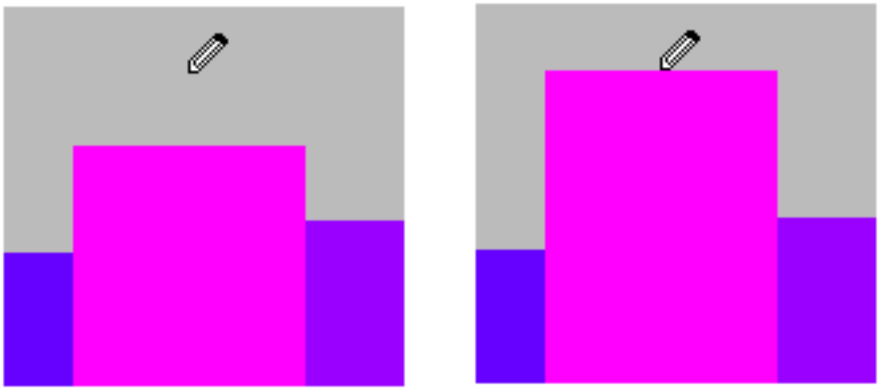
● Moving Time Signatures using the Info Line can be a bit confusing at first. Here's why: If you move a Time Signature so that it winds up on the same position as an existing Time Signature, that Event will be deleted. If this is not what you want, either double click on the position value on the Info Line and type in the desired position or move the Event using the mouse, see page 401.

● You can not move the first Time Signature Event.

Redrawing the Tempo Curve

If you select the Pencil from the Toolbox and drag over an existing tempo curve, you will change the values of the tempo Events you pass over. A box on the status bar, just to the left of the Quant value, will show you exactly which tempo the current mouse position represents, see page 391 in this chapter.

To change the value of one Event for example, you can position the Pencil anywhere "over it", move up and down until you see the right tempo, and then simply click to set the Event to that tempo.



Clicking in the graph changes the tempo of the Event to the position of the pointer.

To change the tempo of several Events at the same time, you simply drag over them with the mouse button down. If you drag faster than the program can redraw the screen, don't worry, your movement is tracked anyway.

Please note that this only changes the values of existing Events, it does not input new ones. To do this, you must hold down [Alt], see below.

If you have the display switched to the Time based mode (see page 390), the curve will get "compacted" or "expanded" as you change the tempi.

Drawing new Events

Tempo Events

Drawing one Event

1. **Set the Snap value.**
   You can only input Events at the closest Snap position.

2. **Select the Pencil**

3. **Hold down [Alt], position the pointer (watch the tempo indicator on the Status Bar), and click once.**

Drawing a Curve

1. **Set the Snap value.**
   Don’t draw Tempo Events with a tight spacing than you need, it’ll “eat up” memory and make the screen redraw slowly.

2. **Select the Pencil**

3. **Hold down [Alt], position the pointer (watch the tempo indicator on the Status Bar), and drag.**
   If you drag faster than the program can redraw the screen, don't worry, your movement is tracked anyway and the values are smoothed at the end of the draw.

   If you have the display switched to the Time based mode (see page 390), the curve will get "compacted" or "expanded" as you input new tempi.

Time Signature Events

To draw in Time Signature Events, simply select the Pencil and click once in the Time Signature strip. You can also drag to input several Time Signature Events at the same time. To input a Time Signature change at every bar for example, set Snap to "1" and drag across the time Signature Strip. Then select each one and set its value using the Info Line.

Moving Events Using the Mouse

If you have one or more Events selected (even of different types) you can move them using the mouse, just as with any object in Cubase VST (select the arrow pointer from the Toolbox). Only horizontal movement matters.

If you are only moving one tempo Event, its position is indicated by a vertical line. If the selection contains several tempo Events, a rectangle encompassing the area from the start of the first selected Event to the start of the last selected Event guides you. The movement snaps to the closest Snap value.

- A block of tempo data that you move, always *replaces* any existing tempo data on the position you move it to. You can not move the first Tempo and Time Signature Events.

Duplicating Events

If you hold down [Alt] and move Events, you are duplicating them. Everything else is as when moving.

- Time Signature events can only be positioned at the beginning of a bar.

Cut, Copy and Paste

The Master Track editor supports full Cut, Copy and Paste of all types of Event. Cut and Paste works just like in any other part of Cubase VST.

- If, as a result of the Paste, one Tempo or Time Signature Event will wind up on the same position as the other, the previous Event will get replaced. A block of tempo data that is Pasted in, always replaces any tempo data at those positions.

Deleting Events

- **To delete Events using the mouse, select the Eraser and click or drag over the Events.**
- **To delete using the computer keyboard, first select the Events you want to delete, then press [Backspace].**
- **You can also use the "Delete" item on the Edit menu to clear the selected Events.**

- When you delete a Tempo or Time Signature Event, you actually remove a *change* in Tempo/Time Signature. Since you remove the change, the previous Tempo or Time Signature will remain, until the next Event.
  You can not delete the first Tempo or Time Signature Event.

Repeating Events

The Repeat function on the pop-up Do menu can be used to block-duplicate a number of Events one or more times. It operates on all Events, Tempo changes, Time Signature changes and Hitpoints at the same time.

1. **Set up the Left and Right Locator (on the Transport bar) to encompass the section you want to repeat.**

2. **Set the Song Position to where you want the first block of Events to appear (you can click on the Time or Meter Rulers to do this).**

3. **Select Repeat from the pop-up Do menu.**

4. **In the dialog box that appears, set the number of times you want the block repeated.**

5. **Click OK.**
   The copies will now appear. They are lined up "edge to edge", starting at the Song Position.

Creating Accelerandi and Ritardandi

The Line tool in the Toolbox (see page 392) can be used to create continuous tempo changes, accelerandi and ritardandi (deaccelerandi). The Line tool is described in detail in the chapters describing the MIDI editors.

- **To fit *existing* Events under the line (to create a ramp), position the mouse, press the mouse button and drag to create a line. Release the mouse.**
- **To create new Events, hold down [Alt] before pressing the mouse button. New Events that fit "under the line" are created, spaced according to the Snap value.**

  Please note that if you have the display switched to Time Base (see page 390) the ramp will appear "curved" since the meter scale is compacted/expanded. If this is confusing, switch over to meter base.

Reducing the number of Tempo Events

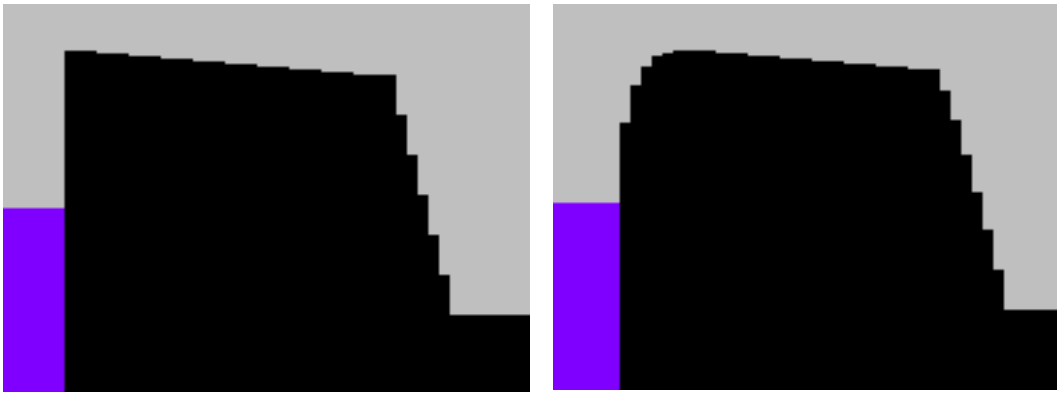
As a result of a tempo recording you may have an overly dense tempo curve, which might make the screen redraw sluggishly and the tempo curve hard to edit.

Reduce, found on the pop-up Do menu thins the data at its densest points, making the spacing more even. Applying it repeatedly will make the data consecutively "thinner".

Reduce only works on the *selected* Events. Select a section of the tempo Curve and use the Reduce function.

Smoothing Tempo Event values

This function evens out a tempo curve with "transients" (jumps), without inserting or deleting Events. Instead, existing Tempo Events are averaged to make the curve smoother.



Before Smoothing.....and after.

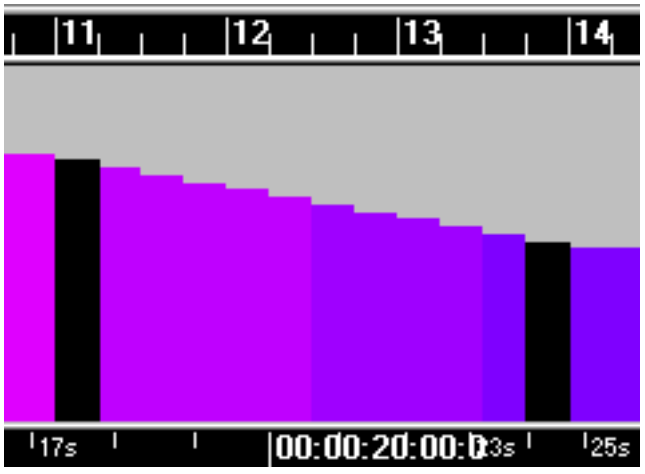
Numerical processing of Tempo Events

The Tempo Processor dialog, located on the pop-up Do menu, is the equivalent of a fit time calculator. It is used to numerically change a set of tempi by a specific amount or to fit a certain cue. Since this function uses numbers, it might feel complicated when you first try it. We will try to guide you through it. Here's the main procedure:

- The Tempo Processor dialog adjusts existing tempi so that a region of bars (for example eight bars) will fit a certain time span (for example "6 seconds and ten frames").
- Since the function does not create any tempi of its own, you have to put them in before you start. If you want a smooth tempo change, create a ritardando or accelerando. If you want more direct changes, only input one or a few Events. Also note that the adjustment is made overall for all the tempi in the range, which means they keep their relative tempo differences. In other words, a steep ritardando will still be a steep ritardando after the processing.
- The adjustments themselves are made in a dialog where you can change only two things: either you simply set an overall scale factor (for example 70% of the original tempo) or you set an end *time* for the range, so the number of bars that you selected will now end at precisely that position.

Here are the details:

1. **To use this function, select one or more tempi that make up a range of bars, *but do not include the last tempo in the Song*!**
   (if the last tempo is selected, Process Tempo will be greyed out on the menu). All the tempi within the selected range will get processed, whether they are all selected or not.



This selection will Process all Tempi between bar 11 and 14.

2. **Select Process Tempo from the pop-up Do menu.**
   A dialog box appears.

3. **The Start and End Meter values in the "Selection Range" section are only display values. They show you the range of the selection you made.**

4. **The Start Time and Length fields in the same section are also just display values. Start Time shows you the Time position of the beginning of the selection. Length shows you the current length of the selection. This last value will change when you...**

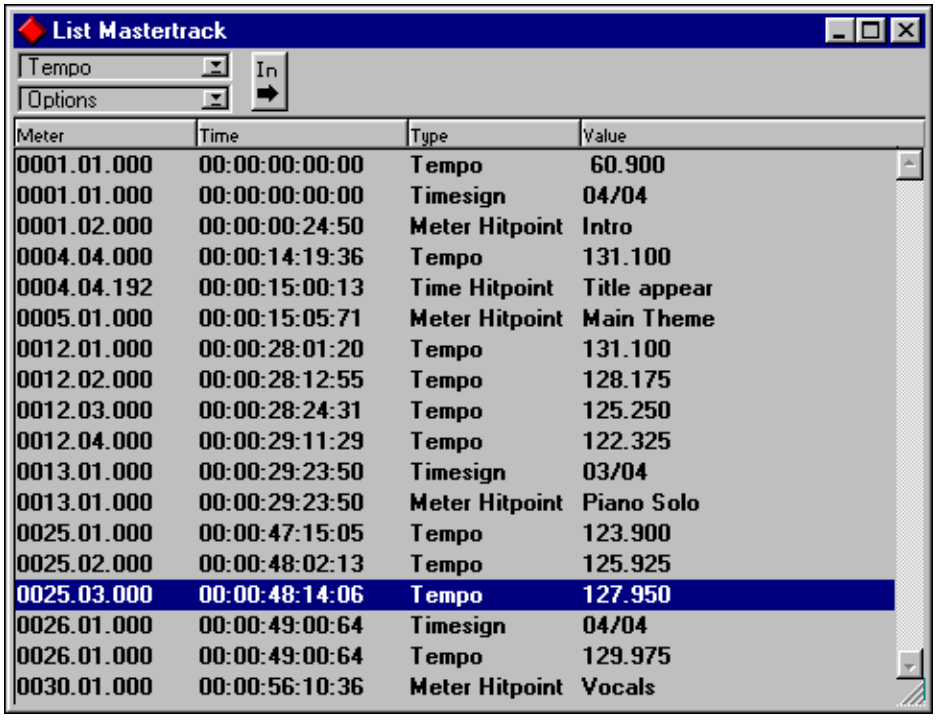
5. **...set the amount of change either by adjusting Length or Tempo Scaling in the "Settings" section of the dialog. In either case the other value and the Length value will get updated to show you how the change will affect the bars the selection encompasses.**

6. **When you are done with all the settings, click Do.**
   The changes take effect immediately. You can also click Undo to revert to what you had before.

7. **When you are ready, click Exit.**

   A more intuitive way of fitting tempi to time based cues is using Hitpoints, see page 420.

The Master Track List Editor

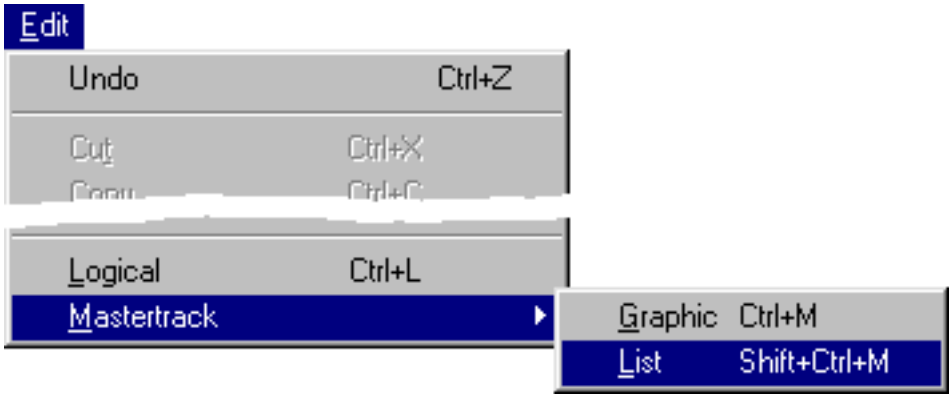


Cubase VST also features a list editor for Tempi, Time Signatures and Hitpoints. You can use this instead of the Graphic editor, or as a complement.

The List window is very straightforward to use. If you are familiar with the Graphic editor and Cubase VST's List Edit for MIDI data, using this editor will be easy.

Opening the List Editor

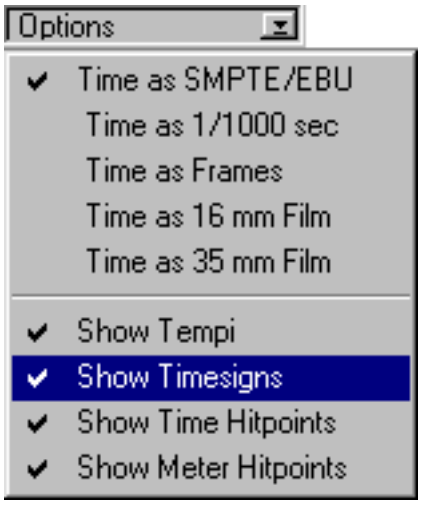
You open the list editor by selecting Mastertrack List from the Edit menu or by pressing [Shift]+[Control]-[M].



You can have the List and the Graphic editors open at the same time, and they will always be "in sync", just as when you have two MIDI editors open at the same time.

Selecting a Time Format and Hiding Event Types

Using the upper part of the pop-up Options menu at the top of the window, you can select a format for the Time Positions of the Events (as described on page 389 in this chapter).



Using the lower part of the same menu, you can hide/show any of the four possible Event types.

Creating Events

If you want to create a new Event, proceed as follows:

1. **Select an Event type from the pop-up menu above the Option pop-up.**

2. **Set the Song Position on the Transport Bar to where you want your new Event.**

3. **Click the Insert button.**

- If an Event of the same type already exists on that position, it will get overwritten.

Moving Events

This is done by adjusting the position values in the list, as on the Info Line in the Graphic editor (see page 398). You can move an Event by either giving it a new Meter Position or a new Time Position (in Time Code format (SMPTE/EBU) only).

- You can not move the first Tempo and Time Signature Event.

Deleting Events

1. **Select the Event(s) you want to delete.**
   You can use [Shift] to select several Events at the same time.

2. **Press [Backspace].**

- You can not delete the first Tempo/Time Signature Event.

Cut, Copy and Paste

Events that you have selected can be Cut, Copied or Pasted. When you Paste they will get inserted as a block, starting at the Song Position.

Moving Master Track data between Arrangements

As you know, you can have several Arrangements open at the same time. Each Arrangement has its own Master Track, for which the Master Track editor is an editor. To move Tempo Events, Time Signatures and Hitpoints between Arrangements, you can use two techniques: Cut, Copy and Paste or Import/Export.

Using Cut, Copy and Paste

To Cut, Copy and Paste between Arrangements, proceed as follows.

1. **Select the Events you want to move, in the Graphic editor or in the List (it doesn't matter which). For details on selecting, see page 396.**

2. **Select Cut or Copy.**

3. **Select another Arrangement**
   This can be either an open one, one that you create using New on the File menu or one that you open from disk (as an Arrangement file).

4. **In the new Arrangement, open the Master Track editor.**

5. **Set the Song Position to where you want to insert the block of data, and select Paste from the Edit menu.**

● If, as a result of the Paste, one Event will wind up on the same position as an existing, the existing Event will get replaced. A block of tempo data that is Pasted in always replaces any tempo data at those positions.

Using Import and Export

If you want to move an entire Master Track between Arrangements, you use Import and Export on the pop-up Do menu in the Master Track editor.

- Export presents you with an ordinary file selector where you can define a name and location for your Master Track file.
- Import loads a Master Track from disk which simply replaces the current Master Track.

31

Hitpoints

What can I do with Hitpoints?

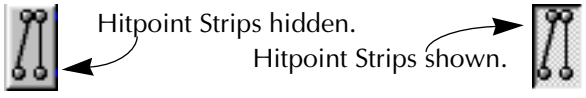
Hitpoints are basically used for matching time positions to meter positions, by inserting – and changing the values of – tempo changes. This can be used in a number of situations:

- When scoring for film and video, matching music to visual cues.
- For syncing Cubase VST to live music on tape.
- For restoring lost sync tracks.
- When working with material that contains both music (tempo based Events) and for example sound effects (time based Events).
- Creating tempo maps for music recorded without a metronome, and fit the music to the "barlines" in Cubase VST.

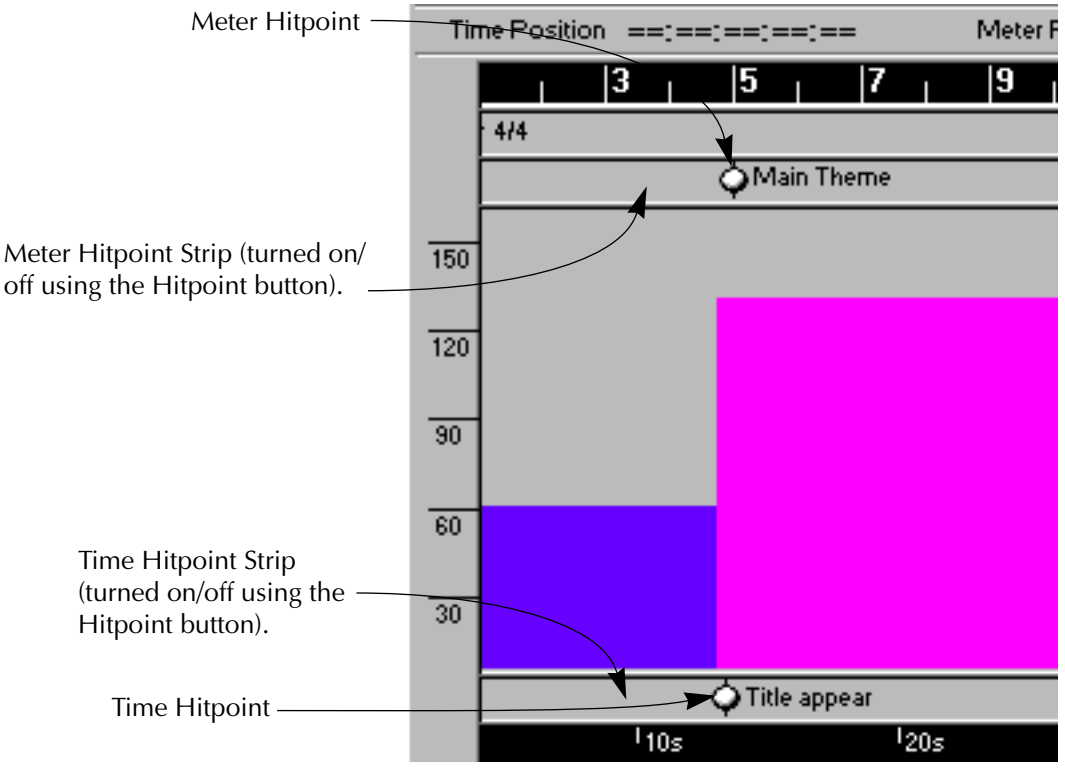
What are Hitpoints?

Hitpoints are actually only positional references, markers of important positions that appear in the Graphic Master Track editor. They are used to define the relationship between time and meter in order to "match tempo" (see below) or to create tempo maps that fit certain cues.

There are two types of Hitpoints, *Meter Hits* and *Time Hits*. Meter Hits are found on a strip above the Tempo Display and Time Hits are found on a strip below (see page 392). If these Strips are not visible, there is a Hitpoint button on the Status bar that reveals them.



The Hitpoint button.



Meter Hits always appear on meter positions (bars, beats etc) and Time Hits are always on time positions (for example displayed as time code).

The idea is that you set out *Time* Hits to mark out important visual keys in film, or for example quarter notes in freely recorded music. You then use various tools to find a relation between the Time Hit's positions (defined in *time*) and important musical positions (defined in *bars and beats*). This relation is created in one of two ways: by linking Time and Meter Hits, or by using the Tempo Match/Tempo Scan function.

About this Chapter

This section describes how Hitpoints are used and how they can be applied to different situations, such as Fit Tempo operations and sync to existing music on tape. It assumes you are already familiar with the basic use of the graphic Master Track editor.

The following text will first describe how Hitpoints are handled, and then applies this to real life situations.

Setting Out Hitpoints

Using the Mouse

The obvious way of setting out Hitpoints is using the Pencil in the Toolbox. This works just as with Time Signature changes (see page 400), just select the Pencil from the Toolbox and click or drag in a Hitpoint Strip (see previous chapter). The Snap values restricts your input as usual.

- Please note that when settings out Meter Hits, you may want to turn off Snap completely.

If you hold down [Alt] while dragging, you get two linked Hitpoints, but more about that on page 419.

Via MIDI

You can use MIDI to input *Time Hits*, whether Cubase VST is playing or not.

1. **Activate the MIDI In button on the Status Bar.**

The MIDI In button.

2. **If so desired (see below) activate playback.**

3. **"Send" in some MIDI Notes, for example by tapping a MIDI keyboard.**
When the MIDI In button is activated, MIDI notes coming in while the Master Track editor is open will be converted to Time Hits.

4. **When you are done, turn off the MIDI In button.**

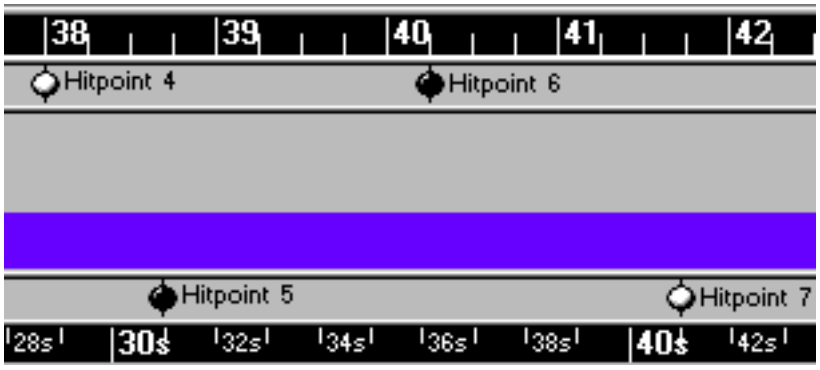
- For this function to work, you don't have to be in play or record mode. This means you can add hitpoints even when syncing to time code running very slow or even at still frame (using VITC time code converted to MIDI Time Code, for example). This will allow you to input Hits "manually" with very high precision.

Using Fill

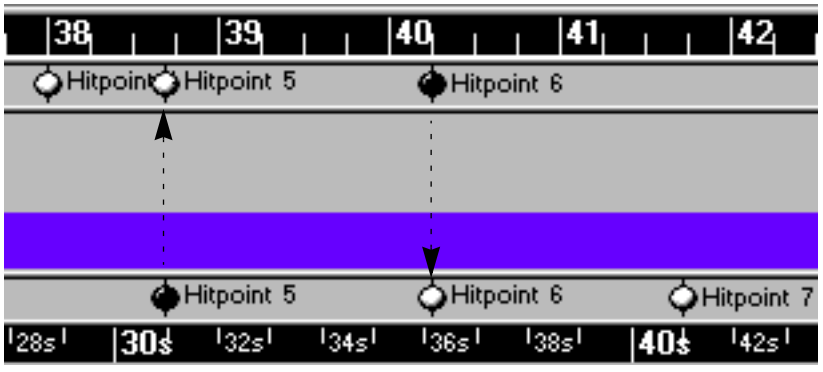
To create evenly spaced Meter Hits, there is a special item on the pop-up Do menu, called "Fill meter hitpoints". This will fill the Meter Hit strip with Hitpoints, between the Left and Right Locator, spaced according to the Snap value.

Mirror

This function will mirror the selected Hitpoints onto the "other side". A Time Hit will get a Meter Hit at the corresponding position, and vice versa.



Selecting two Hitpoints and then Mirror...



...creates two new Hitpoints.

Editing Hitpoints

Moving and Naming using the Info Line

Just as with Tempo Events and Time Signatures, Hitpoints can be edited one by one on the Info Line (see page 415). Apart from moving them this way you can also give each Hitpoint a name. Just double click on the default name at the far right end of the Info line and type in a new one.

The right end of the Info line shows the type of Hitpoint and its name.

Moving, Duplicating, Deleting etc.

Just as with Time Signatures and Tempo Events (and many other objects in Cubase VST) you can use the tools in the Toolbox and the computer keyboard to select move, duplicate, Cut, Copy, Paste and delete Hitpoints. This is all described in detail in the previous section.

Also, the Repeat function described on page 402 of course applies to Hitpoints too.

Kicking

The Kickers in the Toolbox can be used to move one Hitpoint one Snap value in either direction (depending on which tool you selected).

If – as a result of a kick – a Hitpoint winds up on the same position as another one, you will only see one of them. You can always use the Master Track List editor to check for "double" Hitpoints.

Converting MIDI Notes to Hitpoints

If you have Copied or Cut *notes* or *Control Change messages* (for example sustain pedal) from a MIDI editor, and Paste them in the Master Track, they will appear as Time Hitpoints, starting at the Song Position.

Keep Linked and Keep Selected

These two functions on the pop-up Do menu can be used to conditionally delete Hitpoints.

- "Keep Linked" deletes all Hitpoints that are not *linked* (see below).
- "Keep Selected" deletes all Hitpoints that are not selected.

Quantizing

Meter Hits can be Quantized. This is probably most useful together with the Mirror & Link function as described on page 419. Combining these two functions allows you to for example easily insert small tempo changes to make some Hits perfect after using Match to find an adequate tempo.

1. **Set a Quantize value using the Quant pop-up menu.**

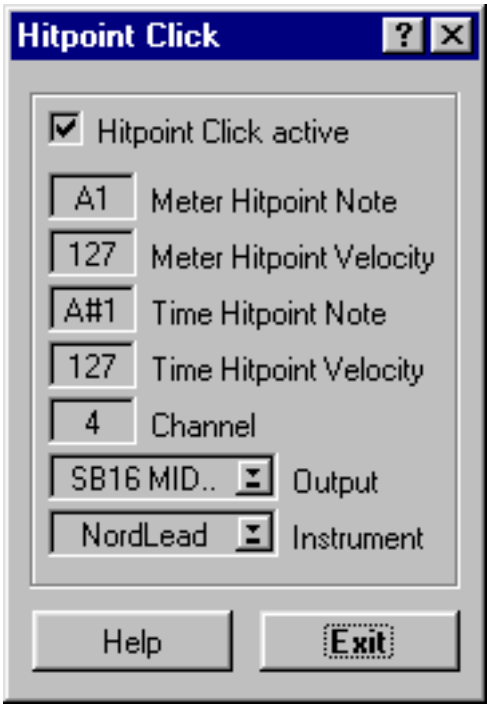
2. **Select the Meter Hits you want to Quantize.**
   If you want to Quantize them all you use Select All, since no other Events than Meter Hits are affected by this operation).

3. **Select Quantize Meter Hits from the pop-up Do menu.**

Playing back Hitpoints via MIDI

You can get audible feedback on the position of a Hitpoint. While this is probably most useful for Time Hits, it can be used on Meter Hits too.

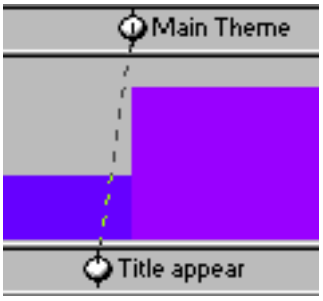
To set up MIDI playback of Hitpoints, select "Edit Hitp Note" from the pop-up Do menu. If you are familiar with the Metronome dialog, this one will be self explanatory.



The Meter and Time Hitpoints can be set to play one key each with a certain velocity. Both share a MIDI Channel and Output setting, (which can be defined as an Instrument).

Linking Hitpoints

Linking Hitpoints is a way of telling the Master Track editor which Meter and Time Hits belong together. The program can then use this information to change tempo (and insert tempo changes if needed) to make certain meter and time positions line up. The practical uses of this are described on page 424 and page 426.



Linked Hitpoints

Show Hitpoint Links

To make the links between Hitpoints visible, you must make sure that Show Hitpoint Links on the pop-up Options menu is ticked. If it isn't, select it.

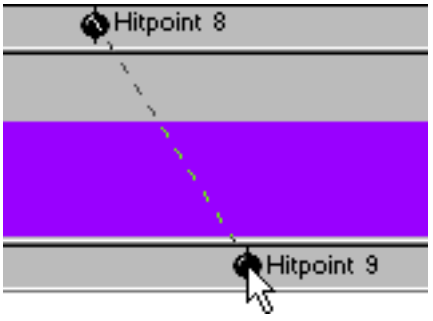
Manual Linking

To manually Link two Hitpoints, proceed as follows:

1. **Select the Arrow pointer.**

2. **Position the mouse inside a Hitpoint.**

3. **Press the mouse button and drag down or up depending on where you started (from Meter to Time or vice versa).**
   A line will follow the pointer.



4. **Drag until the mouse pointer is positioned inside a Hitpoint on the "other side".**
   The Hitpoint "lights up" to show you when you have the pointer inside it.

5. **Release the mouse.**

When Drawing

If you hold down [Alt] while drawing a Hitpoint you automatically get a linked Hitpoint right above/below it.

Breaking Links

If you want to break a Link between two Hitpoints, select the scissors from the Toolbox and use it to click on or drag over the lines. Do not click on the Hitpoints themselves.

Also, if you delete a Hitpoint, its link to any other Hitpoint will vanish.

Link One by One

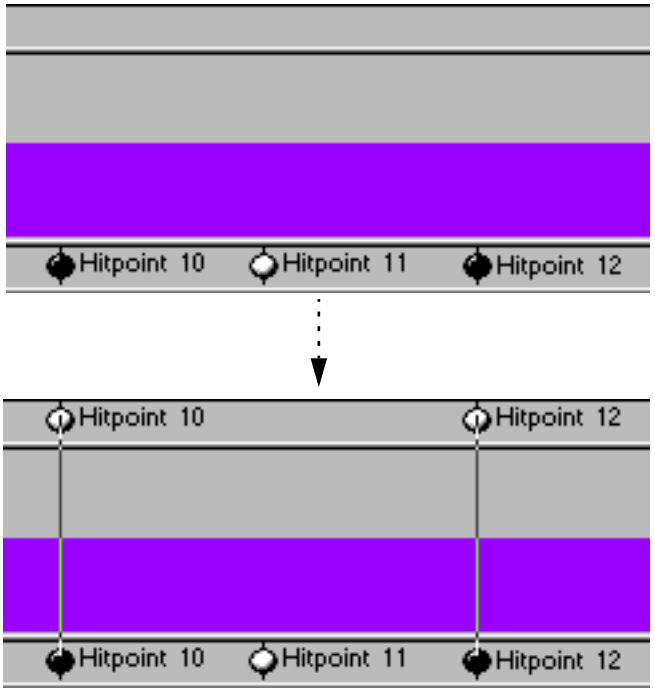
This item on the pop-up Do menu, automatically links the first Meter Hit with the first Time Hit, the second Meter Hit with the second Time Hit, etc.

This is most useful when you have tapped in the Time Hits and used "Fill Meter Hits" to create Meter Hits. This will be the situation, for example when syncing to existing music on tape or when restoring a lost sync track (see page 426).

Mirror & Link

This function takes all the *selected* Hitpoints and copies them "to the other side" (Hits to Meter and vice versa) and also links each pair.

This function is very useful when you have certain visual cues indicated as Hitpoints and wish to find corresponding meter positions to fit them to. By using Mirror and Link, moving or quantizing the resultant Meter Hits and then using Straighten up, the tempo is adapted in a few simple operations. For more details, see page 424.

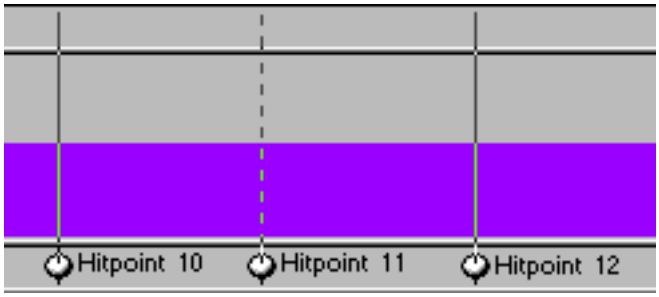


Working with Tempo Matching

The Tempo Matching feature of the Master Track editor is best suited for finding suitable tempi for shorter spots or a smaller section of a larger piece.

Show Hitpoint Match

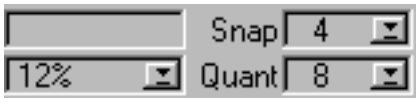
When this option is turned on on the pop-up Options menu, lines will extend from the Time Hits up over the Tempo Graph and onto the Meter Hit strip. When these lines are dotted, the Time Hits currently do not match any certain meter positions, when they are solid, they do.



In this figure, the Time Hit in the middle doesn't match, but the other two do.

About Matching

So how do you tell the program what "matching" means, in your particular case? There are two settings for this, the Snap value and the Tolerance pop-up (in %) beside it.



If you for example set Snap to 4 and Tolerance to 12%, this means that all Time Hits that are positioned within 12% from a quarter note are considered matching and will be shown in solid black.

Finding Matches

Let's say you have a short video spot for which you want to find one tempo that fits as many visual cues as possible. You have a video tape recorder with time code that you can feed to Cubase VST to achieve synchronization. Proceed as follows:

1. **Activate the Master Track by clicking on the Master button on the Transport bar.**

2. **Use the Synchronization dialog to set things up so that** Cubase VST **starts exactly where the music should start in the spot.**

3. **Set up a few Time Hits to match the important visual cues.**

4. **Use the Hitpoint MIDI playback function (see page 417) to verify that the Hits actually happen when they should.**

5. **Decide for a Snap setting and a Tolerance.**
   Raising the Tolerance will give you a larger number of Matches, but they will be of lower precision. However, you might gain from increasing the Tolerance initially to find as many matches as possible. You can later link the Time Hits to absolute Meter positions and then use Straighten Up to automatically create a perfect fit. See page 423.

6. **The method works best if you don't have any tempo changes at all during the section which you try to fit, so preferably delete any tempo changes in the section.**

7. **Set the tempo to the lowest you could possibly be satisfied with.**

8. **Raise the tempo gradually, by using the Pencil directly in the graph. Zoom in vertically if you need higher precision. You can also use the Info Line.**

9. **Watch the Tempo Match lines as you change the tempo.**
   Whenever one of them turns solid, you have found a match. Change the tempo up and down until as many of the Hits match as possible. Also note where they match. For example, if you have Snap set to "4", a match on the second quarter in a bar may not be as "useful" to you as a match on the down- or up-beat.

10. **Experiment with different Snap and Tolerance settings.**

11. **Play back the Song and monitor the MIDI playback of the Hits and how they relate to the metronome to get a feel for how the music should be written to fit.**

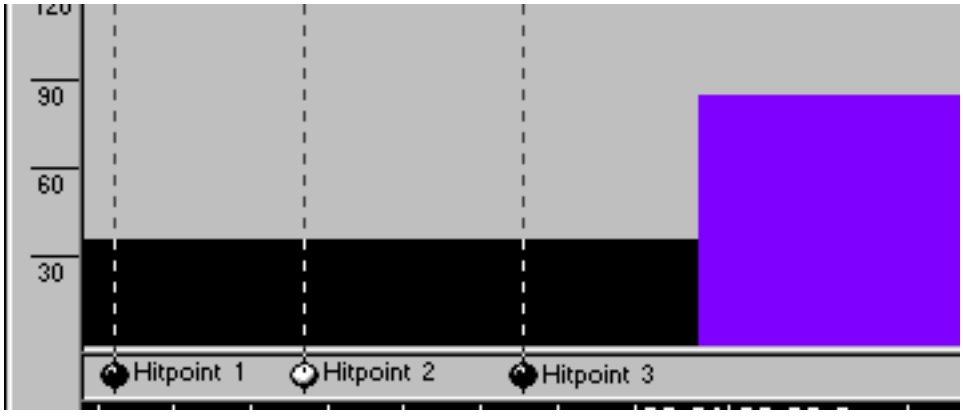
Using Auto Tempo Scan

If adjusting the tempo as in the Process above feels like too much work, the Master Track editor can do it for you.

1. **Set things up just as described above and set the tempo to the lowest you could possibly be satisfied with.**
   The Master Track editor always raises the tempo when trying to find matches.

2. **Select the Tempo Event you want to vary to find the match**
   Auto-scan can only vary one Tempo Event at a time.

3. **Also select (hold down [Shift]) the Time Hits that you want to find a Match for.**
   The function will only check the *selected Time Hits* for a match, no other Hits.



To use Tempo Scan, exactly one Tempo Event and at least one Time Hit must be selected.

4. **Select Auto Tempo Scan from the pop-up Do menu.**

   The program now raises the tempo gradually and looks for matches. If it finds a match for *all* selected Hitpoints, it stops. You will have to select Auto Tempo Scan repeatedly to step through all the possibilities.

   If no match can be found for all selected Hits, the program will show you the last of the best matches, that could be found. If you for example have three Hitpoints selected and the program can only find a match for two of them, it will show this.

- The more Hitpoints you have, the longer the scan will take. Please be patient...

Proceeding from here

If you have found a tempo that you would like to use, but not all Hits match, or you think you have raised the Tolerance too far, you can automatically insert tempo changes to create a perfect match:

1. **Use Tempo Match (with or without Auto Tempo Scan) to find a tempo that gives an adequate match, as described above.**

2. **Select Show Hitpoint Links from the pop-up Options menu. The Tempo Match lines disappear.**

3. **Select all the Time Hits involved.**

4. **Select Mirror & Link from the pop-up Do menu.**

5. **Set Quant to the appropriate value. If your match is for example to downbeats, set it to "1".**

6. **Use Quantize Meter Hits to move the Meter Hits exactly to the downbeats.**

7. **Select Straighten Up from the pop-up Do menu.**
   A dialog box will ask you if you are prepared to insert Tempo changes. Click OK. You will now find that the tempo varies (probably just slightly) between the Hits.

Working with Straighten Up

Straighten Up is a function, and as all others in the Master Track editor it is located on the pop-up Do menu. Straighten up adjusts and inserts tempi to make Linked Time and Meter Hits match, so that musical positions (Meter Hits) happen at specific time cues (Time Hits).

Switching to “Straighten Up Mode” (Show Hitpoint Links)

To display the Links between Hitpoints (instead of the Tempo Match lines) activate Show Hitpoint Links on the pop-up Options menu.

How Straighten Up works

When you have input and adjusted your Hitpoints and select Straighten Up, all Hitpoints are examined, one pair at a time, starting from the beginning of the song.

To make the two Hitpoints match in time and meter, Tempo Events just *before* the pair are adjusted. Visually, this turns any diagonal link-line into a solid vertical one.

If there isn't enough tempo changes for Straighten Up to make a pair match, it will ask for permission to insert additional tempo Events.

In some cases a perfect match can not be found (for "mathematical" reasons). In this case, the line remains dotted, but it may be straight on screen anyway. This slight mismatch (which is always in the millisecond range) probably won't be noted.

If you have cross-linked Hitpoints, the program will be unable to straighten up and will inform you via a dialog box.

Working with visual cues

If you are working with music for film or video, for example with Cubase VST synced to time code from a video, Straighten Up is an invaluable tool for making cues match the picture. Here's a general outline of how to work with Hitpoints and Straighten Up:

1. **Set up synchronisation to the video.**
   See the Synchronization chapter.

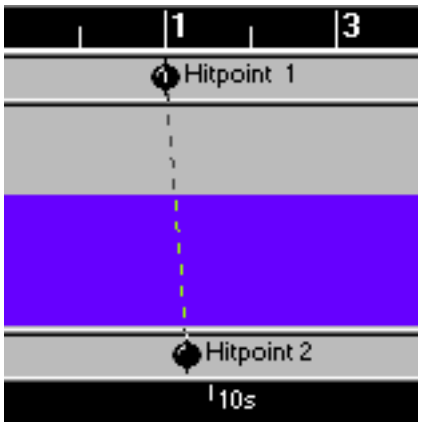
2. **Activate the Master Track (press Master on the Transport Bar) and open the Master Track editor. Set an approximate initial tempo for the music you have in mind.**

3. **In the Synchronisation dialog box, find a starting point, for example approximately two bars before the music should actually start.**

4. **In the same dialog, to make the Time Ruler in Cubase VST display the actual time code on the tape, set the Time Display to the same value as the Song Start. Also set Bar Display to for example -2, so that position 1.1.0 in the Song is where the music should actually start.**

5. **Draw in, or use MIDI to insert a Time Hit where the music will start.**

6. **Draw a Meter Hit on Bar 1, and link it to the Time Hit.**



7. **Now select Straighten Up, and the tempo will get adjusted so that these two points line up.**
   If the tempo was changed too much, you might have to repeat the procedure, set a new Song Start and Time Display in the Sync dialog, and move the Time Hit accordingly, then Straighten Up again.

8. **When the beginning of the Song is adjusted to taste, you can begin inserting Time Hits for important visual cues.**
   We suggest you name them for future reference.

9. **The next step is to create corresponding Meter Hits. This can be done manually (draw and link) or using Mirror and Link.**

10. **Move the Meter Hits around to fit the music and use Straighten Up to examine what kind of tempo changes were needed.**
    Please note that Straighten up only inserts one tempo change for each linked pair. If you want a gradual tempo change between two pairs, draw in an accelerando/ritardando, and Straighten Up will scale the entire section to fit.

11. **Keep adjusting the Hitpoints, insert new tempo changes (accelerandi or ritardandi for example) where needed, and use Straighten Up to restore the Time/Meter relations.**

    Don't worry about making last minute changes. If you for example receive a new copy of the video where a few frames have been cut out, just move your Time Hits accordingly and straighten up again. Changes you make in the beginning of the Song won't affect tempi at later positions, since each matched pair of links creates a new fixed "reference" between time and meter.

    During the course of this procedure, you can of course switch back to the Arrange window and record and edit music to fit the cues.

Synchronizing to existing music and recovering lost Sync Tracks

It is not uncommon to have to synchronise MIDI sequencing to existing music. To do this, you need the Master Track editor and a tape with the music on one track and time code on another.

Anyone who has been in the unfortunate situation of losing a time code track, for example by accidentally erasing it, knows how time consuming it can be to restore it.

The procedure below lets you do both these things very easily:

1. **Start by striping the tape with fresh time code, if necessary. This code should start a few bars before the music and extend well after it.**

2. **Activate the Master Track by clicking on the Master button on the Transport bar.**

3. **Set up synchronisation to this time code, and verify it works as expected.** See the Synchronization chapter for details.

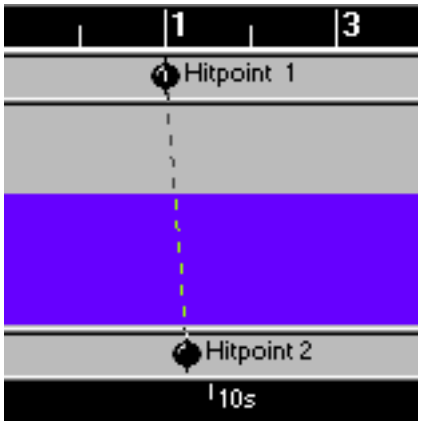
4. **Try to set an approximate initial tempo.**
   You can for example turn off sync, and guess at a tempo. Start the sequencer in time with the metronome turned on, and adjust roughly.

5. **In the Synchronization dialog, set a Songstart position approximately (for example) two bars before the music starts. Turn on sync again.**

6. **In the same dialog, to make the Time Ruler in Cubase VST display the actual time code on the tape, set the Time Display to the same value as the Songstart. Also set Bar Display to for example -2 (if the music starts two bars after the Songstart), so that position 1.1.0 in the Song is where the music will actually start.**

7. **Use MIDI to insert a Time Hit where the music starts. Verify its position by making it play back for example a drum sound via MIDI.**

8. **Draw a Meter Hit on Bar 1, and link it to the corresponding Time Hit.**



9. **Now select Straighten Up, and the tempo will get adjusted so that these two points line up.**
   If the tempo was changed too much, you might have to repeat the procedure. Note down the position of your Time Hit. Select a new Songstart and Time Display in the Sync dialog, and move the Time Hit accordingly. Then Straighten Up again.

10. **When the beginning of the Song is adjusted to taste, you can begin inserting Time Hits.**
    We suggest you use MIDI to input them, and start out with one or two Hits per Bar. Of course, the tighter you place the Hits, the tighter your sync will become, but editing will also be more difficult and each Straighten Up will take more time to perform.

11. **Use Fill to input Meter Hits at the same spacing as the Time Hits (set Snap to for example whole notes or half notes). Make sure the first Time Hit and the first Meter Hit indicate the same position in the song; for example, the first Time Hit should be where the downbeat of bar 1 is *on the tape* and the first Meter Hit should be on position 1.1.0 in Cubase VST.**

12. **Select Link One By One from pop-up Do menu.**

13. **Select Straighten Up from the pop-up Do menu .**
    Straightening Up might take some time.

14. **Play back the Song in sync with the tape.**

15. **If you don't like what you got, move the Time Hits around and try Straightening Up again.**

    Remember, Straighten Up only scales the tempo changes between two Hitpoints. If you need a gradual tempo change between two Hits, use the Line tool to create an accelerando or ritardando that can be scaled to fit.

Tempo Mapping "freely recorded" Music using Time Locked Tracks

The Master Track editor interacts with Cubase VST's Time Locked Tracks in a special and very useful way. If you change the tempo in the Master Track editor, notes on Time Locked Track will get moved, bar-wise, so as to make them still appear on the same time positions. You can use this to your advantage:

- **To "reposition" Events in music recorded without a metronome, so that they fit the meter positions in Cubase VST.**
- **To match music to for example sound effects or other audio Events that occur on fixed time positions, rather than meter positions.**

Observe this when working with Time Locked Tracks

Time Locked Tracks are described in general in their own chapter in this book. Please just observe the following points:

- The time it will take to recalculate Time Locked Tracks depends on the number of tempo changes in your Arrange window. When you work with the Master Track editor it is common to have very large amounts of Tempo Events. This will lead to noticeable recalculation times (sometimes *very* long) in two cases: when you adjust the Tempo curve and when you use Straighten Up.
- Try to avoid to edit a Part on a Time Locked Track in a MIDI editor, at the same time as you are changing the tempo in the Master Track editor. The reason is that if a tempo change happens to move an Event so that it winds up on a position before the *beginning* of its Part, this Event will be lost!

Working with Time based Events

If you already have Events on Time Locked Tracks which indicate important positions (Hits) in the music, you can use these as a basis for your tempo changes:

1. **Time Lock the Tracks that have Events which happen on "fixed" Time Positions.**

2. **Open a MIDI editor and select the Events you want to use as Hitpoints in the Master Track editor. Note down the position of the first of the selected Events.**

3. **Open the Master Track editor and set the Song Position to the position of the first Event you copied.**

4. **Select Paste. The Events are now Pasted in as Time Hits and can be used as a basis for Tempo Matching or Straighten Up, as described in the previous section.**

Repositioning "freely recorded" Music

Many musicians find it constraining to record in time with a metronome. With the Master Track editor you can record in "free time" and later adapt the recording to Cubase VST's meter positions:

1. **Turn off the Metronome and perform a recording.**
   If you plan to preserve the feeling in the recording, make sure you get a take that contains all the tempi just as you want them.

2. **For safety, make a copy of the Track and Mute it.**

3. **Open the recording for editing, for example in Key Edit. Select all Events and drag them so that the first Event winds up on position 1.1.0.**
   This assumes the Part begins on 1.1.0. If it doesn't you can either move the Part or use the Pencil in the Arrange window to adjust the beginning of it.

4. **Select a number of Events on easily defined meter positions.**
   For example if the piece contains a relatively simple bass line (mainly happening on quarter notes and eighth notes), select the notes in this bass line. If it is a more complex piece you might have to work a bit on the selection, or maybe only do a bit at a time. Try to not select notes that are more tightly spaced than quarter notes. (It probably isn't necessary and linking them will take more time.)

5. **If selecting notes in the actual recording doesn't work for you, you might try recording a special Track with a drum sound, where you simply tap the beat while listening to the recording. Then you can use this Track for reference instead of the notes in the actual recording.**

6. **When you have the selection right, copy the Events (using Copy on the Edit menu). Close the editor.**

7. **Open the Master Track editor. Position the Song Position on 1.1.0.**
   Pasting always happens at the Song Position!

8. **Paste.**
   All the notes will now appear as Time Hits.

9. **Use the Pencil to draw in Meter Hits on the musical positions that the Time Hits refer to.**

● Since the tempo is completely wrong at this point, the Meter ruler and the Time ruler will not match up at all. This might lead to some confusion at first. What you are supposed to do is to tell the program what meter positions the Pasted Time Hits refer to. If the bass for example played on straight quarter notes only, draw in one Meter Hit on each quarter note.

---

10. **When you are done and have one Meter Hit for each Time Hit, use Link One By One on the Pop-up Do menu to link all the Hitpoints together.**

11. Select Straighten Up, and when the dialog box appears, verify that it is OK to insert new Tempo Events.

12. Play back the Track and examine it in Key or Score Edit to check that everything actually has wound up as you intended.

When examining the recording in one of the editors, you will note that the Events have been moved to the correct musical (meter) positions. This allows you to use Cubase VST's different tools (such as quantizing) in a predictable way and to format the recording for printout in Score Edit. But, since a number of tempo changes have been created, the piece still plays back as it originally did.

If you are happy with the piece as it is now, you should possibly turn off Time Lock for the Track before you proceed with further editing (maybe you should make a copy first?).

If you want to hear how the piece plays back at a fixed tempo, simply turn off the Master Track. And if you like, you can continue to use the Master Track editor to edit the tempo further.

32

Matching Audio and Tempo

Introduction

This chapter describes Cubase VST's features for matching the tempo of the audio to the MIDI playback tempo and vice versa. These features are based on the Match Points described on page 249 in the Audio Editor chapter.

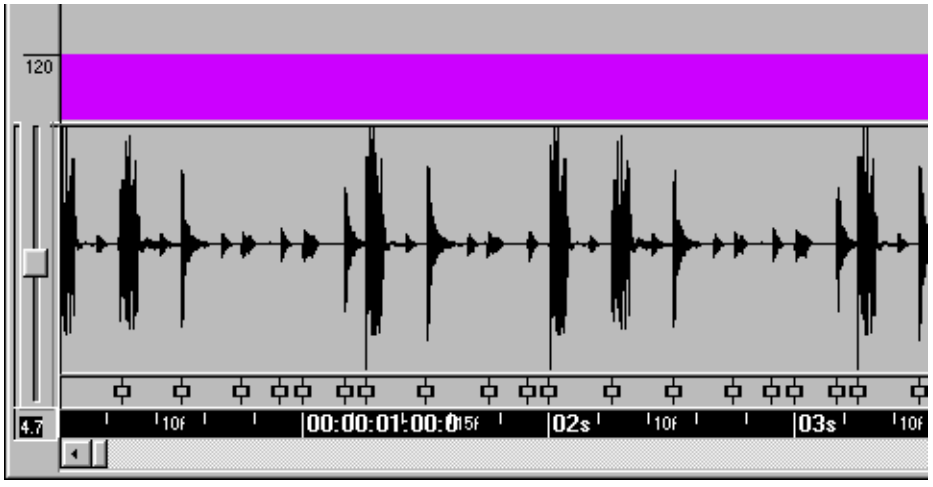
Having a reasonably good knowledge of the Mastertrack Graphic Editor will simplify working with Audio/Tempo matching. If you want to check up on details, see the Mastertrack and Hitpoints chapters.

Opening the Audio/Tempo Match Editor

This part is the same, whether you want to match the audio tempo to MIDI or vice versa:

1. **Select the Audio Event in the Audio Editor.**
   At this point, you may have created Match Points already (see the Audio Editor chapter), or you may do it in the Match Audio/Tempo editor as described on the following pages.

2. **Select the Event, pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Match Audio with Tempo...**
   The editor window opens.

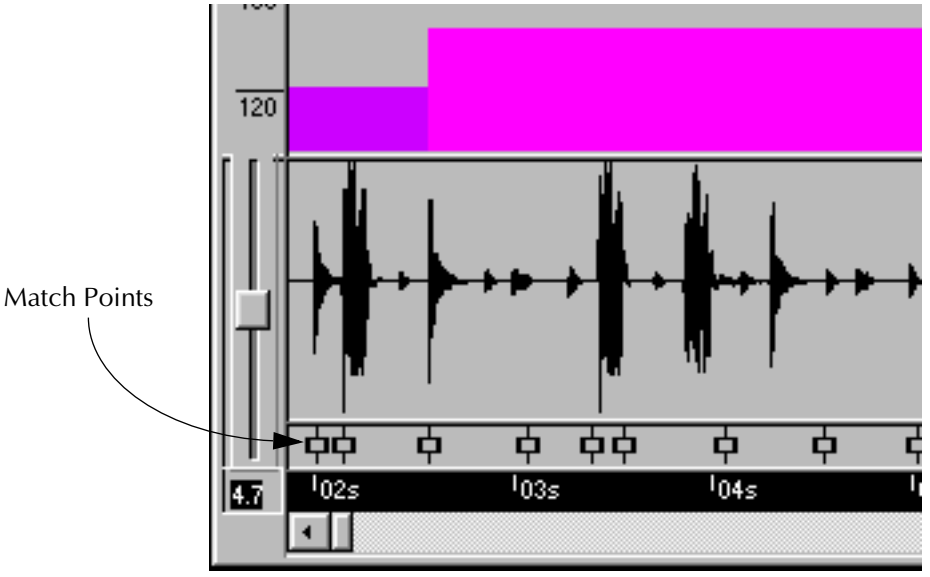


This window is very much like the Mastertrack Graphic Editor, but with four extra features:

- A waveform display directly below the graphic tempo display.
- Match Points are shown in the Time Hitpoint area.
- An additional fader in the lower left corner.
- An additional Audio pop-up menu.

Adding and Editing Match Points in the Editor

Match points, or M-Points, are “markers” within an Audio Event, used to indicate significant positions in your Audio file - often all “beats” in the recording. In this editor, the Match Points are shown in the area below the waveform, where Time Hitpoints usually are shown.



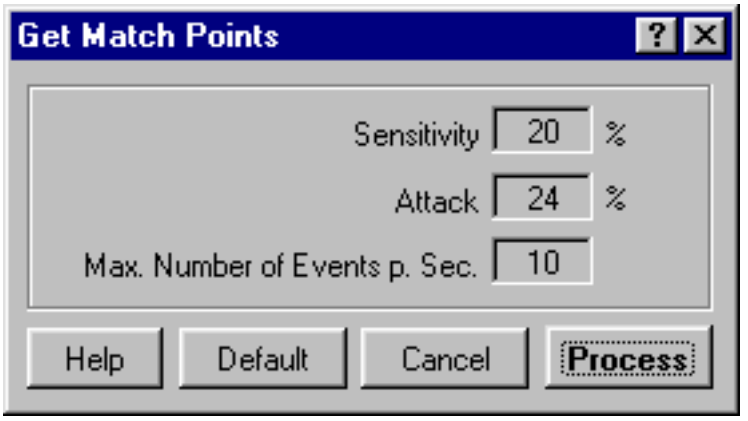
Creating Match Points

There is no actual “add M-Points” function in the Match Audio/Tempo editor. To create Match Points, you have the following options:

- Use the Get M-Points function.
- Duplicate other M-Points and move the duplicates to desired positions.
- Convert Time Hitpoints to M-Points.

The Get M-Points function

1. **Select the Get M-Points command on the Audio pop-up menu.**
   A dialog box opens. The parameters are explained in the table below.



Sensitivity	The higher the value, the more “sensitive” the detection algorithm, and the more Match Points will be created.
Attack	Try experimenting with this parameter when you are working with “non-percussive” recordings.
Max. Number of Events per Sec.	The maximum allowed number of Match Points per second of audio.

- **If you don’t want to experiment with different settings, click the Default Settings button.**

2. **When you have made the desired settings, click on Process.**
   The program scans the audio and inserts Match Points.

Manual Adding and Editing of M-Points

As already mentioned, there is no actual “add M-Points” function in the Match Audio/Tempo editor, and you cannot draw in M-Points like you can in the Audio editor. Instead you can do the following:

Duplicate an existing Match Point

1. **Click on a Match Point to select it.**

2. **Set Snap to a suitable value.**
   Since you will most likely want to be able to place the Match Point anywhere in the waveform, “Off” might be a good choice for Snap.

3. **Hold down [Alt] on the computer keyboard and press the mouse button.**
   A dotted outline is shown around the Match Point.

4. **Drag the outline to where you want the new Match Point and release the mouse button.**
   A duplicate of the Match Point is created and placed where you indicated. You may move it later.

Add a Time Hitpoint and convert it

1. **Set Snap to a suitable value.**
   Since you will most likely want to be able to place the Match Point anywhere in the waveform, “Off” might be a good choice for Snap.

2. **Select the Pencil tool and click in the Time Hitpoint area.**
   A new Time Hitpoint is created (see the Hitpoints chapter in the main Cubase manual).

3. **Select the Hitpoint with the Arrow tool.**

4. **Pull down the Audio pop-up menu and select Hitpoint to M-Point.**
   The selected Time Hitpoint is converted to a Match Point, which you later can move to another position if you like.

Moving Match Points

Match Points can be moved by clicking on them and dragging to the left or right. Remember that the Snap value affects to which positions you can move the Match Point (in most cases it will be best to turn Snap off when you move Match Points).

If you want to move a Match Point to a certain position in the audio, you can use the following method for better accuracy:

1. **Press the mouse button with the pointer positioned on the Match Point.**

2. **Move the pointer to the position *in the waveform* where you want the Match Point to appear.**
   Since you can "aim" directly in the waveform display, it is easier to find the correct position than when you drag the Match Point in the strip below the waveform display.

3. **Release the mouse button.**
   The Match Point is moved to the selected position. This function can also be used with Hitpoints.

Deleting Match Points

There are two principal ways to delete Match Points in the Audio Match Editor:

- **Click on the Match Point with the Eraser tool.**

  or

- **Select the Match Point(s) and press [Backspace] on the computer keyboard.**

Existing Match Points are automatically deleted when you create a new set with the Get M-Points function.

Cut, Copy and Paste

You can use these features on Match Points, as you can on other items in Cubase VST. When you Paste, Match Points are Pasted in beginning at the Song Position.

Making the Playback Tempo follow the Audio

There are two ways to do this:

- **Use Hitpoint Match mode to find the closest tempo match, and insert *one* tempo change at the beginning of the Event.**
  This may be sufficient if you're working with rather short Events and audio with a fairly steady tempo. The method is described below, under the heading Fixed Tempo Match.

- **Use Hitpoint Link mode and Straighten Up to make a tempo map.**
  This means that tempo changes are inserted at several places in your Event. This method works with long Events and audio with fluctuating tempo. It is described on the following pages under the heading Creating a Tempo Map.

Fixed Tempo Match

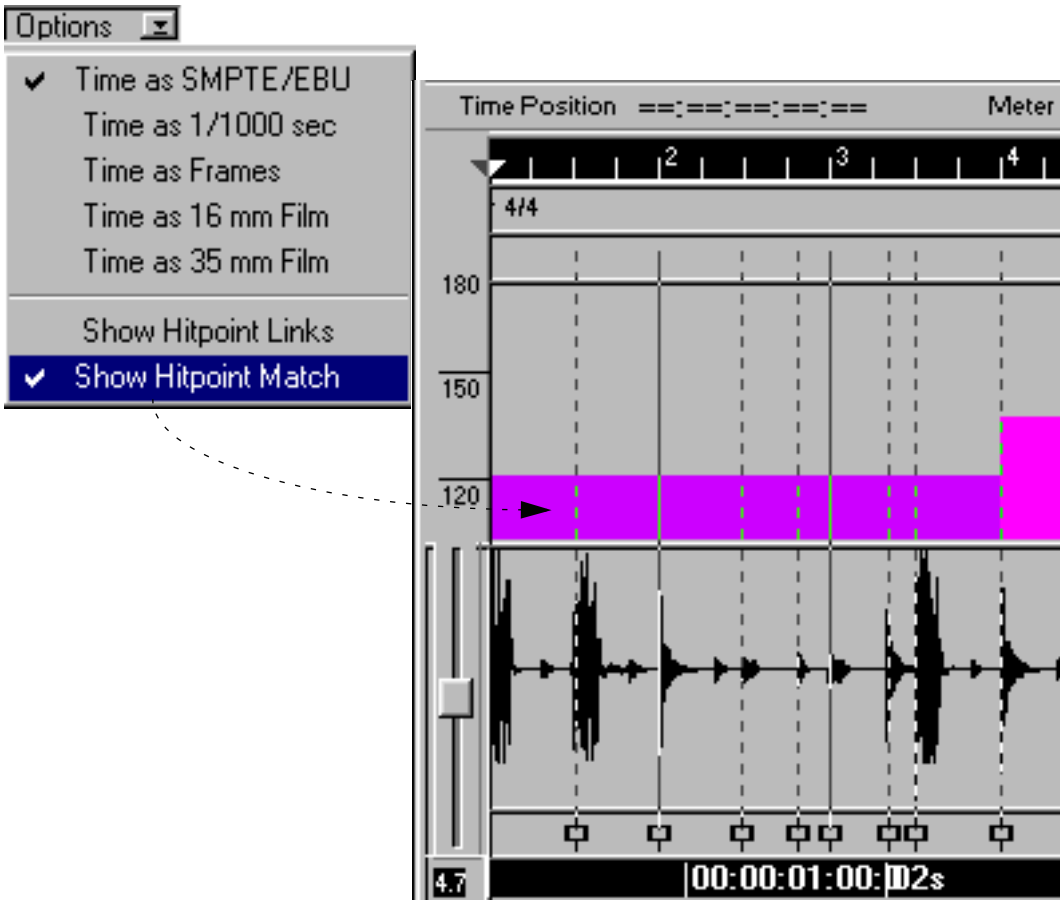
For this to work, the audio should have a fairly steady beat, and the Match Points should be evenly distributed, for example on the quarter notes. However, it is sufficient if Match Points are inserted in the first two or three bars of the Event (i.e. they can be seen in the editor window at the same time).

1. **Activate Master on the Transport Bar.**

2. **At the beginning of the Audio Event, insert a tempo change with a value roughly the same as the tempo of the recording.**

3. **Set Snap to the note value that separates the Match Points.**
   In our example, this would be 4 (quarter note).

4. **Pull down the Options pop-up menu and select Show Hitpoints Match.**

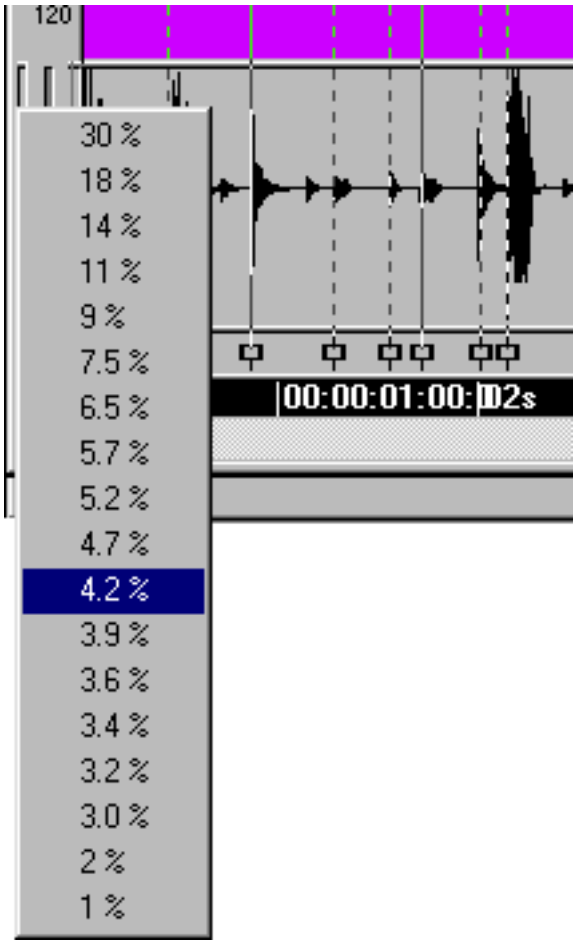


This will display vertical lines rising from the Match Points. If the position of the Match Points coincide with the Snap value, the lines will be fully drawn; if the Match Points are "off" the Snap value, the lines will be dotted (see the Hitpoints chapter in the main Cubase manual).

5. **Set the Tolerance pop-up to a fairly high percentage.**
   The higher the Tolerance percentage, the more "off" the Match Points are allowed to be and still be considered Matching.

   Now, the object is to find a tempo where as many as possible of the M-Points are matching (shown with fully drawn vertical lines). This is done either by changing the tempo in the graphic tempo display (as described in the "Hitpoints" chapter in the main Cubase manual), or by using the slider to the left to *visually stretch* the waveform in the window, and then letting the program automatically calculate the tempo. The steps below describe the latter alternative:

6. **Select a Stretch percentage range from the pop-up below the slider.**
   This determines the maximum stretch range with the slider. If you for example select 4.2%, you may visually stretch the waveform ± 4.2%, with zero stretch in the slider's middle position.



7. Move the slider and try to find the position where as many as possible of the vertical lines are fully drawn (matching).
To reset the slider to middle position (zero stretch), hold down [Control] and click anywhere on the slider.

● As you move the slider, you will note that the waveform image is stretched (slider above middle position) or contracted (slider below middle position). This is only a visual help for you, to make it easier to find a match, and does not affect the actual Audio Event!

---

8. When you have found the best possible match, pull down the Audio pop-up menu and select Slider to Tempo.
The program will calculate a tempo based on the slider setting.

- If there already is a Tempo Event at the beginning of the Audio Event, this Tempo Event simply gets the calculated Tempo value.
- If there is no Tempo Event at the beginning of the Audio Event, one is created, and gets the calculated Tempo value.
- If there are several Tempo Events within the duration of the Audio Event, (e.g. a ritardando), these are all affected relatively - the tempo is “scaled” according to the calculated value.

9. When you’re done, press [Return] to close the editor.

When you play back the Song, the tempo will match the tempo of the audio.

Creating a Tempo Map

For this to work, Match Points should be inserted throughout the whole Event, and preferably evenly distributed, for example on every quarter note. It is possible to create a tempo map for an Audio Event with a lot of "syncopated" Match Points, but this will require you to insert and move Meter Hitpoints by hand (see step 6 below).

1. **Activate Master on the Transport Bar.**

2. **At the beginning of the Audio Event, insert a tempo change with a value roughly the same as the tempo of the recording.**
   This will make it easier for you to see if the links are correct (see step 8 below).

3. **Set Snap to the note value that separates the Match Points.**
   In our example, this would be 4 (quarter note).

4. **Set the Left and Right Locators so that they encompass the Event.**

5. **Select Fill Meter Hitpoints from the Do pop-up menu.**
   Meter Hitpoints are inserted in the area above the tempo curve.

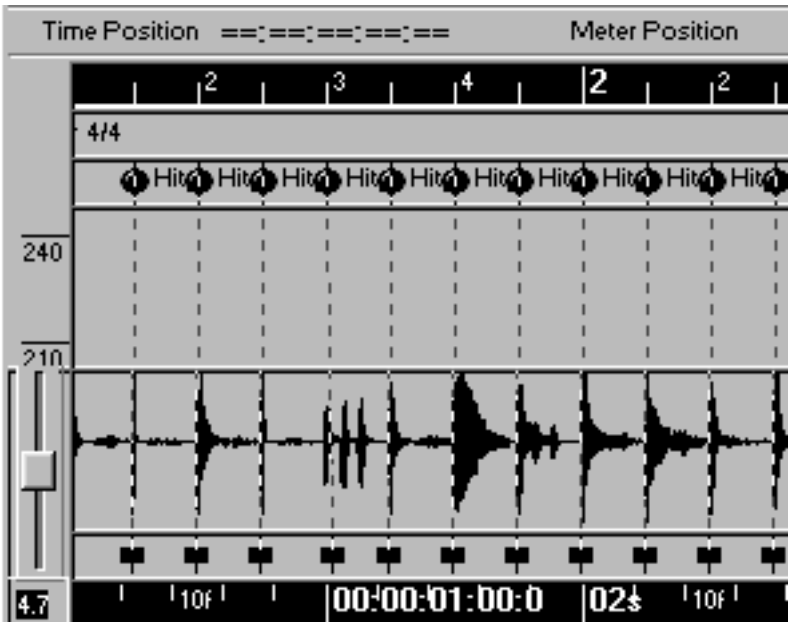
6. **If your Audio Event contains Match points that are not positioned on quarter notes (or whatever Snap value you have chosen), you need to insert Meter Hitpoints on the corresponding places as well.**
   Also, it for some quarter notes in your Audio Event, there are no Match Points (for example in long breaks, pauses, etc), you have to delete the Meter Hitpoints on the corresponding positions.
   This is because you will later perform a "link one by one", where each Match Point is linked to exactly one Meter Hitpoint. If there is a Hitpoint or a Match Point "missing", the wrong Match Points will be linked to the wrong Hitpoints.

- It is perfectly possible not to use the "Link One by One" function, and instead link the Hitpoints to the Matchpoints "by hand" as described in the Hitpoints chapter in the main Cubase manual. If you choose to do this, the number of Hitpoints does not have to be the same as the number of Match Points.

---

7. **Pull down the Option pop-up menu and select Show Hitpoint Links.**

8. **Pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Link One by One.**
   Now, the program attempts to link each of the Meter Hitpoints to a Match Point, starting from the first one.



If everything is OK, you should get a number of roughly vertical lines (if you made a good estimation of the audio tempo in step 2 above). If the angle of the lines changes abruptly from one line to the next, this indicates that there are dramatic tempo changes in the audio. If you know that there are no such tempo changes in the audio, the links are not correct and you need to insert or delete Meter Hitpoints. Repeat steps 6 to 8 until the links seem OK.

9. Pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Straighten Up.
The program creates a tempo map, i.e. inserts tempo changes into the Master Track, to make the playback tempo continuously change to fit the audio tempo.

Making the Audio Follow the Tempo

This means changing the length of the audio file, to make it fit the playback tempo. One reason to do this (instead of matching the tempo to the audio) might be that your Song contains other audio files that already match the tempo, or that you simply are perfectly satisfied with the playback tempo you have.

There are two ways to match the audio to the tempo:

- **Use Hitpoint Match mode to find the closest time stretch match, and tell the program to time stretch *the whole Event* by one fixed stretch factor.**
  This may be sufficient if you are working with rather short Events and audio with a fairly steady tempo. The method is described below, under the heading Fixed Time Stretch.

- **Use Hitpoint Link mode and tell the program to quantize the audio Event.**
  This means that the Match Points in the audio are quantized (moved to coincide with the Meter Hitpoints) and the audio material between the Match Points are stretched/contracted accordingly. This method works with long Events and audio with fluctuating tempo. It is described on the following pages under the heading Quantizing Audio.

Fixed Time Stretch

For this to work, the audio should have a fairly steady beat, and the Match Points should be evenly distributed, for example on the quarter notes. However, it is sufficient if Match Points are inserted in the first two or three bars of the Event (i.e. they can be seen in the editor window at the same time).

1. **Activate Master on the Transport Bar.**

2. **Set Snap to the note value that separates the Match Points.**
   In our example, this would be 4 (quarter note).

3. **Pull down the Options pop-up menu and select Show Hitpoints Match.**
   This will display vertical lines rising from the Match Points. If the position of the Match Points coincide with the Snap value, the lines will be fully drawn; if the Match Points are "off" the Snap value, the lines will be dotted (see the Hitpoints chapter in the main Cubase manual).

4. **Set the Tolerance pop-up to a fairly high percentage.**
   The higher the Tolerance percentage, the more "off" the Match Points are allowed to be and still be considered Matching.

   Now, the object is to find a stretch factor for the audio where as many as possible of the M-Points are matching (shown with fully drawn vertical lines). This is done by *visually stretching* the waveform in the window, using the slider to the left.

5. **Select a Stretch percentage range from the pop-up below the slider.**
   This determines the maximum stretch range with the slider. If you for example select 4.2%, you may visually stretch the waveform ± 4.2%, with zero stretch in the slider's middle position.

6. **Move the slider and try to find the position where as many as possible of the vertical lines are fully drawn (matching).**
   To reset the slider to middle position (zero stretch), hold down [Command] and click anywhere on the slider.

● As you move the slider, you will note that the waveform image is stretched (slider above middle position) or contracted (slider below middle position). This is only a visual help for you, to make it easier to find a match, and does not affect the actual Audio Event at this stage.

---

7. **When you have found the best possible match, pull down the Audio pop-up menu and select Slider to Time Stretch.**
   This instructs the program to process the Audio Event using the Stretch factor set with the slider.

8. **When this is done, your Audio Event will play a new segment, time stretched to fit the playback tempo.**

Quantizing Audio

● This text describes advanced audio quantizing of any type, Groove, Iterative etc. If all you want is quantizing to a certain note value, see page 259.

For this to work, Match Points should be inserted through the whole Event, and preferably evenly distributed, for example on every quarter note. It is possible to create a tempo map for an Audio Event with a lot of "syncopated" Match Points, but this will require you to insert and move Meter Hitpoints by hand (see step 5 below).

● Do not put Match Points too close! This might give rise to large stretchfactors when quantizing, which in turn may produce a result that is not musically desirable.

---

1. **Activate Master on the Transport Bar.**

2. **Set Snap to the note value that separates the Match Points.**
   In our example, this would be 4 (quarter note).

3. **Set the Left and Right Locators so that they encompass the Event.**

4. **Select Fill Meter Hitpoints from the Do pop-up menu.**
   Meter Hitpoints are inserted in the area above the tempo curve, spaced according to the Snap setting.

5. **If your Audio Event contains Match points that are not positioned on quarter notes (or whatever Snap value you have chosen), you need to insert Meter Hitpoints on the corresponding places as well.**
   Also, it for some quarter notes in your Audio Event, there are no Match Points (for example in long breaks, pauses, etc), you have to delete the Meter Hitpoints on the corresponding positions.
   This is because you will later perform a "link one by one", where each Match Point is linked to exactly one Meter Hitpoint. If there is a Hitpoint or a Match Point "missing", the wrong Match Points will be linked to the wrong Hitpoints.

- It is perfectly possible not to use the "Link One by One" function, and instead link the Hitpoints to the Matchpoints "by hand" as described in the Hitpoints chapter in the main Cubase manual. If you choose to do this, the number of Hitpoints does not have to be the same as the number of Match Points.

---

6. **Pull down the Option pop-up menu and select Show Hitpoint Links.**

7. **Pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Link One by One.**
   Now, the program attempts to link each of the Meter Hitpoints to a Match Point, starting from the first one. If everything is OK, you should get a number of roughly vertical lines (if you made a good estimation of the audio tempo in step 2 above). If the angle of the lines changes abruptly from one line to the next, this indicates that there are dramatic tempo changes in the audio. If there are no such changes in the audio, the links are not correct and you need to insert or delete Meter Hitpoints. Repeat steps 5 to 7 until the links seem OK.

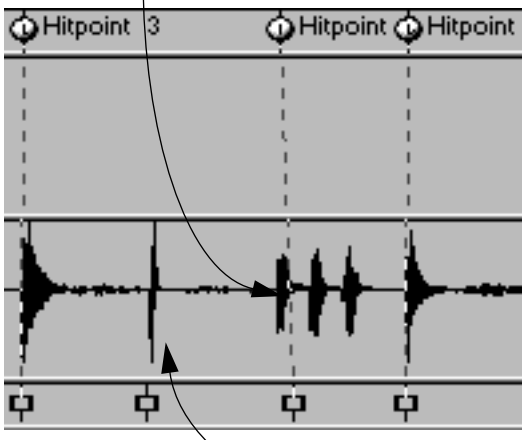
8. **Pull down the Audio pop-up menu and select Quantize Audio.**
   This instructs the program to move each M-Point in the Audio Event to the position of the corresponding Meter Hitpoint, and timestretch the material in between.

9. **When this is done, your Audio Event will play a new segment, processed to fit the playback tempo.**

If your Audio Event is partly right in Timing

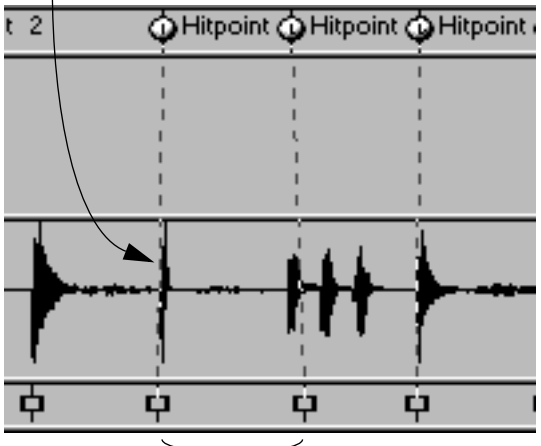
If some parts of the Audio are in timing but some are not, a special situation arises. For example, let's look at a drum loop where one beat is "off" but the rest is correct. When you now use Quantize Audio to put the faulty section right again, you must be careful to not also accidentally move parts of the correctly timed audio:

Here, the beat in the middle is played too early (note that the link line is dotted). If you perform a Quantize Audio with these three links, the faulty beat will be moved to a correct position.



But, Cubase VST will also stretch the audio to the left of the faulty beat (to fill up the gap when the beat is moved to the right). In our example, this will mean that this correctly timed beat is moved to the right, and will be out of timing!

In this example, the correct beat closest to the left of the faulty one is linked instead.



When you Quantize Audio, this section will be stretched. But since there are no actual beats within the section, this will not affect the rhythmic "feel" of the audio.

The essence of this is:

- Always put one Match Point before and one after the sections you want to quantize, at the nearest beats (or other musical "events") that are in timing, and "straight-line" link both these Match Points to meter hitpoints!

It may seem that an easy way to avoid the problem above would be to simply draw two Match Points immediately before and after the faulty beat, and very close to it, so that no important, correctly timed audio was affected. This is not a good idea! Putting Match Points too close might give rise to very large stretch factors when quantizing, which in turn may produce a result that is not audibly desirable.

Creating a Groove template

With this feature, an audio file is used as a source for a new groove template. The template is added to the Groove Quantize submenu, and can be used with any MIDI material.

1. **Pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Get M-Points.**
   The Get Match Points dialog appears (see page 433).

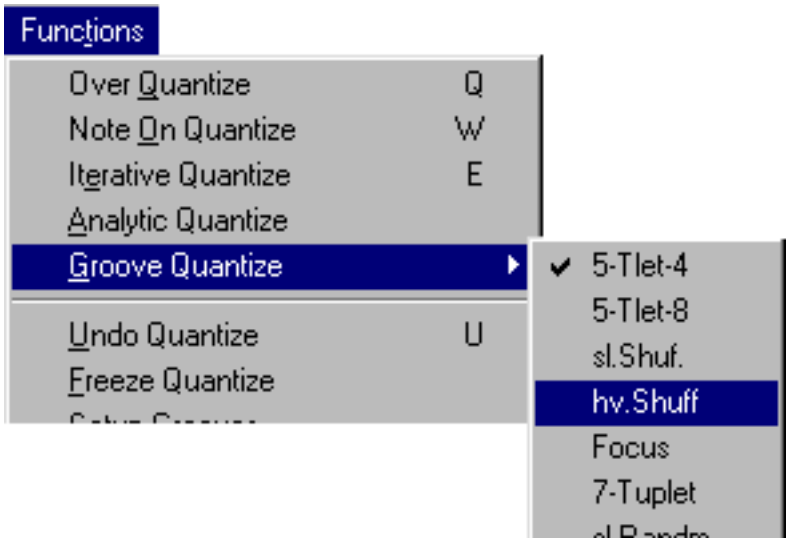
2. **Experiment with the settings in the Get Match Points dialog until you get a sufficient amount of Match Points in your Audio Event.**
   If possible, try to get Match Points on the sixteenth notes.

- The Get M-Points function removes all existing Match Points in the Event, before it creates new ones.

---

3. **If you want to adjust the velocity values of the individual Match Points, you have to exit to the Audio editor.**
   You change velocity values by holding down [Shift] and dragging the black squares on the Match Points up or down. When you drag, the current velocity value is displayed numerically beside the Match Point.

4. **In the Match Audio/Tempo editor, pull down the Audio pop-up menu and select M-Points to Groove.**
   Cubase VST creates a Groove Template with the name of the audio file, and puts it in the Groove Quantize submenu. For information on how to use the Groove Templates, see the main Cubase manual.



Using Snip at M-points

This function (found on the Do pop-up menu in the Audio editor) allows you to take a rhythmic piece of audio (for example a drum loop) and make it play back faster, without raising the pitch or performing any actual time correction. The trick is to split the Audio Event at each single “beat”. The new Events that are created by the operation, will each start playback at a specific meter position in the Song, so if you raise the playback tempo, the tempo of the audio will seem to follow! Proceed like this:

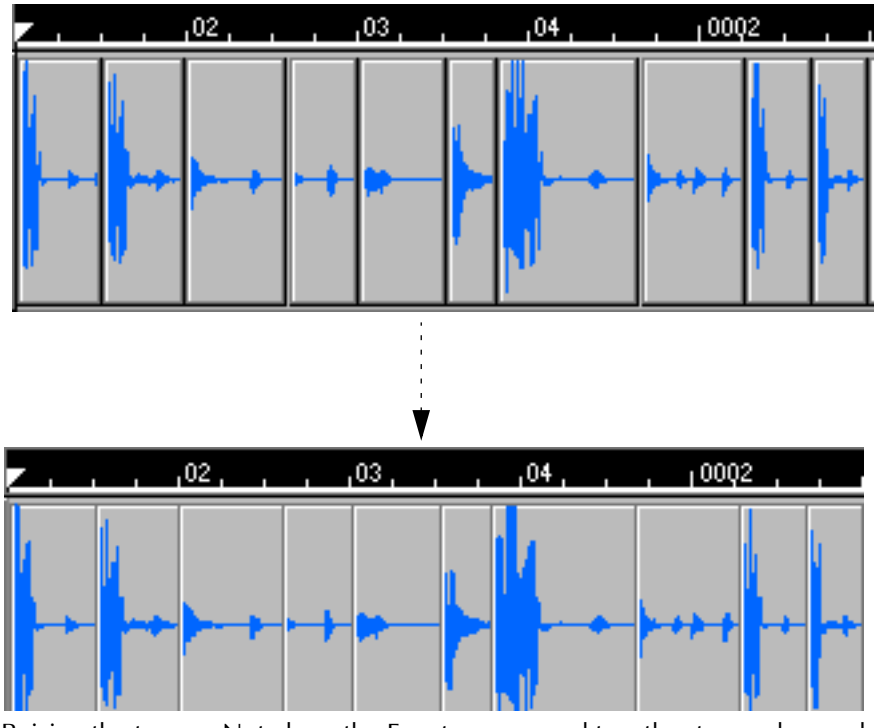
1. **Select the Event in the Audio editor.**

2. **Create Match Points and see to it that they are positioned on each single rhythmic “building block” (e.g. drum beats) in the Audio Event.**
   You may use the Get M-Points function, and/or add M-Points manually.

3. **Pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Snip at M-Points.**
   The Event is split at each Match Point.

4. **Select all the Events, pull down the Do pop-up menu and select Group.**
   We recommend you to do this, since if you don’t, you will find it hard to move or copy the entire piece of audio without losing the timing.

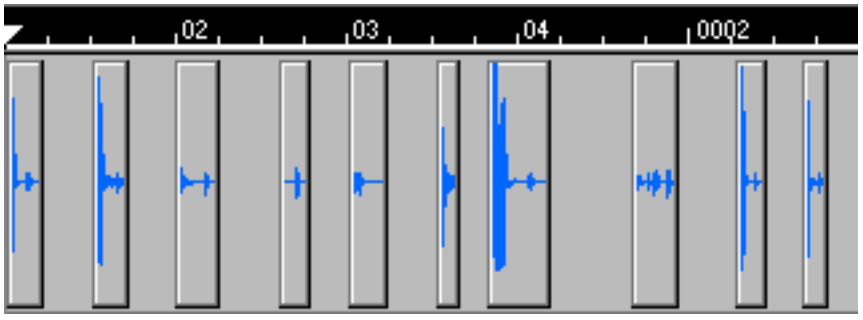
5. **Try activating playback and raising the tempo.**
   Even though this will make each Event start playing before the previous has ended, it will not cause the two sounds to mix. This is simply because only one Event at a time can play on the same audio channel!



Raising the tempo. Note how the Events are moved together to overlap each other.

Why not lower the Tempo as well?

Of course you can lower the tempo with this function. The individual Events will start at the correct positions, giving the impression of a lower tempo in the audio. But since the length of the Events doesn't change when you lower the Tempo, there will be "empty space" between the Events, which in most cases will sound strange (see the figure below). Therefore, we cannot recommend lowering the tempo other than as a special effect.



The effect of dramatically lowering the tempo.

33

Time Locked Tracks

What are Time Locked Tracks?

Events on Time Locked Tracks are fixed in time. This means that even if you change the tempo, the Events will stay at the same position, time-wise. For example, an Event that played back ten seconds in from the beginning of the Song will still play back ten seconds in from the beginning, even if the tempo is doubled.

Time locked Tracks can be used for example when you work with audio locked to film or video and mix sound effects with music in one Arrange window. Time Locked Tracks can also be used to create music with multiple tempi.

Time Locking a Track

1. **As a first step, we recommend you to duplicate the entire Track.**
   This allows you to go back to the original meter based positions later.

2. **Click in the "T" column of the Track.**
   A lock symbol appears, indicating that the Track is Time Locked.

3. **Click on the Master Button on the Transport Bar, to make the settings in the Master Track govern the tempo.**

● The Master Track must be activated for the Time Locking to have any effect on your recordings. For information about the Master Track, see the chapter "The Master Track".

Changing the Tempo

- If you change the tempo by editing the Master Track, the positions of Events on time locked Tracks are recalculated, so that they stay on the same *time* position. When you examine these Tracks in for example Key Edit, the Events will appear to have moved, *meter-wise*.
- When you change the tempo, the Parts are also lengthened and shortened bar-wise, as needed to accommodate the Events. The Events' positions are also recalculated when you move the Part.
- If you have a lot of Tempo changes and a lot of Events in the Time locked Tracks, moving parts, inserting new tempi or changing existing ones may lead to noticeable recalculation times.

Turning Time Lock On and Off

A Track can at any time be switched in and out of Time lock mode. But when you switch a Track out of time locked mode the Events will of course stay at their current *time* position. This means that if you have made any tempo changes since you Time Locked the Tracks, the Events on those Tracks will not be at "sensible" meter positions when you turn off Time Lock.

Editing Time Locked Tracks

When editing Time Locked Tracks, please observe the following:

- **When moving Parts on Time Locked Tracks, set the Snap value to Off.**
  This is since Time Locked Tracks are not related to Meter Position the way usual Tracks and the Snap value are.

- **Remember that you can click the Mouse box to make the Mouse position and the Bar Display switch to show time code values instead of bars and beats.**
  The same applies in the MIDI editors.

- **The Song Position can be always used as a converter between bar and time positions at the current tempo.**
  If you for example know the time and need the bar position, input the bar beat and tick in the Song Position box and read back the time value in the Time Position box (and vice versa).

Creating Multiple Tempi

When scoring for film and video it is not unusual to need a piece fading over into the next which is played in another tempo. Here are the necessary steps, in brief.

1. **Finish the first piece, the one that the Song begins with.**

2. **Time lock the existing Tracks.**

3. **Insert a tempo change where the new piece begins, even if this is before the end of the last.**
   The previous piece will then not be affected by the new tempo.

4. **Create new Tracks for the second piece and record it.**

Things To Note

- **When you time lock a Track with Ghost Parts, they are automatically converted into real Parts.**
- **Group Tracks and Tape Tracks can not be Time Locked.**

34

Synchronization

Introduction

Synchronizing is when you make two pieces of equipment agree on time or tempo. You can establish synchronization between Cubase VST and a number of other types of devices, including tape recorders and video decks, but also other MIDI devices that “play back”, such as other sequencers, drum machines, “workstation sequencers” etc.

The two types of Sync Signals

Basically there are two types of synchronization signals:

Sync To Time Code (SMPTE, EBU, MTC, VITC)

Time Code appears in a number of guises. No matter which “format” it has, it always supplies a “clock on the wall” type of synchronization, that is it a synchronization related to hours, minutes, seconds and two smaller units called “frames” and “sub-frames”.

Sync To MIDI Clock

MIDI Clock is a tempo based type of synchronization signal, that is it is related to the number of “beats per minute”.

Cubase VST has full support for both Time Code and MIDI Clock.

Cubase VST – Master Or Slave?

When you set up a synchronization system you must decide which unit is the *master*. All other devices are then *slaved* to this unit, which means they will adjust their playback speed to the master's.

Cubase VST as a Slave

When a synchronization signal is coming in to Cubase VST, from another device (such as a tape recorder, a disk based recording system, a drum machine, another sequencer etc), this device is the master and Cubase VST is the slave. Cubase VST will adjust its playback to the other device.

Cubase VST as a Master

When you set up Cubase VST to transmit synchronization signals to other devices, Cubase VST is the master and the other devices are the slaves; they will adjust their playback to Cubase VST.

Cubase VST – Both Master and Slave

Cubase VST is a very capable synchronizing device. It can operate as both a master and a slave at the same time. For example, Cubase VST might be slaved to a tape recorder transmitting time code, while at the same time transmitting MIDI Clock to a drum machine, acting as a master for that.

Synchronization and audio playback

Synchronizing digital audio material with the “real world” raises many issues which are not immediately apparent when using MIDI only systems. This is a big subject, and we will only be able to touch upon it here.

● Please note that Cubase VST makes use of special Synchronization functionality in the respective ASIO drivers. Exactly what is possible depends on which audio card you are using.

Avoid MIDI Clock!

With Cubase VST, you should sync the program to time code (SMPTE or MIDI Time Code), *not* MIDI Clock. MIDI Clock is a tempo dependent synchronization with low resolution, not really suitable for professional audio applications.

If you can – Use Cubase VST as a Master

To avoid drift between audio and MIDI we recommend you to not synchronize Cubase VST externally at all when using audio, if possible. However, you might very well use Cubase VST as a “master” for other systems. Using MIDI Time Code or MIDI Clock generated by Cubase VST (for transmission to other devices) will ensure sync with the audio.

Audio and External Synchronization

How Timing is handled in a non-synced system

Let’s first look at the situation where Cubase VST is not synchronized to any external source.

Any digital playback system has an internal clock that ultimately affects the playback speed and stability, and PC audio hardware is no exception. This clock is *extremely* stable.

Normally, you will have the MIDI Sync Reference setting in the Audio System dialog set to “Audio Clock”. This means that when Cubase VST plays back, the MIDI part of the program is internally synchronized to the digital audio to ensure synchronization between digital audio and MIDI.

Synchronizing Cubase VST’s playback

Let’s assume now that we use external synchronization, with Cubase VST, for example, we might synchronize playback to a tape recorder, using time code.

Time code coming from an analog tape recorder will always vary slightly in speed. Different time code generators and different tape recorders will also supply time code with slight differences in speed. In addition, the shuttling of tape mechanisms due to overdubs and re-recordings can cause the physical tape to wear and stretch, which affects the speed of the time code.

If you now set the MIDI Sync Reference setting in the Audio System dialog to Time Code, and Cubase VST receives time code, it will vary its overall playback speed (the “song position speed”) to compensate for such fluctuations in the speed of the time code, that’s the whole purpose of synchronization.

What happens with the Digital Audio?

The fact that Cubase VST’s playback is synchronized to the time code does not affect the playback of the digital audio. It still relies on the perfectly stable, built-in clock in the audio hardware.

As you may understand by now, problems will appear when the perfectly stable digital audio gets related to the slightly varying speed of a system synchronized to time code.

The playback timing of each segment will *not* be in total accordance with the tape or the MIDI playback, since the playback speed of the audio is determined by the digital audio hardware’s built-in clock.

So, what can I do about it?

There are generally two methods that solve the problem, and a few others that minimize the problem to an acceptable level without actually solving it.

Resolving

The first – and best – solution is to use one external clock for all components in the system. One master clock is used to derive whatever type of clock signal each component in the system needs. For example, something called a house clock can be used to generate sample rate clocks for the digital audio hardware and time code for Cubase VST. This ensures all components in the system use the same reference source for their timing.

Synchronizing digital audio to external clocks running at sample rate is often called “resolving” or “synchronizing to word clock”.

However this option is not available on standard PC audio cards. It might be possible to do on more advanced audio hardware, but even then it requires additional, fairly expensive synchronizing hardware.

Continuous Resynchronization

Some systems use digital signal processing techniques to simulate variations in playback speed. In a typical such situation you feed the digital audio hardware time code (or MIDI Time Code) and it uses this to calculate in what way it should adjust the playback speed to stay in sync with the time code (and hence with Cubase VST). This method is often called “continuous resync”.

Cubase VST Solutions

The third solution is offered by Cubase VST, and comprises a set of tools and strategies to minimise the problems without the need of additional hardware, and without compromising audio quality. These solutions are described in the following paragraphs:

Chose your Audio Timing Reference

In the System dialog there are two settings the are related to sync (see page 364):

- The MIDI Sync Reference allows you to decide whether Cubase VST's playback (and hence the MIDI) should slave to the external time code or to the audio hardware.
- The Audio Clock Source setting is for those with advanced audio hardware that supports resolving via external word clock signals. It allows you to clock the audio card from an external source.

Always use the Same Sync Source!

Throughout a project, use the same synchronization source for all audio recording and editing. If you plan to sync Cubase VST to for example a tape recorder, make sure you are synchronized to that tape recorder at all times!

Use Generate SMPTE

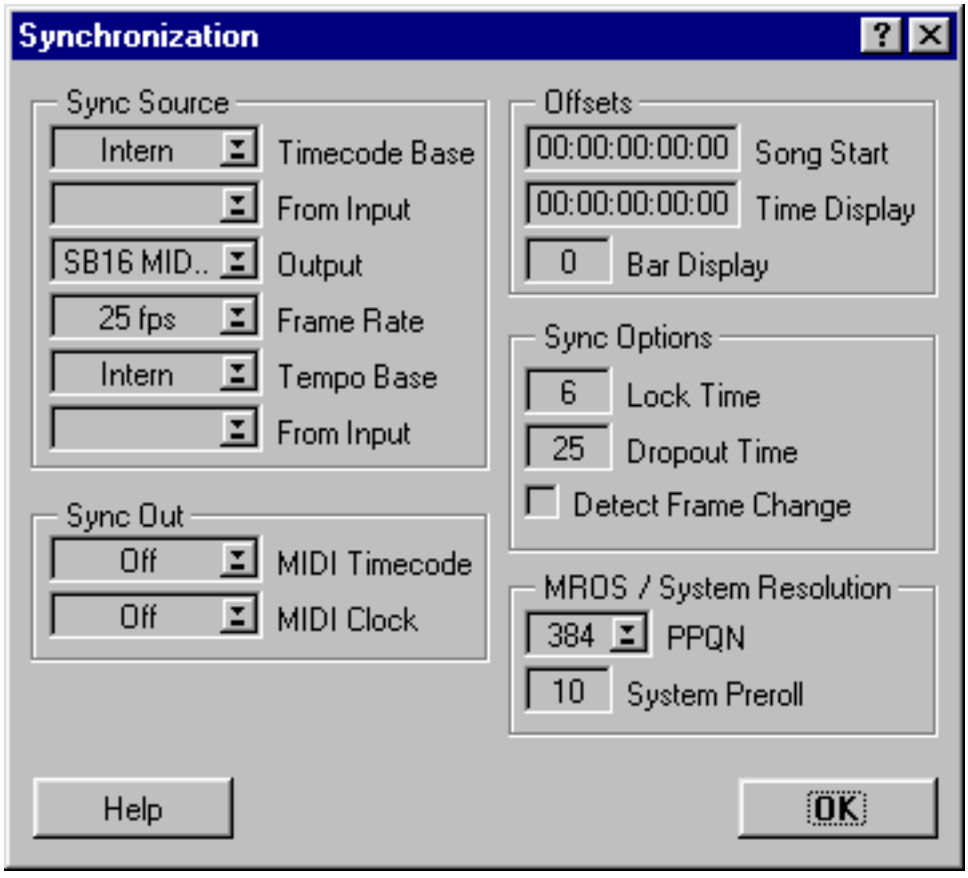
The Generate SMPTE command on the Audio menu allows Cubase VST to create a synthesised audio file containing ”perfect” SMPTE code.

Once you have created the audio files that simulates a time code recording, you can stripe the tape you intend to synchronize your work to, with this code. The idea is that since this time code is generated at exactly the same speed as your digital audio hardware uses, it will make the MIDI playback play back in “perfect” sync with the digital audio.

We highly recommend using this feature to generate the time code before commencing any synchronized work with Cubase VST.

The code is generated ”off-line” and is created very quickly. When finished, you can simply throw the file away or perhaps store it on a stable medium – such as DAT tape – for later use.

The Synchronization Dialog Box



This dialog box is used for setting up everything that has to do with Cubase VST's synchronization to other units. You reach it from the Options menu.

Once you have the settings in the dialog box right, you activate sync as such by clicking on the Sync button on the Transport bar or by pressing [X] on the computer keyboard. When the Sync button is activated, Cubase VST will automatically start when it receives a proper synchronization signal.

Internal Sync - No External Synchronization used

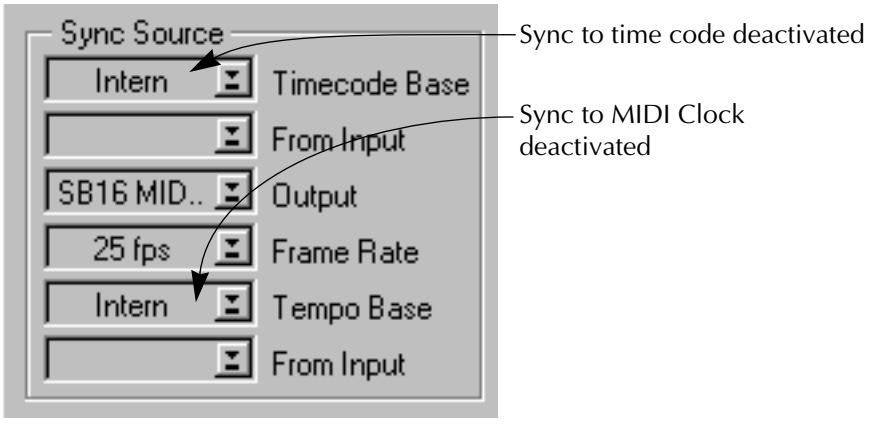
When no external synchronization source is used at all, it actually doesn't matter what settings you have made in the Synchronization dialog box, as long as the Sync button on the Transport Bar is deactivated.

Sync deactivated on the Transport Bar.

However, there are situations where you might want to make sure that Cubase VST is definitely not synchronized to any source, even if you (accidentally) activate Sync on the Transport Bar. Proceed as follows:

1. **In the Synchronization dialog box (reached from the Options menu), set Timecode Base to Intern.**

2. **Set Tempo Base to Intern.**



3. **Close the Synchronization dialog.**

Synchronizing Cubase VST to MIDI Time Code (MTC)

You might have a device which transmits time code in a MIDI cable – MIDI Time Code (MTC).There are several types of devices that does just this:

- MIDI interfaces with built synchronization capabilities.
- Time Code (SMPTE) to MIDI Time Code converters.
- VITC (Vertical Interval Time Code, used in video editing systems) to MTC converters.
- MIDI devices (like other sequencers or disk based recording systems) which generate MIDI Time Code.

In this type of setup, synchronization happens as follows:

- Cubase VST is synchronized to the time code. In other words, the device transmitting the time code (for example the video deck or hard disk recording system) is the *master* and Cubase VST is the *slave*).
- The time code synchronization signals do not control Cubase VST's tempo directly. Instead, the time code replaces Cubase VST's internal "clock on the wall" type of clock, as displayed in the Time Position box on the Transport Bar. Cubase VST still follows the tempo set either on the Transport Bar or in the Master Track. However, if the time code coming in slows down or speeds up, this will affect Cubase VST's internal clock and thereby the tempo (since the "minutes" in the "beats per minute" setting now varies).

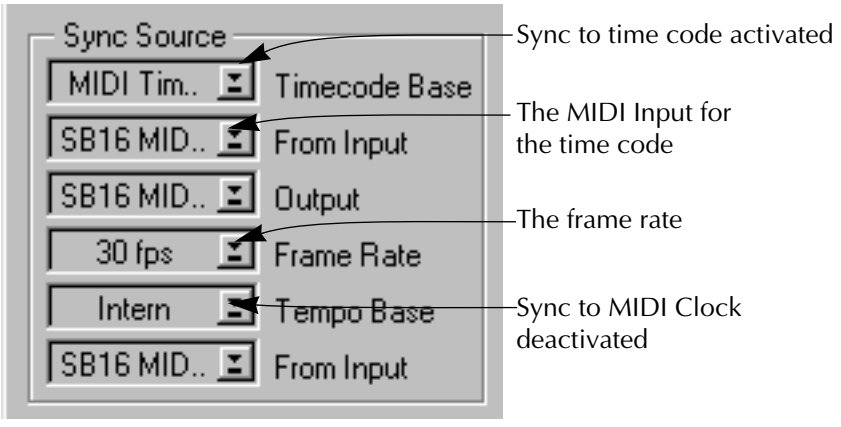
Setting Up for Synchronization

1. **In the Synchronization dialog box (reached from the Options menu), set Timecode base to MIDI Timecode.**

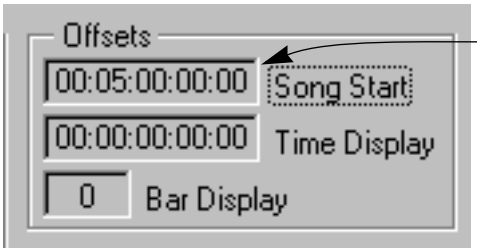
2. **From the menu just below Timecode base, select the input to which the MTC is coming in.**
   Cubase VST is now expecting a time code synchronization signal from the specified port.

3. **Set Tempo base to Intern.**
   This tells Cubase VST to *not* expect MIDI Clock signals.

4. **Use the pop-up in the dialog box to tell Cubase VST what Frame Rate to expect from the incoming code (see page 462 in this chapter).**



5. **Use the Song Start value to set which frame on the tape that should correspond to the beginning of the Song (position 1.1.0 in Cubase VST).**



6. **Close the Synchronization dialog.**
   This is actually not necessary, but probably preferable.

7. **On the Transport Bar, activate Sync by clicking on the button with the same name, or by pressing** [X]**.**
   Cubase VST is now expecting MIDI Time Code to come in via the specified port.

Sync activated on the Transport Bar.

8. **If you want the tempo to follow the Master Track, activate Master on the Transport Bar.**

9. **Start the tape (or video, or...) that contains the time code. Cubase VST starts playing when it receives MIDI Time Code with a position "higher" than, or equal to, the Song Start frame.**

   You can wind the device that sends the MTC to any position and start from there.

● When the device with the time code is stopped, you can use the Cubase VST transport controls as you normally do, when it is not synchronized.

If you synchronize Cubase VST to Time Code you should also look into the Time Display Offset described on page 467 and Sync Options described on page 470.

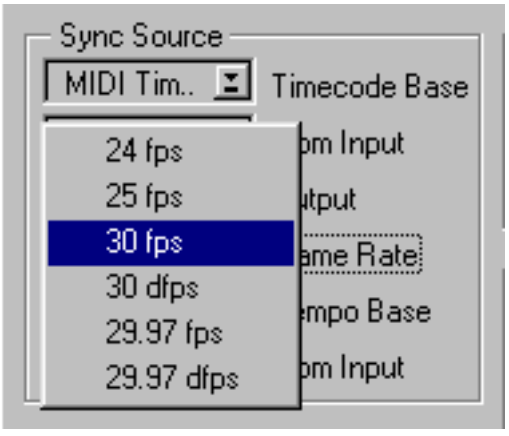
Synchronizing Cubase VST to MIDI Machine Control (MMC)

This is described in the chapter "Tape Tracks – Controlling Tape Recorders".

About Frame Rates

The Frame Rate is the number of frames per second in a film or on a video tape. Just as there is always sixty seconds to a minute, there is always a certain number of frames to each second. However, the frame rate used varies with the type of media (film or video), which country the video tape has been produced in, and other circumstances.

When synchronizing Cubase VST to time code, you must make sure that the Frame Rate setting in Cubase VST matches the actual frame rate of the time code.



In Cubase VST there are six frame rates to choose from:

24 fps	The traditional frame rate of 35mm film.
25 fps	The frame rate used for all video and audio in Europe (EBU).
30 fps	Straight 30 frames per second. This is often used in the United States for audio only work.
30 dfps	Very rarely used.
29.97 fps	Straight 29.97 frames per second.
29.97 dfps	“Drop frame” code running at 29.97 frames per second, most often used in the United States for work with color video.

Synchronizing Cubase VST to another MIDI Device via MIDI Clock

● This method should only be used for MIDI-only material.

If you want Cubase VST to follow the *tempo* of another MIDI device (such as another sequencer, a drum machine or similar), you need to use MIDI Clock signals. In this situation, synchronization happens as follows:

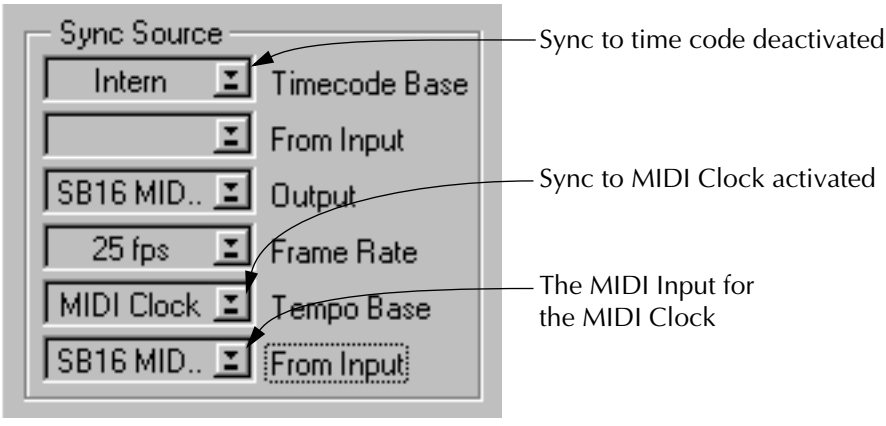
- Cubase VST's tempo is synchronized to the other device's. In other words, the other device is the *master* and Cubase VST is the *slave*).
- Cubase VST's Master Track and the tempo setting on the Transport Bar have no effect on playback. Instead, Cubase VST plays in the same tempo as the other device.

Proceed as follows:

1. **In the Synchronization dialog box (reached from the Options menu), set Timecode Base to Intern.**
   This tells the program that you are not synchronizing to time code.

2. **Set Tempo Base to MIDI Clock.**
   This prepares the program for synchronizing to MIDI Clock.

3. **From the menu just below Tempo Base, select the MIDI input to which you have connected the device transmitting the MIDI clock signal.**



4. **Close the Synchronization dialog.**
   This is actually not necessary, but probably preferable.

5. **On the Transport Bar, activate Sync by clicking on the button with the same name, or by pressing** [X].

Sync activated on the Transport Bar.

6. **Set up the other device to transmit MIDI clocks, and Start it.**
   Cubase VST will automatically start and play in the same tempo as the other device.

   This type of synchronization is tempo based, that is the external device controls Cubase VST's tempo. This means that the Master Track and the tempo setting on the Transport Bar have no effect on playback.

● You do not need to activate play in Cubase VST, it will automatically begin playback when it senses the incoming MIDI Clock. However, when the other device is stopped, you can use the Cubase VST transport controls as you normally do, when it is not synchronized to any device.

If the other device sends messages called Song Position Pointers, Cubase VST will follow when you wind and rewind, and will always start from the same position as the other device. If it doesn't send Song Position Pointers, you must manually locate Cubase VST *and* the other device to exactly the same position (for example the beginning of the Song!) before you Start.

Synchronizing other Equipment to Cubase VST

You may have other MIDI devices which you may want to synchronize Cubase VST to. There are two types of synchronization that Cubase VST can transmit: MIDI Clock and MIDI Time Code.

Transmitting MIDI Clock

- If you transmit MIDI Clock to a device supporting this type of synchronization signal, the other device will follow Cubase VST's tempo. That is, Cubase VST is the *master* and the other device is the *slave*.
- The tempo setting in the other devices is of no relevance. Instead it plays at the same tempo as Cubase VST.
- If the device also reacts to Song Position Pointers (which Cubase VST transmits) it will follow when you wind, rewind and locate using the Cubase VST Transport Bar.

Transmitting MIDI Time Code

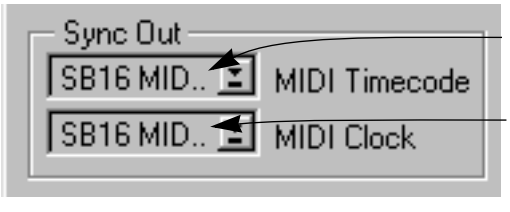
- If you transmit MIDI Time Code to a device supporting this type of synchronization signal, the device will synchronize time-wise to Cubase VST, that is, the time displays on Cubase VST's Transport Bar and on the other device will agree.
- In this situation, Cubase VST is the *master* and the other device is the *slave*.
- When you wind and locate Cubase VST and then activate playback, the other device will follow from the same position (if it has this capability and is set up for it!).

Setting Up

1. **Connect a MIDI Out from Cubase VST to the device that you plan to synchronize.**

2. **Open the Synchronization dialog box.**

3. **Use the Sync Out menus to decide what type of synchronization to send and to which MIDI Output. You can actually output both, but it is unlikely that you want to. Instead set one of the menus to Off, and the other to the Output to which you connected the external device.**



MIDI TIme Code transmitted to this Output

MIDI Clock transmitted to this Output

4. **Set the other device in "external synchronization" mode (or some other mode with a similar name) and activate Play on it if necessary.**

5. **Activate Play in Cubase VST, and the other device will follow.**

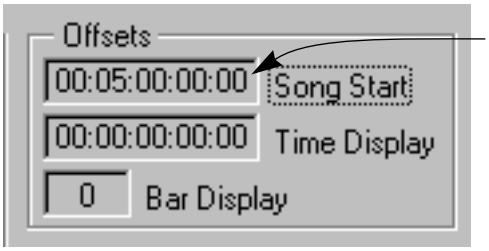
Transmitting Synchronization Signals while Cubase VST is synchronized to an External Source

- Cubase VST can be synchronized to an external source at the same time as it transmits synchronization signals to another device.This means that Cubase VST is acting as a slave to one device at the same time as being the master for another. A common application for this would be to for example synchronize Cubase VST to tape while transmitting MIDI clock to for example a drum machine.
- You could possibly also synchronize Cubase VST to time code and at the same time transmit the same code in MIDI Time Code format to another device unable to read time code directly off tape.

There's one very important fact to note:

● If several devices in your MIDI system should run at the same *tempo,* they should all be synchronized using MIDI clock. Only one of them should be synchronized to time code (if necessary), and this will be the master in the system. All other devices should be synchronized via MIDI clock to this master.

Song Start



This is the position on the time code tape that will make Cubase VST start the song from the beginning. If you for example set this to 0:5:0:0:0 (five minutes) Cubase VST will start from the beginning of the Song when it receives a time code message with this value.

In other words, if Cubase VST receives a time code message of “seven minutes” with the Song Start value suggested above, it will jump to a position two minutes in from the beginning of the Song.

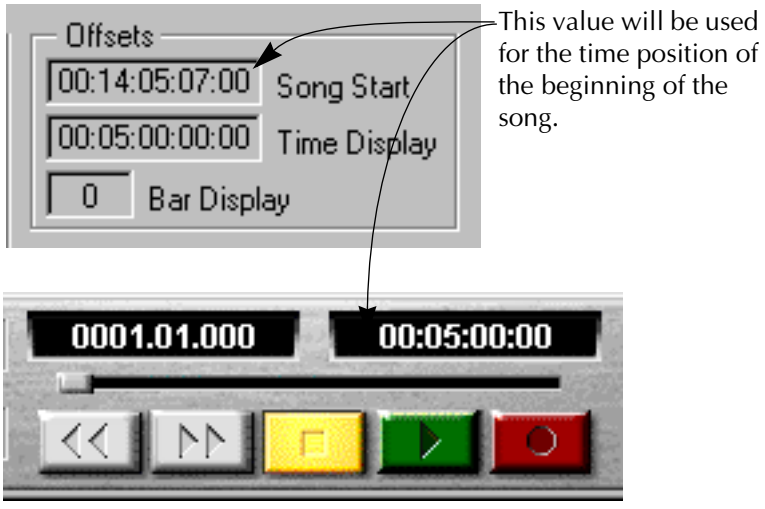
This way sequenced material can be matched to film or video, and you can adjust the relative starting points between e.g. material recorded on an audio tape and Cubase VST.

The Song Start value is in the following format:

hours:minutes:seconds:frames:subframes (80 bits).

Time Display Offset

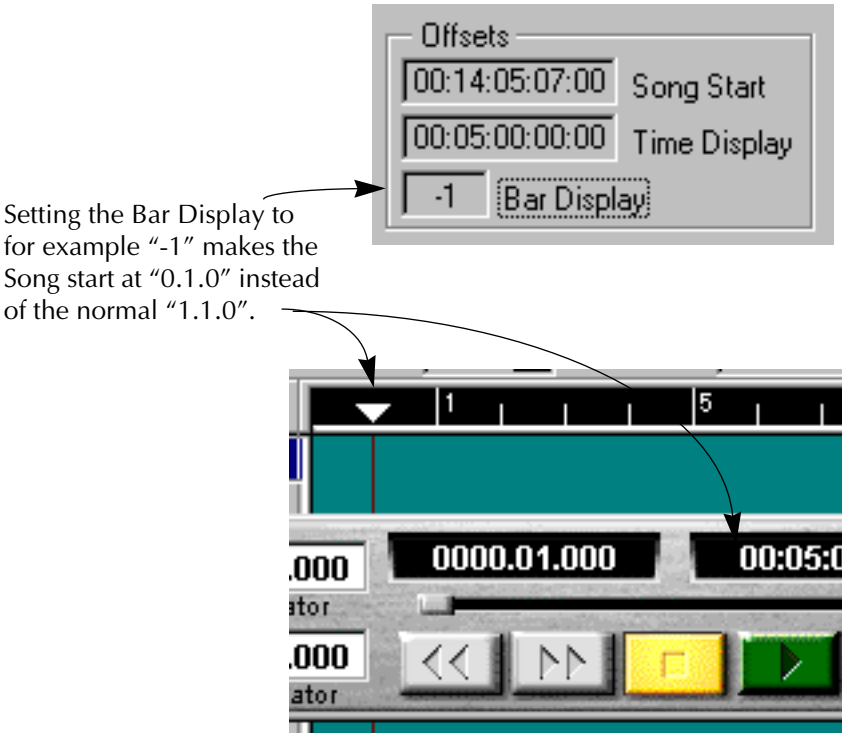
The Time Position display on the Transport bar usually starts at “zero”, even if the incoming time code is something else. But if you want Song Position 1.1.0 to correspond to some certain Time position on the Transport bar, set this value with Time Display.



If you for instance want the Transport bar to show the actual incoming time code values during external synchronization, the “Song Start” and “Time Display” should be set to the same value.

Bar Display

By the same token as with Time Display Offset you can here set the number of the first Bar in the Song. This allows you to record before position 1.1.0, which is otherwise impossible.



MROS Resolution and System Preroll

MROS Resolution

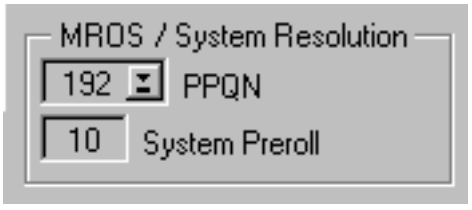
This allows you to set the playback resolution of the program.

Cubase VST normally gives MIDI playback first priority. This means that whatever the workload of the computer, MIDI data is sent out when — and as — it should. However, when a lot of MIDI data is handled and an unusual amount of real-time processing is going on, the program might not feel as smooth to use as it normally does.

If you for example feel the graphics aren't updated as quickly as you like, you could try lowering the resolution to 96 ticks per quarter note.

On the other hand, if you need extremely high playback resolution, you should use the highest possible playback setting, 384 ticks per quarter note (often called pulses per quarter note and hence abbreviated PPQN).

No matter what this setting is, data is always *recorded* at 384 PPQN and all editing conforms to this value.



System Preroll

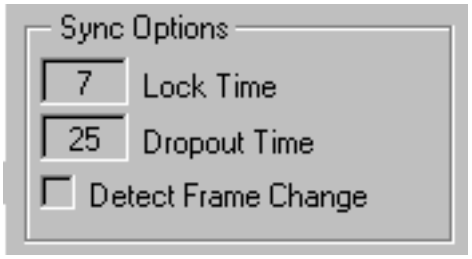
This parameter should only be adjusted if you experience problems with MIDI timing. Here's the background: Modern operating systems with features such as multitasking and background processes make it hard to write timing stable MIDI applications. Although Steinberg have made a great and successful effort to provide very tight MIDI playback in Cubase VST, there might be systems where timing isn't as stable as you'd like it to be.

In this case, raising the System Preroll value might help.

What the parameter does is that it allows the system a longer "start up time" when you hit playback. This will be noticeable at very large System Preroll values, when you can see the Song pointer "jump back" a little when playback starts.

As a positive side effect, on systems with large *audio* latencies, raising this parameter to a value above the latency value (as indicated in the System dialog) will let you hear the very first section of audio (which might otherwise be lost), when you start playback.

Sync Options



Lock Time

Using this field you can set how many frames of “correct” time code Cubase VST should receive before attempting “lock” (synchronize) to incoming time code. If you have a tape recorder with a very short start-up time, you could try lowering this number to make lock-up even faster than it already is. If you have Chase Events turned on, and many Events to chase, you could try raising this number.

Dropout Time

On a tape with time code (SMPTE) dropouts may occur. If a drop-out is very long, Cubase VST may (temporarily) stop. In the Dropout Time field you can set how long a drop-out (in frames) should be tolerated until Cubase VST decides that the tape isn't good enough to synchronize to. If you have a very stable time code source, you may lower this number to make Cubase VST stop more swiftly after the tape recorder has been stopped.

Detect Frame Change

If this option is ticked, Cubase VST will automatically detect frame rate changes in incoming time code and reset the Frame rate setting to the new value.

The “normal” setting for this parameter is “Off”.

35

Customizing Cubase VST

Why Customize?

When you use Cubase VST the first time, all settings in the program have “factory values”. Depending on your working style, what we have chosen might suit you perfectly or not at all. By customizing Cubase VST, you are able to make it “your program” and you will streamline your work considerably.

Customizing actually only involves two steps:

1. **Setting up the program exactly as you want it to be each time you start up.**

2. **Saving those settings in a default Song file (“Def.All”; hereafter referred to as the “startup song”).**

Before customizing...

... and after.

Examples of things to customize

Below follows a brief list of candidates for customizing. At this point you might not understand what all the functions below are for and what they do. Either look them up in the rest of this manual or leave them out for now.

Window Settings

You can change the size of the windows, move dividers and set the magnification, to tailor the windows to your needs. Saving this in the startup song will make the program appear as you want it.

Tracks

You can create and name Tracks, set them to different Track classes, etc. For example if you know you always want a Drum Track that plays on MIDI Channel 10, simply create it!

You can also rearrange Track columns as you like.

Instruments

As described on page 54, Instruments are “macro” settings for MIDI Output and Channel. By creating your own Instruments you can refer to all the devices in your MIDI rig by name.

Parts

You can even have Parts in your startup Song. These could for example contain libraries of often used drum patterns or riffs. Or, they could contain system Exclusive dumps of settings that load your instruments with certain sounds. Put the Parts on muted Tracks and drag them onto other Tracks when you need them.

Transport Bar settings

You might for example prefer to record in Replace Mode, or you might always want Automatic Quantizing of your recordings. If you do, simply set this up on the Transport Bar.

Editor settings and Drum Map

If you prefer certain settings in the editors, for loops, quantizing etc, set them up and save them with the startup song.

A perfect candidate for customizing is the Drum Map. This includes which Drum Map to use and how it should be set up.

Mixer Maps

You can have up to eight Mixers loaded in a song. You might for example have one basic “volume mixer” and seven “editors” for various MIDI instruments in your rig.

Audio Settings

In the Monitor and other VST windows you can name buses, set up effects, EQ, panning and a lot of other things to create your own “mixing environment”. The Pool window also allows you to determine how you want the files and segments to be listed.

Preferences

On the File menu you have a Preferences dialog box. This is used to set up a few general things, like for example which editor opens when you double click on a Part.

Grooves and other Quantize settings

If you have created a few favourite Grooves or made settings for Iterative Quantize, make these part of your startup Song.

Chase and Part Appearance

The Chase setting determines how Cubase VST handles MIDI Volume and Program Change (among other things) during playback. The settings for Chase are found on the Options menu.

Part Appearance is used to decide how the Parts should look, if the Part “boxes” should display names or Events, for example.

Metronome, MIDI Setup and MIDI Filter

Do you want a click at all? Do you want it via the computer speaker or via MIDI? How long do you want the count-in to be? All this is set in the “Metronome” dialog box, reached from the Options menu.

The “MIDI Setup” dialog contains information about your MIDI Interface (among many other things). Since you don’t want to have to set this every time you launch Cubase VST you should save this setting in the startup Song.

If you have equipment that generates MIDI data that you don’t want to record, use the “MIDI Filter” dialog box.

Sync

Most often you will synchronize to the same external equipment – for example the tape recorder in your studio. By setting up the Synchronization dialog as you want it, activate Sync on the Transport Bar and save this with the startup Song, Cubase VST will automatically synchronize as soon as you hit play on the tape recorder.

Remote

Many functions in Cubase VST, like Play and Record, can be activated via MIDI. Exactly how, is set up in the Remote dialog on the Options menu. Saving the Remote settings in the startup Song allows you to have a fixed personal setup for Remote Control.

Saving the Startup Song

Once you have set up the Song, perform the following steps.

1. **Pull down the File menu and select "Save As...".**

2. **From the File Format pop-up, select "Songs (*.ALL)".**

3. **Make sure you save in the same directory as where you have your Cubase VST program.**

4. **In the File Name field, type in the name "Def.All".**

5. **Click OK.**
   Now the next time you launch the program, the Song you just saved will automatically be loaded.

Starting from other Song documents –Templates

There are only two things special about the Def.All Song, compared to other Songs:

- It loads automatically on startup if found in the same directory as the program.
- It loads automatically if you select the "New Song" item on the File menu.

You can in fact use any Song document for customizing on startup. This is convenient if you do different types of work and want different "templates" for each.

1. **Set up the Song as you want it.**

2. **Save it under any name in any directory on your hard disk.**

3. **When you want to use a "template" song, simply double click on the document icon in the Explorer.**
   Cubase VST launches and the Song is loaded automatically.

36

Keyboard Commands

What This Chapter Contains

The following is a list of the keyboard short-cuts for many of Cubase VST's functions.

Numeric Keypad

Key Command:	Function:
[*]	Activate recording
[Enter]	Start/Continue
[0] or [spacebar]	1st time – Stop 2nd time – Go to Left Locator/ 1. 1. 0 3rd time – Go to 1. 1. 0
[+]	Increase Tempo
[–]	Decrease Tempo
[1]	Go to Left Locator
[2]	Go to Right Locator
[9]	Go to last Stop Position
[Shift] + [1]	Store Song Position as Left Locator
[Shift] + [2]	Store Song Position as Right Locator
[3] to [8]	Go to Cue Point 3 to 8
[Shift] + [3] to [8]	Store Song Position as Cue Point 3 to 8
[/]	Cycle On/Off

Typewriter Keyboard

The various key commands are grouped after their contexts, to make it easier to find what you're looking for:

File Handling and General Procedures

Key Command:	Function:
[Control]-[O]	Open
[Shift]+[Control]-[N]	New Song
[Control]-[S]	Save Song
[Shift]+[Control]-[S]	Save Arrangement
[Control]-[Z]	Undo
[Control]-[X]	Cut
[Control]-[C]	Copy
[Control]-[V]	Paste
[Control]-[Q]	Quit

Window Handling

Key Command:	Function:
[Control]-[N]	New Arrange window
[Control]-[W]	Close active window
[Return]	Close editor or "click button with bold label" in Dialog Box
[Esc]	Close and Cancel in Dialog Boxes
[G]	Decrease horizontal magnification
[H]	Increase horizontal magnification
[Shift]-[G]	Decrease vertical magnification
[Shift]-[H]	Increase vertical magnification
[F12]	Hide/Show Transport Bar
[Shift]-[F12]	Hide/Show VST Windows
[Control]-[F12]	Bring VST Windows to front
[Control]-[E]	Open Key Edit or default Editor (depending on Track Class)
[Control]-[G]	Open List Edit window
[Control]-[R]	Open Score Edit window
[Control]-[L]	Open Logical Edit window
[Control]-[Y]	Open GM/GS/XG Editor
[Control]-[F]	Open Audio Pool window
[Control]-[*] (keypad)	Open Audio Monitor Mixer
[Control]-[+] (keypad)	Open Audio Master window
[Control]-[M]	Open Graphic Master Track window
[Shift]+[Control]-[M]	Open Master Track List
[Control]-[H]	Open Transpose/Velocity dialog
[Control]-[B]	Open Notepad window
[F1]	Open Online Help

Transport Bar functions

Key Command:	Function:
Page Up	Forward
Page Down	Rewind
[P]	Set Meter Position
[Shift]-[P]	Set Time Position
[Shift]-[T]	Set Tempo
[Shift]-[S]	Set Time Signature
[L]	Set Left Locator
[R]	Set Right Locator
[Alt]+[Control]-[P]	Set Left and Right Locator to Part's Start and End
[Shift]+[F2] to [F11]	Store Locator settings
[F2] to [F11]	Recall Locator settings
[C]	Click On/Off
[D]	Toggle Record Mode (Overdub/Replace)
[F]	Follow Song On/Off
[I]	Punch In On/Off
[O]	Punch Out On/Off
[M]	Master Track On/Off
[S]	Solo On/Off
[X]	Sync On/Off
[Y]	Remote On/Off
[V]	Delete last version (MIDI Cycle Recording)
[B]	Delete Subtrack (MIDI Cycle Recording)
[N]	Quantize last version (MIDI Cycle Recording)
[K]	Key Erase (MIDI Cycle Recording)

General Selection and Editing

Key Command:	Function:
[Control]-[A]	Select All Parts/Events
[Backspace]	Delete Selection
[Control]-[Backspace]	Permanently delete audio from the hard disk.
[Control]-[I]	Get Information about selected Parts/elements
[Q]	Over Quantize
[U]	Undo Quantize
[W]	Note On Quantize
[E]	Iterative Quantize
[J]	Groove Quantize
[Z]	Auto QuantizeOn/Off
[1]-[7]	Set Quantize value
[T]	Set Quantize value to triplets
[.]	Set Quantize value to dotted

Arrange Window Selection and Editing

Key Command:	Function:
[→]	Select Next Part
[←]	Select Previous Part
[↑]	Go one Track up
[↓]	Go one Track down
[Control]-[T]	Create Track
[Alt]+[Control]-[T]	Select Track (enter a Track number, counted from the top of the Track list)
[Alt]+[Control]-[N]	Rename Track
[Alt]+[Control]-[C]	Set MIDI/Audio Channel for selected Track
[Alt]+[Control]-[O]	Set MIDI Output for selected Track
[Alt]+[Control]-[J]	Create/Rename Instrument for selected Track
[Shift]+[Control]-[T]	Set Track Class for selected Track (enter a number 1-7, corresponding to the order on the Track Class pop-up menu)
[Alt]+[Control]-[M]	Monitoring on/off (Audio Track) / Mute on/off (others)
[Shift]+[Alt]+ [Control]-[F2] to [F11]	Store Mute settings
[Alt]+[Control]- [F2] to [F11]	Recall Mute settings
[Control]-[P]	Create Part
[Control]-[K]	Repeat Part(s)
[Alt]+[Control]-[A]	Toggle Part Appearance between “Show Names” and “Show Events”
[Alt]+[Control]-[I]	Open/Close Inspector
[Shift]-[O]	Edit Transpose (in Inspector)
[Shift]-[V]	Edit Velocity (in Inspector)
[Shift]-[D]	Edit Delay (in Inspector)
[Alt]+[Control]-[F]	Freeze Play Parameters
[Control]-[J]	Show/Hide Groups
[Control]-[U]	Build Group

All MIDI Editor windows

Key Command:	Function:
[Return]	Keep (Close editor, keeping changes)
[Esc]	Cancel (Close editor, discarding changes)
[Insert]	Insert Event
[Tab]	Move one Snap in Step Edit
[A]	Edit Solo on/off
[Alt]+[Control]-[O]	Loop On/Off
[Alt]+[Control]-[L]	Input Left Loop boundary
[Alt]+[Control]-[R]	Input Right Loop boundary
[Alt]+[Control]-[I]	Info On/Off
[Alt]+[Control]-[C]	Show/Hide Controller display

- **In all MIDI Editors, the arrow keys can be used in combination with the [Shift] key to select several notes.**

Key Edit only

Key Command:	Function:
[Alternate]	Restrict Pen to length changes only
[→]	Next Note
[←]	Previous Note

Drum Edit only

Key Command:	Function:
[→]	Next Note
[←]	Previous Note
[↑]	Previous Sound
[↓]	Next Sound
[Alt]+[Control]-[S]	Solo On/Off (for selected Sound)
[Alt]+[Control]-[N]	Rename Sound

Score Edit only

Key Command:	Function:
[→]	Next Note
[←]	Previous Note
[↓]	Next Staff
[↑]	Previous Staff
[Control]+[Arrow key]	Move selected item up/down/left/right
[+] (typewriter kbd)	Move Tablature note one string up
[–] (typewriter kbd)	Move Tablature note one string down
[Alt]+[Control]-[X]	Flip Stems
[Alt]+[Control]-[G]	Group selected items
[Alt]+[Control]-[B]	Hide selected items
[Alt]+[Control]-[H]	Grace Note
[Alt]+[Control]-[1] to [8]	To Voice 1 - To Voice 8
[Control]-[P]	Print Score

List Edit only

Key Command:	Function:
[↑]	Previous Event
[↓]	Next Event

Pool functions

Key Command:	Function:
[Alt]+[Control]-[N]	Rename Segment

MIDI Mixer Window only

Key Command:	Function:
[↓]	Decrease Object Value
[↑]	Increase Object Value
[Control]-[I]	Open Object Dialog Box

Index

A

Accelerandi *402*
Active Part *94*
Aftertouch
  Deleting *112*
  Editing *110*
  Filtering *183*
  In List Edit *137*
  In Logical Edit *171*
  Selecting Events In Editors *112*
Any
  Audio Channel *12*, *24*
  MIDI Channel *19*
Arrow Tool
  Editors *98*, *107*
  List Edit *142*
  Master Track *401*
ASIO Control Panel *364*
  DirectX driver *379*
  Multimedia driver *369*
ASIO Device *363*
ASIO Multimedia driver *363*
ASIO Multimedia Setup Window *369*
Audio Buffers *373*
Audio Card Requirements *356*
Audio Channel
  About *11*
  Any *12*, *24*
  Assigning to Bus *201*
  Maximum nr of *362*
  vs Track *11*
Audio Clock Source *364*
Audio Editor
  Color Palette *239*
  Display Formats *238*
  Dragging Audio into *240*
  Info Line *243*
  Multi Channel Track *231*
  Opening *229*
  Recording In *240*
  Single Channel Track *230*
  Stereo Track *231*
  Time/Meter Scale *238*
Audio Events
  About *15*, *229*, *350*
  Copying *351*
  Crossfading *267*
  Deleting *261*
  Duplicating *253*
  Exporting into Files *277*
  Ghost Copying *351*
  Grouped *262*
  Moving *252*
  Muting *264*
  Overlapping *232*
  Selecting Segment for *277*
  Splitting *265*
Audio Files
  About *13*
  Converting Formats *340*
  Creating in Wave Editor *292*
  Deleting *214*
  Deleting Unused *214*
  Deleting Unused Portions of *220*
  Duplicating *213*
  Importing *222*, *241*, *337*
  Locating Missing *216*
  Locating on Hard Disk *213*
  Mixing Down *338*
  Naming *213*
  Pool *208*
  Replacing *215*
Audio Performance Window *382*
Audio Preferences *284*
Audio Tracks
  In List Edit *136*
  Setting Channel for *11*
Audio/Tempo Match Editor *432*
Audiomix Part *327*
Auditioning
  Arrangement *41*
  Audio Editor *242*
  Pool *218*
  Wave Editor *289*
Auto Quantize (Score) *153*
Auto Tempo Scan *422*

B

Bank Select *69*
Bar Display Offset *468*
Bar Range *179*
Buffer Size (audio) *373*
Buffers and Sync Test *377*
Buses
  About *195*
  Activating *200*
  Naming *201*
  Routing Effect Sends to *203*
  Routing to Outputs *201*

C

Channel, see MIDI/Audio Channel
Chase *71*
Check Buffers and Sync *377*
Chn
  Drum Map *133*
  Drum Tracks *125*
Chord Symbols *159*
Chorus
  Level *191*
  Type *193*
Clean Lengths *154*
Clef *152*

Color
Editing *96*
In Audio Editor *239*
In MIDI Editors *95*
Comment (Score Edit) *161*
Compression *61*
Conditions *170*
Controller Display
Drum Edit *110*, *112*
Key Edit *110*, *112*
List Edit *143*
Controllers
Deleting *112*
Editing *110*
Filtering *183*, *184*
In List Edit *137*
In Logical Edit *171*
Mapping *186*
Selecting Events In Editors *112*
Transforming *137*
Converting
Drum Tracks To MIDI Tracks *134*
Hitpoints to Matchpoints *434*
MIDI Notes to Hitpoints *415*
MIDI Tracks To Drum Tracks *134*
Copy
Audio Events *255*
Logical Edit *173*
Master Track *401*, *408*
Master Track Data Between Arrangements *409*
MIDI Events *108*
Parts *37*
Copy Range *49*
Copyright (Score Edit) *161*
Create
Accelerandi/Ritardandi *402*
Events *140*
Hitpoints *413*
Master Track Events *407*
Parts *34*
Tempo Events *400*
Time Signature Events *400*
Crossfading Audio Events *266*
Customizing
About *472*
Saving *475*
Settings *473*
Using Templates *475*
Cut
Audio Events *255*
Master Track *401*, *408*
MIDI Events *108*
Parts *37*
Cut Events *47*
Cycle
Recording Audio in *270*
Restricting Editing to *99*

D

Default Song *472*, *475*
Defragmenting Hard Disk *383*
Delay
MIDI Inspector *60*
Play Parameters *65*
Delete
All Events *101*
Audio Events *261*
Hitpoints *401*
Logical Edit *173*
Master Track Events *408*
Note *100*
Parts *39*
Segments *219*
Tempo Events *401*
Time Signature Events *401*
Delete Unused Files *214*
Detect Buffer Size *376*
Detect Frame Change *470*
DirectX Driver *379*
DirectX Effects *310*
Disk Block Buffer Size *362*
Display Filters *144*
Display Quantize *153*
Do Pop-up Menu
Master Track *402*
MIDI Editors *100*
Score Edit *149*
Drawing
Hitpoints *413*
Tempo Events *400*
Dropout Time *470*
Drum Map
About *123*
Changing *133*
Editing via MIDI *128*
I-note *123*
Len Value *130*
MIDI Channel *125*
O-note *123*
Opening *128*
Output *125*
Q Value *129*
Saving *128*
Setting Up *126*
Velocity Values *131*
Drum Parts
About *122*
Editing *129*
Drum Stick Tool *129*
Drum Tracks
About *122*
Converting to MIDI Tracks *134*
In List Edit *137*

Duplicate
Audio Events *253*
Master Track Events *401*
MIDI Events *101*
Parts *38*
Segments *218*
Dynamic Events
About *274*
Displaying *237*, *274*
Editing *274*

E

Easy (Logical Edit) *167*
Edit Audio *297*
Edit Solo *92*
Editing
Audio Editor *243*
External Wave Editor *297*
In List Edit *141*
MIDI Parts In Drum Edit *133*
Wave Editor *291*
Editing via MIDI *108*
Editors
Closing, Cancelling Changes *91*
Closing, Keeping Changes *91*
Differences *88*
Opening *89*
Opening Several *90*
Playback Parameters *94*
Effect Plug-Ins
Installing *332*
User Interface *333*
Effects
About *306*
DirectX *310*
Editing *314*
Insert *311*
Loading *316*
Naming *315*
Routing Outputs to Buses *204*
Routing Sends to Buses *203*
Saving *315*
Selecting *308*
Sends *307*
Enable Audio only during Play *367*
Enharmonic Shift *158*
EQ Button *305*
Equalizer
About *303*
Activating from Mixer/Inspector *305*
Parameters *304*
Erase Muted *264*
Erase Unused *220*
Eraser Tool
Arrange Window *39*
Audio Editor *261*
Editors *109*, *112*
Event Display *142*
Event Type (Logical Edit) *169*
Events
Audio *15*
Creating *140*
Deleting *109*
Hiding *144*
Monitoring In Editors *98*
Moving *142*
Score *139*
Selecting *98*
Special *139*
Stop *139*
Text *139*
Expert (Logical Edit) *167*, *179*
Export Audio *338*
Exporting Master Tracks *409*
Exporting Segments *277*
Extract (Logical Edit) *173*

F

Fade In *269*, *280*
Fade Out *269*, *280*
Fading In/Out Audio Events *266*
F-button *144*
File Cache Scheme *365*
Fill *101*
Fill Meter Hits *413*
Film *389*
Filtering
By Event Type *183*
by MIDI Channel *184*
Logical Edit *167*, *169*, *173*
Thruput *185*
Filtering Controllers *184*
Filters
About *183*
In List Edit *144*
In Logical Edit *167*
Fit Event To Loop Range *272*
Fixed Note *100*
Flat Beams *154*
Flip Stems *159*
Follow Song *92*
Fragmentation *383*
Frame Rate *462*
Frames *389*
Freeze Play Parameters *94*
Full Duplex *358*, *375*
Functions (Logical Edit) *168*
FX Button *303*

G

Generate SMPTE *457*
Get Info *35*
Get M-Points *433*
Ghost Audio Events
- About *351*
- Converting *353*
- Creating *254*, *352*
- Selecting Segment for *277*
- vs "Normal" Audio Events *352*

Ghost Parts
- About *45*
- Audio *353*
- Creating *45*
- Creating Using Repeat *46*

Global Cut *47*
Global Insert *48*
Global Split *48*
Glue Tube Tool
- Arrangement *40*
- Score Edit *158*

GM, Activating *192*
GM/GS/XG Editor Controls *191*
Goto Pop-up Menu *97*
Groove Quantize *257*
Grooves
- Creating from Audio *446*

Group Mixer *317*
Group Parts
- About *84*
- Arranging *83*
- Arranging During Playback *85*
- Unpacking *85*

Grouped Audio Events *262*
Groups
- About *77*
- Adding Parts To *79*
- Creating *78*
- Creating Group Tracks *82*
- Replacing All Parts In *80*
- The Group List *81*
- Using (basic steps) *78*

GS
- Additional Parameters *193*
- Resetting *192*

H

Hand Tool
- Audio Editor *253*
- Wave Editor *292*

Hard disk
- Maintaining *383*
- Requirements *360*

Hi Quality EQ *303*
Hiding Events (List Edit) *144*
Hitpoints
- About *392*, *411*
- Audio/Tempo Matching *436*
- Breaking Links *419*
- Converting MIDI Notes to *415*
- Converting to Match Points *434*
- Creating *413*
- Deleting *401*, *415*
- Duplicating *415*
- Editing *415*
- Linking *418*
- Meter *411*
- MIDI Input *413*
- MIDI Output *417*
- Moving *415*
- Naming *415*
- Quantizing *416*
- Showing Links *424*
- Time *411*

I

Import Audio *222*, *337*
Importing Master Tracks *409*
In Button *199*
Inactive Part *94*
Info Line
- Editing On *103*
- In Audio Editor *243*
- In Master Track Editor *387*, *398*
- In MIDI Editors *103*
- Parameters *103*

Init (Logical Edit) *167*
Input Meter *199*
Input Transformer *187*
Inputs (Audio)
- Activating *196*
- Naming *196*
- Selecting for Recording *198*

Insert
- Logical Edit *178*
- MIDI Editors *106*

Insert Button *106*, *118*
Insert Effects *311*
Inspector
- About *58*
- Group Tracks *82*
- Parameters In *59*
- Program Change *63*

Instruments
- About *55*
- Defining *55*
- Deleting *56*
- Selecting *56*

Invert (Phase) *280*

J

Joining Parts *40*

K

Keep Linked *415*
Keep Note *100*
Keep Selected *415*
Key Signature *152*
Keyboard Commands *476*
Kickers
- Editors *107*
- Master Track *415*

L

Lanes
- About *230*
- Displaying *236*
- Multi Channel Tracks *231*
- Single Channel Tracks *230*
- Stereo Track *231*

Length
- Drum Notes *130*
- Logical Edit *179*
- MIDI Inspector *60*

Line Tool
- Editors *112*
- Master Track *402*

Link
- About *418*
- Breaking *419*
- One By One *419*
- Showing *418*

Load Pool *227*
Lock Symbol *450*
Lock Time *470*
Logical Edit
- About *164*
- Conditions *170*
- Easy/Expert mode *167*, *179*
- Filtering *167*, *169*, *173*
- Functions *168*
- Init *167*
- Opening *164*
- Presets *165*
- Processing *167*, *174*, *178*

Loop
- MIDI Editors *92*
- Restricting Editing to *99*
- Wave Editor *289*

M

Magnification
- Pool *211*
- Wave Editor *288*

Magnifying Glass Tool
- Arrangement *41*
- Audio Editor *242*
- Editors *98*
- Wave Editor *289*

Mapping MIDI data *187*
Mask
- About *145*
- Event Type *145*
- Event Type and Value *145*
- Removing *146*

Master Button *385*, *393*
Master Effects
- About *306*
- Selecting *313*

Master Track
- About *385*
- Copying Data Between Arrangements *409*
- Graphic Editor *386*
- Importing and Exporting *409*
- List Editor *406*
- Matching Audio and Tempo *432*

Match Pitch to Scale *44*
Match Points, see M-Points
Match Quantize
- Audio Part with Audio Part *259*
- Audio Part with MIDI Part *258*
- MIDI Part with Audio Part *257*
- MIDI Part with Chord Part *44*
- MIDI Part with MIDI Part *42*

Matching
- Audio to Playback Tempo *441*
- Playback to Audio Tempo *436*, *439*

Memory per Channel *362*
Memory Requirements *359*
Merge Parts *36*
Meter Based Display *390*
Meter Hit Strip *387*, *411*
Meter Hits *392*
Meter Ruler *387*, *389*
MIDI Channel
- Any *19*
- Drum Tracks *125*, *127*
- Filtering *184*
- In Events *17*
- Info Line *103*
- Instruments *55*
- Logical Edit *172*, *176*
- Multi Record Split *27*
- Setting for Tracks *18*

MIDI Clock
Sync to *463*
Transmitting *465*
MIDI Connector Button *108*
MIDI In Button *114*, *413*
MIDI Input *108*
MIDI Mute Button *301*
MIDI Output
About *16*
Multi-port Interfaces *16*
Standard Interfaces *16*
MIDI Sync Reference *366*
MIDI Thru Filters *185*
MIDI Time Code *460*
MIDI to Audio Delay *366*
MIDI Tracks
Converting to Drum Tracks *134*
Mixing Down *52*
MIDI Volume *59*, *70*
Mirror *414*
Mirror & Link *419*
Mix Down
With Audio Tracks *53*
With MIDI and Drum Tracks *52*
Mixer Tracks
In List Edit *138*
in Logical Edit *164*
Mixing Audio
Automated *322*
Editing Automated *328*
EQ *303*
Pan *302*
Volume *301*
Mixing Down to File *338*
Monitor Mixer
Automation *322*
Recording *325*
Mono *12*
Moving
Audio Events *252*
Hitpoints *415*
Master Track Data *409*
Notes *107*
Tempi *401*
Time Signatures *401*
M-Points
About *249*
Creating Automatically *250*, *433*
Creating Manually *250*, *434*
Deleting *251*
Displaying *249*
Editing *251*
In Match Audio/Tempo Editor *432*
Moving *435*
M-Points to Groove *446*
MROS Resolution *469*
MTC *460*
Multi Channel Recording *24*
Multi Track Recording
About *26*
Activating *26*
Channel Split Mode *27*
Input Split Mode *28*
Layering Sounds With *30*
Merge Mode *27*
Mute
Audio Events *264*
Drum Sounds *132*
Editing Recorded *75*, *139*
Parts *41*
Pre-programming *73*
Recording *73*
Mute Buttons
Audio Monitor Mixer *301*
GM/GS/XG Editor *192*
Mute Tool
Arrangement *41*
Audio Editor *264*
Muted Tracks
With Global Cut *47*
With Global Insert *48*
With Groups *84*

N

Naming
Hitpoints *415*
Parts *44*
No Beams *154*
No Overlap *154*
Normalize *280*
Note Info Line
Editing On *103*
Parameters *103*
Note Tool *157*
Notes
Creating *105*
Creating in Drum Edit *129*
Deleting *100*
Filtering *183*
In List Edit *137*
In Logical Edit *171*
Length *47*
MIDI Channel *106*
Moving *107*
Resizing *107*
Velocity Modifiers *106*
Number of Channels *362*
Numeric Key Pad *477*

O

Offset (Audio Input/Output Port) *372*
Output (MIDI)
- About *16*
- Drum Tracks *125*

Outputs (Audio)
- About *195*
- Routing Buses to *201*

P

Paint Brush Tool *105*, *131*
Pan
- Audio Editor *274*
- Audio Monitor Mixer *302*
- GM/GS/XG Editor *191*
- MIDI Inspector *61*

Parts
- Active and Inactive *94*
- Auditioning *41*
- Creating *34*
- Cutting, Copying and Pasting *37*
- Deleting *39*
- Getting Information About *35*
- Joining *40*
- Match Quantizing *42*
- Merging *36*
- MIDI Volume *59*
- Muting *41*
- Naming *44*
- Notes Lengths *60*
- Overlapping *34*
- Recording *33*
- Repeating *38*, *46*
- Resizing *38*
- Scrubbing *41*
- Selecting Overlapped *35*
- Splitting *39*
- Transpose *59*
- Triggering *41*
- Velocity *60*

Paste
- Audio Events *255*
- Master Track *401*, *408*
- MIDI Events *108*
- Parts *37*

Patch pop-up menu *69*
Pencil Tool
- Arrangement *38*, *45*
- Audio Editor *241*, *250*, *275*
- Editors *105*, *107*, *112*
- Groups *84*
- List Edit *143*
- Master Track *399*, *400*, *413*

Performance Window *382*
Pitch Bend
- Deleting *112*
- Editing *110*
- Filtering *183*
- In List Edit *137*
- In Logical Edit *171*
- Selecting Events In Editors *112*

Pitch Shift *281*
Play Audio in Background *295*
Play Parameters
- About *58*
- Delaying *65*
- Freezing *58*

Playback during Recording *358*
Poly Pressure
- Editing *112*
- Filtering *183*
- In List Edit *137*
- In Logical Edit *171*

Pool
- Contents *210*
- Loading *227*
- Opening *208*
- Saving *227*
- Time Formats in *211*

Position Box *391*
Prepare Archive *225*
Prepare Master *225*
Presets (ASIO Multimedia Setup) *369*
Presets (Logical Edit) *165*
Printing *162*
Priority *366*
Process Tempo *404*
Processing
- Audio *279*
- Logical Edit *167*, *174*, *178*

Program Change
- About *63*
- Detecting *67*
- Entering In Editors *66*
- Entering In Inspector *63*
- Filtering *183*
- In GM/GS/XG Editor *192*
- In List Edit *137*
- In Logical Edit *171*
- Numbering *68*
- Recording *66*
- Resetting for Parts *64*
- Timing *65*

Purge Segments *219*

Q

Q Tool, see Match Quantize
Q-Points
- About *233*, *247*
- Displaying *247*
- Grouped Events *263*
- Setting Automatically *248*
- Setting Manually *247*

Quantize
- Audio (by Time Stretching) *259*, *442*
- Audio Events *256*
- Drum Edit *132*
- Drum Tracks *129*
- Editors *104*
- Hitpoints *416*
- Logical Edit *168*, *173*
- Match *42*

Quieten *280*

R

R Column, see Multi Track Recording
Read Button *326*
Rechannelizing *18*
Record Info (Audio Inspector) *25*
Record Tempo/Mutes *395*
Recording
- 24-Bit Audio (VST/24 only) *367*
- In Audio Editor *240*
- In Free Time *429*
- MIDI and Audio at the Same Time *30*
- Multi Track *26*

Reduce Tempo Events *403*
Remix Track
- With Audio Tracks *51*
- With Drum Tracks *51*
- With MIDI Tracks *50*

Repeat
- Audio Events *254*
- Editors *101*
- Master Track Events *402*
- Parts *38*, *46*

Resolving *456*
Rest Tool *157*
Reverb
- Level *191*
- Time *193*
- Type *193*

Reverse *101*, *280*
ReWire *321*
Ritardandi *402*
Ruler *387*, *389*

S

Sample Rate *356*, *364*
Sample Rate (ASIO Multimedia Setup) *371*
Save Pool *227*
Scissors Tool
- Arrangement *39*
- Audio Editor *265*
- Master Track *419*
- Score Edit *158*

Score
- Displaying *151*
- Printing *162*

Score Edit
- Editing Several Tracks *155*
- Joining Notes *158*
- Modes *149*
- Moving Notes *157*
- Splitting Notes *158*
- Transposing Notes *157*

Score menu *149*
Scrub
- Audio Events *242*
- Parts *41*
- Wave Editor *289*

Segments
- About *14*, *350*
- Auditioning *218*
- Changing Start and End Insets *218*, *245*
- Creating in Pool *214*
- Creating in Wave Editor *291*
- Deleting *219*
- Deleting Unused *219*
- Dragging into Other Windows *223*
- Duplicating *218*
- Editing in Wave Editor *291*
- In the Pool *209*, *212*
- Renaming *218*
- Start and End Insets *244*

Selecting
- Audio File in Pool *214*
- Events *98*
- Events in Master Track Edit *397*
- Logical Edit *173*
- Overlap *35*
- Segment in Pool *218*
- Wave Editor *290*

Selection To Segment *291*
Send Effects *306*
Show Hitpoint Links *418*
Show Hitpoint Match *420*
Shuffle *154*
Silence *280*
Slider to Tempo *438*
Slider to Time Stretch *442*
Smooth *403*
SMPTE see Time Code
SMPTE/EBU *389*

Snap *104*
Snap to Zero *234*, *246*
Snip at M-points *447*
Snip Loop *265*
Solo
  Audio Monitor Mixer *301*
  Drum Edit *132*
  Edit Solo *92*
  Recording *73*
Song Start Offset *467*
SoundFonts *69*
Speaker
  Audio Editor *243*, *247*
  MIDI Editors *98*
Split
  Audio Events *265*
  Parts *39*
Split (Piano) Staff *152*
Staff
  Active *156*
  Multiple *155*
Staff Mode *152*
Staff Settings *151*
Start and End Insets
  About *244*
  Changing in Audio Editor *245*
  Changing in Pool *218*
Startup Song *472*, *475*
Step Button *114*
Step Input
  About *114*
  Entering Notes *115*
  Entering Rests *116*
  Insert *118*
  Note Length and Spacing *114*
Stereo
  About (Audio) *12*
  Inspector *21*
  Monitor Mixer *23*
Stop Events *139*
Straighten Up *424*, *440*
Sync
  MIDI Clock *463*
  MIDI Time Code *460*
  Recovering Lost Sync Tracks *426*
  Testing Audio *377*
  To Existing Music *426*
  With Audio *455*
Sync Button *458*
Sync Options *470*
Sync Reference *372*, *374*
Syncopation *154*
System Exclusive
  Editing *138*
  Filtering *183*
  In List Edit *137*
System Preroll *469*

T

Templates *475*
Tempo
  And the Info Line *398*
  Auto Scan *422*
  Creating Accelerandi and Ritardandi *402*
  Creating Events *407*
  Deleting Events *401*, *408*
  Display *388*
  Drawing *399*, *400*
  Events *396*
  Finding Matches *420*
  Mapping to Audio *439*
  Mapping using Time Locked Tracks *428*
  Matching *420*
  Matching Fixed to Audio *436*
  Moving Events *401*, *407*
  Multiple in one Arrangement *451*
  Processing *404*
  Recording In Real Time *394*
  Reducing Events *403*
  Selecting *396*
  Smoothing *403*
  Straighten Up *424*
  Time Locked Tracks *450*
  Using Master Track *393*
Tempo Display *387*
Text (Score Edit) *160*
Text Events *139*
Time Based Display *390*
Time Based Events *428*
Time Code
  Formats *389*
  Frame Rate *462*
  Generating *457*
Time Correction *281*
Time Display Offset *467*
Time Format *407*
Time Hit Strip *387*, *411*
Time Hits *392*
Time Locked Tracks *428*, *449*
Time Position, Switching to *147*
Time Ruler *387*, *389*
Time Signature
  About *388*
  Creating Events *407*
  Deleting Events *401*, *408*
  Drawing *400*
  Editing *398*
  Moving Events *401*, *407*
  Score *151*
  Selecting *396*
Time Signature Strip *387*
Time Stretch *441*
Title (Score Edit) *161*
To Pop-up Menu *99*

Track Class
Converting Between MIDI And Drum Tracks *134*
Tracks
Active *240*
Audio *11*
Drum Tracks *122*
Group *82*
Name in Score *154*
Tranforming MIDI data *187*
Transpose
Editing Transposed Notes *94*
Group Tracks *82*
MIDI Inspector *59*
Triggering Parts *41*

U

Undo
Audio Quantize *259*
Editing *91*
Logical Edit *167*
Ungroup Audio Events *262*
Unmask *146*
Use 16-Bit only *375*
Use Waveforms *217*

V

Velocity
Editing *111*
Editing via MIDI *108*
For Created Notes *106*
MIDI Inspector *60*
Modifiers (Drum Tracks) *131*
View Pop-up Menu (Audio Editor) *236*
VITC *460*
Volume
Audio Editor *274*
Audio Monitor Mixer *301*
Entering in MIDI Editors *70*
GM/GS/XG Editor *191*
MIDI Inspector *59*, *70*
VST/24 *367*

W

Wave Editor
About *284*
Cut, Copy and Paste *293*
Loop button *289*
Opening *285*
Opening "Secondary" *298*
Opening External *297*
Playing Back *289*
Selecting External *296*
Selecting In *290*
Selecting Internal *284*
Setting Magnification *288*
Wave Images *217*
WaveLab
Opening from Cubase *297*
Selecting in Cubase *296*
Write Button *325*

X

XG
Additional Parameters *193*
Resetting *192*

Z

Zero Crossings *234*